DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 234 269 CE 037 086

TITLE	Career Preparation Program Curriculum Guide for: Metal Fabrication, Machinist Training.
INSTITUTION	British Columbia Dept. of Education, Victoria. Curriculum Development Branch.
REPORT NO	ISBN-0-7719-9261-0
PUB DATE	83
NOTE	402p.; For related documents, see CE 037 083-085. Except for section 3, contents are duplicated by the related documents.
PUB TYPE	Guides - Classroom Use - Guides (For Teachers) (052)
EDRS PRICE	MF01/PC17 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Behavioral Objectives; Bibliographies; Cooperative Education; Course Descriptions; Curriculum Guides; Engineering Drawing; High Schools; Learning Activities; Learning Modules; *Machine Tools; Machinists; Measurement; *Metal Industry; Metallurgy; Metals; *Metal Working; Postsecondary Education; Program Descriptions; Safety; Secondary Education; Trade and Industrial Education; Welding

ABSTRACT

This curriculum outline provides secondary and postsecondary instructors with detailed information on student learning outcomes for completion of the metal fabrication machinist training program requirements. A program overview discusses the aims of education; secondary school philosophy; and career preparation programs and their goals, organization, and evaluation. Sections two and three provide the curriculum format for programs in grades 11 and 12, respectively. Each program is divided into units containing from 1 to 19 modules. Both course and unit general aims are cited. Modules consist of these components: goal statements, learning outcomes, and student activities to support the learning outcomes. Topics covered in the 18 units in the grade 11 program and the 17 units in the grade 12 program include cooperative career preparation; shop practices, human relations, and safety; hand tools; mechanical drawing; soldering; gas welding; oxyacetylene welding, brazing, and cutting; shielded metal arc welding; metallurgy; power saws, shapers, and milling machines; hot metals; grinding, polishing, and surface finishing; drilling, reaming, and tapping; lathes; drill press operations and setups; power saws, fitting, and assembly; measurement; blueprint reading; applied mathematics; and rigging and material handling. Section four contains resource materials and a chapter on rigging and erection. (YLB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED234269

CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM

CURRICULUM GUIDE FOR :

METAL FABRICATION – MACHINIST TRAINING

PROVINCE OF BRITISH COLUMBIA

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)

☒ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.

☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official NIE position or policy.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

1983

CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT BRANCH

CE037086

© MINISTRY OF EDUCATION, PROVINCE OF BRITISH COLUMBIA, CANADA

No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form without permission in writing from the publisher.

Canadian Cataloguing in Publication Data

Main entry under title:
Career preparation program curriculum guide for metal fabrication, machinist training

Cover title.
ISBN 0-7719-9261-0

1. Machine-shop practice - Cutlines, syllabi, etc. 2. Machine shops - Vocational guidance - British Columbia - Outlines, syllabi, etc. I. British Columbia. Schools Dept. Curriculum Development Branch.

TJ1160.C37 621.8'07'12711 C83-092202-4

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

- The Ministry of Education gratefully acknowledges the work of the Metal Fabrication curriculum committee members for their contribution to this Career Preparation Program and curriculum guide:

John Bigley	Vancouver (S.D. #39)
Dan Bradford	Selkirk College, Castlegar
Wayne Fagrie	Pacific Vocational Institute, Burnaby
Ted Marchant	Pacific Vocational Institute, Burnaby
Howard Thompson	North Vancouver (S.D. #44)
Fred Packford	Greater Victoria (S.D. #61)
Doug Podetz	Surrey (S.D. #36)
Mickey Zoyetz	Cariboo College, Kamloops

- The Ministry of Education personnel involved in this project was:

  Ken Douglas

- The B.C. Teachers Federation and those numerous persons in the field who contributed to and supported the production of this document.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS. iii

INTRODUCTION 1

SECTION ONE - PROGRAM OVERVIEW. 5

PART 1.0 - AIMS OF EDUCATION 7

PART 2.0 - SECONDARY SCHOOL PHILOSOPHY 8

PART 3.0 - CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAMS 9

PART 4.0 - GOALS OF CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAMS. . . 15

PART 5.0 - ORGANIZATION. 17

PART 6.0 - EVALUATION. 22

SECTION TWO - C P 11 - METAL FABRICATION 35

UNIT 1.0 - COOPERATIVE CAREER PREPARATION (SCHOOL BASED). 36

MODULE 1.01 - CAREER DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNICATION. 37

MODULE 1.02 - WORK ETHIC AND WORK OBSERVATION . . . 40

MODULE 1.03 - ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURES AND ROLE OF MANAGEMENT AND LABOUR 41

MODULE 1.04 - WORKING CONDITIONS AND LABOUR LEGISLATION 43

MODULE 1.05 - JOB SEARCH SKILLS AND JOB INTERVIEWS. 44

MODULE 1.06 - FIELD TRIPS AND RESOURCE SPEAKERS . . 46

MODULE 1.07 - EDUCATIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CAREER PLANNING. 47

PAGE

UNIT 2.0 - SHOP PRACTICES, HUMAN RELATIONS AND SAFETY PROCEDURES 48

MODULE 2.01 - SHOP RULES AND PRACTICES. 48

MODULE 2.02 - HUMAN RELATIONS AND PERSONAL ATTRIBUTES . 51

MODULE 2.03 - GENERAL SHOP ADMINISTRATION 54

MODULE 2.04 - EMERGENCY PROCEDURES (FIRE AND MEDICAL ROUTINES) 55

UNIT 3.0 - TECHNICAL - READING, WRITING AND REPORTING . . 57

MODULE 3.01 - TECHNICAL REPORTS AND WORK SHEETS 57

UNIT 4.0 - FASTENERS. 59

MODULE 4.01 - TYPES OF FASTENERS. 59

UNIT 5.0 - TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT. 61

MODULE 5.01 - USE AND CARE OF HAND TOOLS. 61

MODULE 5.02 - MEASURING TOOLS 62

MODULE 5.03 - LAYOUT TOOLS. 65

MODULE 5.04 - USE AND CARE OF PORTABLE POWER TOOLS AND ACCESSORIES 68

UNIT 6.0 - MECHANICAL DRAWING CONCEPTS. 69

MODULE 6.01 - BASIC CONCEPTS. 69

MODULE 6.02 - MEASUREMENT 71

MODULE 6.03 - PICTORIAL DRAWINGS. 72

MODULE 6.04 - ORTHOGRAPHIC DRAWINGS 73

MODULE 6.05 - CONVENTIONAL LINES AND SYMBOLS. 75

MODULE 6.06 - CONVENTIONAL CONCEPTS 77

PAGE

UNIT 7.0 - SOFT AND SILVER SOLDERING. 80
MODULE 7.01 - SOFT SOLDER 80
MODULE 7.02 - SOFT SOLDER APPLICATION 82
MODULE 7.03 - SILVER SOLDER 83
UNIT 8.0 - GAS WELDING OPERATIONS 84
MODULE 8.01 - WELDING SAFETY PRACTICES. 84
MODULE 8.02 - STORAGE AND HANDLING OF OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS CYLINDERS. 85
MODULE 8.03 - HANDLING AND OPERATING OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT 86
MODULE 8.04 - ASSEMBLY OF OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT . 87
MODULE 8.05 - TESTING FOR LEAKS 88
MODULE 8.06 - CORRECTLY LIGHT AND SHUT DOWN THE OXY-ACETYLENE UNIT. 89
MODULE 8.07 - TORCH LINE EXPLOSIONS 90
MODULE 8.08 - FIRE PREVENTION 91
MODULE 8.09 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS. 92
MODULE 8.10 - VENTILATION 93
MODULE 8.11 - WELDING AND CUTTING CONTAINERS. . . . 94
MODULE 8.12 - PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT. 95
UNIT 9.0 - OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT. 96
MODULE 9.01 - OXY-ACETYLENE WELDING EQUIPMENT PROCESSES AND APPLICATIONS. 96
MODULE 9.02 - CONSTRUCTION OF OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS CYLINDERS 97
MODULE 9.03 - CONSTRUCTION OF PRESSURE REGULATORS . 98

PAGE

MODULE 9.04 - OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS HOSE. 99

MODULE 9.05 - OXY-ACETYLENE TORCHES 100

MODULE 9.06 - MANIFOLD SYSTEMS. 101

MODULE 9.07 - SELECTION OF FLAMES 102

MODULE 9.08 - TIP SELECTION AND MAINTENANCE 103

UNIT 10.0 - OXY-ACETYLENE WELDING, BRAZING AND CUTTING (O.A.W.). 104

MODULE 10.01 - WELDING POSITIONS. 104

MODULE 10.02 - SELECTION OF FILLER METALS 105

MODULE 10.03 - FOREHAND WELD. 106

MODULE 10.04 - BEADING. 107

MODULE 10.05 - CORNER JOINT 108

MODULE 10.06 - LAP JOINT. 109

MODULE 10.07 - EDGE JOINT 110

MODULE 10.08 - TEE JOINT. 111

MODULE 10.09 - BUTT JOINT 112

MODULE 10.10 - FUSION WELD OF CAST IRON 113

MODULE 10.11 - BRAZE WELDING. 114

MODULE 10.12 - BRAZE WELDING. 116

MODULE 10.13 - BRAZE WELDING. 117

MODULE 10.14 - BRAZE WELDING. 118

MODULE 10.15 - BRAZE WELDING. 119

MODULE 10.16 - BRAZE WELDING. 120

MODULE 10.17 - BRAZE WELDING. 121

MODULE 10.18 - GAS CUTTING OXY-FUEL CUTTING-ACETYLENE 122

MODULE 10.19 - GAS CUTTING OXY-FUEL CUTTING-ACETYLENE 126

PAGE

UNIT 11.0 - SHIELDED METAL ARC WELDING 130

MODULE 11.01 - FUNDAMENTALS OF ARC WELDING 130

MODULE 11.02 - ARC WELDING SAFETY. 132

MODULE 11.03 - ARC WELDING EXERCISES 134

UNIT 12.0 - METALLURGY 139

MODULE 12.01 - FERROUS METALS. 139

MODULE 12.02 - NON-FERROUS METALS. 141

MODULE 12.03 - WELDABILITY OF STEELS 142

MODULE 12.04 - HEAT TREATMENT. 143

MODULE 12.05 - SHAPES OF METALS. 144

UNIT 13.0 - POWER SAWS, SHAPERS AND MILLING MACHINES . . . 145

MODULE 13.01 - POWER SAWS. 145

MODULE 13.02 - SHAPERS 147

MODULE 13.03 - MILLING MACHINES (VERTICAL, HORIZONTAL) . 148

UNIT 14.0 - HOT METALS 150

MODULE 14.01 - TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT 150

MODULE 14.02 - FORGING AND BENDING 151

MODULE 14.03 - FOUNDRY 152

UNIT 15.0 - INTRODUCTION TO SHEET METAL. 155

MODULE 15.01 - SHEET METAL TRADES. 155

MODULE 15.02 - SAFETY IN THE SHEET METAL SHOP. 156

MODULE 15.03 - COMMON SHEET METALS 157

MODULE 15.04 - HAND TOOLS. 158

MODULE 15.05 - SHEET METAL MACHINES. 159

PAGE

MODULE 15.06 - APPLIED GEOMETRY 160

MODULE 15.07 - SIMPLE PATTERN LAYOUT. 162

MODULE 15.08 - PARALLEL LINE DEVELOPMENT. 163

MODULE 15.09 - RADIAL LINE DEVELOPMENT. 164

MODULE 15.10 - HEAVY GAUGE AND STRUCTURAL FABRICATION . 165

UNIT 16.0 - GRINDING, POLISHING AND SURFACE FINISHING . . 166

MODULE 16.01 - GRINDING MACHINES. 166

MODULE 16.02 - SAFETY PRECAUTIONS 167

MODULE 16.03 - BUFFING AND POLISHING. 168

MODULE 16.04 - PAINTING 169

MODULE 16.05 - PLATING AND COLOURING METAL SURFACES . . 170

UNIT 17.0 - DRILLING, REAMING, TAPPING. 171

MODULE 17.01 - DRILLING MACHINES. 171

MODULE 17.02 - DRILLING MACHINES. 172

MODULE 17.03 - REAMING. 174

MODULE 17.04 - TAPS AND DIES. 175

UNIT 18.0 - LATHES. 176

MODULE 18.01 - LATHE NOMENCLATURE 176

MODULE 18.02 - WORK HOLDING 177

MODULE 18.03 - LATHE CUTTING TOOLS. 178

MODULE 18.04 - FEEDS AND SPEEDS 179

MODULE 18.05 - OPERATIONS 180

PAGE

SECTION THREE - C P 12 - MACHINIST TRAINING 189

UNIT 1.0 - COOPERATIVE CAREER PREPARATION (COMMUNITY BASED). 190

MODULE 1.01 - PREPLACEMENT ROUTINE 190

MODULE 1.02 - PLACEMENT (EXTERNAL TO SCHOOL) 192

MODULE 1.03 - POSTPLACEMENT ROUTINE 193

MODULE 1.04 - STUDENT REPORTING PROCESS 194

MODULE 1.05 - LETTER OF THANKS TO EMPLOYER 195

UNIT 2.0 - SAFETY 196

MODULE 2.01 - ACCIDENT PREVENTION 196

MODULE 2.02 - FIRE PREVENTION 199

UNIT 3.0 - INTRODUCTION TO MACHINES 201

MODULE 3.01 - SHOP MACHINERY 201

UNIT 4.0 - HAND TOOLS 202

MODULE 4.01 - HAMMERS 202

MODULE 4.02 - WORK HOLDING 203

MODULE 4.03 - SCREW DRIVERS 204

MODULE 4.04 - WRENCHES 205

MODULE 4.05 - PUNCHES AND STAMPS 206

MODULE 4.06 - HAND SAWING 207

MODULE 4.07 - FILING 208

MODULE 4.08 - CHISELS 209

MODULE 4.09 - BROACHING 210

MODULE 4.10 - DRILLS 211

MODULE 4.11 - TAPS, DIES 212

PAGE

UNIT 5.0 - DRILL PRESS OPERATIONS AND SETUPS 213
  MODULE 5.01 - DRILL PRESS TERMINOLOGY. 213
  MODULE 5.02 - SPEEDS AND FEEDS 215
  MODULE 5.03 - CUTTING FLUIDS 217
  MODULE 5.04 - WORK HOLDING 219
  MODULE 5.05 - DRILLING 220
  MODULE 5.06 - COUNTERSINKING AND COUNTERBORING . . . 223
  MODULE 5.07 - REAMING. 225
  MODULE 5.08 - LARGE HOLE CUTTING 227
  MODULE 5.09 - THREAD CUTTING 229
UNIT 6.0 - LAYOUT. 231
  MODULE 6.01 - LAYOUT TOOLS 231
  MODULE 6.02 - PREPARING FOR LAYOUT 233
  MODULE 6.03 - CARE AND USE OF HEIGHT GAUGE 235
UNIT 7.0 - POWER SAWS. 236
  MODULE 7.01 - POWER SAW TYPES AND OPERATIONS 236
  MODULE 7.02 - INSTALL AND ADJUST SAW BLADES. 238
  MODULE 7.03 - COLD SAWS AND ABRASIVE CUTOFF SAWS . . 240
  MODULE 7.04 - CONTOUR BANDSAWS 241
UNIT 8.0 - SHAPERS, PLANERS AND SLOTTERS 242
  MODULE 8.01 - SHAPERS, PLANERS AND SLOTTERS. 242

PAGE

UNIT 9.0 - MILLING MACHINES 245

MODULE 9.01 - MILLING MACHINE NOMENCLATURE. 245

MODULE 9.02 - MILLING CUTTERS 246

MODULE 9.03 - WORK HOLDING 248

MODULE 9.04 - SPEEDS AND FEEDS. 250

MODULE 9.05 - BASIC MILLING OPERATIONS. 251

MODULE 9.06 - INDEXING DEVICES. 253

MODULE 9.07 - GEARS AND GEAR CUTTING. 255

UNIT 10.0 - GRINDING. 256

MODULE 10.01 - ABRASIVES AND WHEELS 256

MODULE 10.02 - GRINDING MACHINES. 258

UNIT 11.0 - FITTING AND ASSEMBLY. 260

MODULE 11.01 - BOLTS AND SCREWS 260

MODULE 11.02 - SHAFT FASTENERS. 262

MODULE 11.03 - SCREWS AND RIVETS. 264

UNIT 12.0 - METALLURGY. 265

MODULE 12.01 - FERROUS MATERIALS. 265

MODULE 12.02 - PHYSICAL PROPERTIES. 267

MODULE 12.03 - HEAT TREATMENT 268

UNIT 13.0 - LATHES. 270

MODULE 13.01 - LATHE TERMINOLOGY. 270

MODULE 13.02 - WORK HOLDING 272

MODULE 13.03 - CUTTING TOOLS. 274

MODULE 13.04 - TURNING TECHNIQUES 276

MODULE 13.05 - THREADING. 279

MODULE 13.06 - DRILLING, REAMING AND BORING 281

MODULE 13.07 - FILING AND POLISHING 283

PAGE

UNIT 14.0 - MEASUREMENT 284

MODULE 14.01 - MEASURING SYSTEMS AND SCALES. 284

MODULE 14.02 - RULES 286

MODULE 14.03 - CALIPERS. 287

MODULE 14.04 - MICROMETERS AND VERNIER CALIPERS. . . 289

MODULE 14.05 - SQUARES - PROTRACTORS 290

MODULE 14.06 - MISCELLANEOUS MEASUREMENTS. 291

MODULE 14.07 - CARE AND ADMUSTMENT OF MEASURING INSTRUMENTS 293

UNIT 15.0 - BLUEPRINT READING 294

MODULE 15.01 - SKETCHING 294

MODULE 15.02 - ALPHABET OF LINES AND SYMBOLS 296

MODULE 15.03 - DIMENSIONING. 298

UNIT 16.0 - APPLIED MATHEMATICS 300

MODULE 16.01 - BASIC CALCULATIONS. 300

MODULE 16.02 - GEOMETRIC MEASUREMENTS. 302

MODULE 16.03 - TRIGONOMETRY. 304

MODULE 16.04 - APPLIED MATH. 305

UNIT 17.0 - RIGGING AND MATERIAL HANDLING 307

MODULE 17.01 - SAFETY REGULATIONS ON RIGGING 307

MODULE 17.02 - MATERIAL HANDLING EQUIPMENT 310

SECTION FOUR - RESOURCE MATERIAL. 309

INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this career preparation curriculum outline is to provide the secondary school teachers and post-secondary instructors with detailed information on student learning outcomes for completion of the career preparation program requirements. Information contained in this outline may be used as reference by students, counsellors, school administrators, employers and the general public. Performance standards and guidelines for instruction will be established according to the criteria developed by teachers for the modules and courses which comprise each career preparation program.

Section One
Program Overview

CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM

PAGE

SECTION ONE PROGRAM OVERVIEW

PART 1.0 - AIMS OF EDUCATION 7
PART 2.0 - SECONDARY SCHOOL PHILOSOPHY. 8
PART 3.0 - CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAMS 9
PART 4.0 - GOALS OF CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAMS 15
PART 5.0 - ORGANIZATION 17
PART 6.0 - EVALUATION 22

PART 1.0 AIMS OF EDUCATION

The basic function of the British Columbia system of public education is to serve society and to meet the needs of individual students. School personnel have the primary responsibility to educate everyone by enabling each student to pursue excellence, to experience success and to realize maximum potential in every course. The curriculum should enable each student to achieve educational and vocational goals in the development of their interests, skills and abilities.

Central to that responsibility is the promotion of learning, the acquisition of knowledge and the mastery of skills. This is essential to provide the student with a solid base upon which a successful future may be built. This responsibility implies an obligation to go beyond the provision of a learning opportunity and to link instruction and learning through activities that make it possible for the pupil to become a purposeful, effective and competent learner. Students should be encouraged to develop a sustained interest in learning and a confidence in their ability to learn by the realization that any study becomes effective through an orderly and sustained approach.

The primary responsibility of school personnel should be complemented by the many other facets of school life which contribute to the development of the maturing student. Teachers should encourage sportsmanship, good health and fitness, promote a willingness to serve the school and community, and provide opportunities to appreciate and share in the social customs of the school and society. Students should be encouraged to be active participants in the community by meeting their obligations and responsibilities as citizens.

The philosophy of the school is best achieved in a purposeful and challenging environment which motivates the best performance of students and staff. The environment should be safe, supportive, rewarding and satisfying; and should reflect mutual respect and courtesy among students, staff and parents. The facilities, equipment materials and organization should enable students and staff to pursue stated educational goals. The environment must also be conducive to effective participation by the staff in decisions affecting them and their students. Such participation is fostered by open, flexible and cooperative patterns of organization and communication based on a spirit of mutuality.

Teachers, parents and the community share the responsibility for fostering the optimum growth and development of each student. Shared responsibility should be directed to the end that each student will become a knowledgeable, self-reliant, self-disciplined, adaptive human being with a sense of enduring values and social and civic responsibility, able to communicate and participate effectively in a technologically advancing and increasingly mobile, complex and changing society.

PART 2.0 SECONDARY SCHOOL PHILOSOPHY

Secondary schools are primarily concerned with the development of the individual in a changing society. Organization of the secondary school system is based on the belief that students should be provided with a meaningful sequence of courses directed toward a particular purpose which they themselves consider valuable and which lies within their abilities. Motivation of adolescents to maintain a positive attitude with commitment to their studies is a challenging task for teachers. Students need educational experiences that will help them to cope with their responsibilities in society; to prepare for further education at a college, Provincial institute or university; and/or to enter employment with a marketable skill.

General goals of the secondary school system should be incorporated into the educational philosophy of each school. Secondary school curriculum goals should:

a. provide opportunities for all students to achieve a maximum of general and basic preparatory education,

b. emphasize those subjects needed for individual intellectual development for future career goals,

c. enable students to arrange subjects into broad patterns or programs on the basis of their interrelationships and usefulness for further education and employment,

d. permit individual choice of school programs according to alternatives that are available,

e. include opportunities for students to develop personal interests and avocational values,

f. increase opportunities to relate course offerings to the needs of the school population and the community, and

g. allow students to select for themselves educational goals and patterns of study in accord with their proven interests and abilities.

As students acquire and develop their skills and talents at the secondary school educational level, interest in future careers becomes increasingly important. The need to improve the transition between schools, colleges, Provincial institutes and employment has been addressed through the introduction of career preparation programs.

PART 3.0 CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAMS

3.1 Aims and Purpose

Career preparation is vitally important to every individual in their choice of lifestyle and their economic security. In conjunction with the provision of basic education for all citizens, the school system should ensure that all students are provided the opportunity to increase their awareness of career planning leading to vocational choices. The general education acquired through the public school system should complement the personal and intellectual development of individuals for success in the world of work.

Occupational needs are never static and students should have the opportunity to increase their awareness of the world of work while attending public schools. The influence of modern technology has altered individual and family lifestyles and many students recognize the need for preparatory training that will lead toward success in a vocation of their choice. This increased emphasis on education and training will help students to understand the increasingly complex world of business and industry. Pertinent questions should be considered. What are the qualifications for particular occupations? Which occupations require a post-secondary education or other credentials? Which vocations require work related experiences? How should the school experience provide for student needs as they consider their future careers?

The last question is being partially answered through Career Preparation Programs. Students who enroll in a career preparation program will gain a broad overview of a particular industry and will be provided with vocational experiences in a career area of their choice. Essential components of the total program include specialized courses with cooperative career preparation studies and the completion of all requirements leading to a secondary school graduation certificate. Examples of some career areas are the hospitality/tourism industry, general mechanics and business education. Graduates of a career preparation program may be qualified to pursue further studies toward a profession, attend a college or Provincial institute to acquire further specialized education, or proceed directly to employment with some marketable skills. Secondary school teachers will need to cooperate with employers and post-secondary instructors to effectively integrate the career preparation programs.

Adults at the school and community level have a responsibility to ensure that all students will achieve a basic understanding and awareness of the world of work to prepare for emerging trends in society. Increased school and community cooperation through the career preparation program will provide appropriate educational and career development experiences to help students acquire marketable skills for future employment. This new program for the secondary schools is consistent with the general aims of the British Columbia school system in striving to meet the needs of all students.

The development of students who can think for themselves and learn on their own is one of the more important educational goals. In career preparation programs, practical experiences that combine methods, resources and activities provide an important teaching strategy to enhance learning and thinking abilities. Both individual and group problem solving strategies help students to utilize abstract thinking abilities through practical learning activities.

In the grade 11 and 12 school terms, students in career preparation programs have opportunities to apply basic skills and abilities gained from earlier educational experiences. Learning outcomes become more effective when students can develop abilities and talents with new applications and a wider variety of resources.

The career preparation programs in British Columbia senior secondary schools are designed to provide students with options that enable students to enter the work force, proceed to a college or Provincial institute or to pursue further academic studies leading to a professional career. Courses related to career fields at the senior secondary level are intended to improve the transition of students between school and employment and between school and post-secondary institutions. Students enrolled in a career preparation program will participate in cooperative career preparation studies to spend part of their school time in a learning situation in the community at a training station. This experience is designed to provide practical experience for a student in an occupational field directly related to a program specialty in the school.

All students will utimately enter the work force in some capacity and career preparation programs will assist students to recognize current occupational practices and the avenues for advancement toward career goals. From these experiences, students can be encouraged to recognize the spectrum of employment within an occupational cluster.

3.2 Core Curriculum

Many of the core curriculum learning outcomes are integral parts of the learning outcomes that comprise a career preparation program. Students will be encouraged to relate their basic education experiences to practical experiences through the application of talents, skills, abilities and competencies to simulated roles relative to future employment responsibilities.

Career preparation programs provide opportunities for students to apply the following aspects of the core curriculum to their school experiences: (a) reading; (b) writing; (c) speaking; (d) principles of measurement; (e) roles, responsibilities and rights of the individual in society; (f) research and study skills; and (g) inquiry, analysis and problem solving. Practical application of the skills and purposes of the core curriculum to the career preparation program will help students to function effectively as active and responsible citizens.

3.3 Responsibility of the School Staff

Preparation for employment concerns everyone and the educational experiences of a student have a direct impact on each person's selection of a career path. One's choice of an occupation is closely aligned with the desires for a particular lifestyle. Teachers in our schools have a major responsibility to assist students in the development of attitudes toward work and the rewards that one may expect from future employment. School experiences should help people to prepare for satisfying and successful employment. From this premise, there is increasing recognition of the need for students to relate their school experiences to career goals and the benefits that can be derived from the completion of courses for career advancement.

The school experience for students should include the acquisition of career information, the development of skills and talents for specific occupations and the opportunity to gain practical experience along with completion of general education requirements. The purpose of career preparation is to provide students with information and generalized skills which apply to a broad series of interrelated occupations. Students will then be able to make meaningful decisions concerning the advantages and disadvantages of occupations. Along with the general education requirements a student on a career preparation program will complete the following studies in grades 11 and 12.

Grade 11: General orientation to an occupational cluster will be provided in school by practical experience in a career field and cooperative career preparation studies. To understand the occupational competencies required in vocations, students will have access to resource people and to information that will help them select a career. This cooperative approach to the involvement of community personnel is designed to broaden the students' educational background and perspective of possible career paths.

Development of skills and talents is the primary purpose of the practical experiences. Courses that comprise the specialty area of study must be directly related to occupational requirements for future employment and to the related programs offered at colleges and Provincial institutes.

Each course is divided into units and modules with student experiences described in terms of learning outcomes. Students will have the opportunity to explore a wide variety of core skills in an occupational field and the expected performance levels will be identified from the curriculum outline.

Grade 12: Student attendance in these courses will lead to the acquisition of skills and talents which may qualify them for entry level employment in related occupations and/or for advanced standing at a post-secondary institution. Emphasis is on career preparation; not on training for specific jobs. As students build on the earlier experiences from grade 11, they will be better prepared to focus on their future career goals.

Classroom experiences will be supplemented by cooperative career preparation studies which provide for community based learning external to the school. Teachers in each career preparation program will arrange with employers in the community for each student to acquire practical experience and will then conduct visitations to the training station to assess this learning experience. The external practical component of the program must be scheduled for a minimum of 100-120 hours with a well defined training plan. The personal contact between teacher/employer/student will strengthen the program. Teachers should assume the responsibility for coordinating the activities both at the school and the training station.

3.4 Definitions

Career Preparation Program: A Career Preparation Program is defined as a selection and arrangement of courses in general education subjects and courses in major vocational fields to form a systematic pattern leading to graduation from a senior secondary school with advanced admission to a post-secondary program and/or direct entry to employment. Requirements to complete a program consists of six approved specialty courses (including cooperative career preparation studies) together with prescribed constant courses and electives to meet the criteria for secondary school graduation in British Columbia.

Career Preparation Program Teacher: A suitably qualified teacher employed by a school to teach a specialty subject and who, in addition, has the responsibility of coordinating and supervising related job experience.

Cooperative Career Preparation: The process of integrating the instructional, administrative and organizational activities of career preparation experience into a cooperative relationship between the school and the community.

Cooperative Education: A comprehensive term used to describe shared responsibilities and roles of teachers and employers in the provision of educational experiences that will prepare people for employment.

District Work Experience Coordinator: A teacher employed by a school board to direct, coordinate and supervise work experience and cooperative career preparation studies for the whole school district.

Training Plan: A written outline indicating what is to be learned by the student at the training station and what is to be taught in the school.

Training Sponsor: The individual at the training station directly responsible for the supervision of the student's activities external to the school.

Training Station: The location external to the school where the student receives training related to an individual career development plan.

Work Experience: Activities at a training station undertaken by a student as an integral part of an approved school program under the cooperative supervision of a qualified work experience teacher and an employer.

3.5 Definition of Curriculum Terms

Learning Package: A self-contained package, comprised of a series of modules sequenced in a logical way to progressively build knowledge and skills which will enable attainment of an intended learning outcome. The package should include a diagnostic pretest and a posttest.

Learning Outcome: A learning outcome stated in behavioural, measurable, or performance terms is an assertion of what is expected to happen as a result of learning having taken place. The statement usually defines what the activity and subject matter will be, the conditions under which it will take place, and the minimum performance standard required. The purposes of the learning outcomes are:

a. The student and teacher know what is expected upon completion of an instructional unit.
b. The most appropriate instructional materials and strategy can be chosen in order to ensure achievement of the learning outcome.
c. The statements provide a basis for measuring student progress related to the learning tasks.

Module: A combination of goals, instructions, content, and activities which facilitate the development of a desired competency. Each module focuses on a specific job task and learning outcome. Modules may focus on the need for essential knowledge, or hands-on practice, or integration of knowledge and skills to perform a job task.

Modules for Self-paced Instruction: The students can work through the modules, with the supervision of the teacher, at their own pace, instead of an imposed time schedule. The module is completed when the student demonstrates mastery of the intended learning outcome.

Vocational Education: The educational experiences offered at the secondary and post-secondary school levels that provide individuals with skills and talents to develop capacities for: (a) entry level employment, or (b) upgrading in an occupation, or (c) retraining in a new occupation, leading to qualifications for employment requiring less than a university degree upon completion of the program.

PART 4.0 GOALS OF CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAMS

4.1 Review Process

From a review in 1977 of the effectiveness of secondary programs to adequately prepare students for future employment, three conclusions were made:

a. There was a need to undertake a more efficient and relevant use of student time for the grade 11 and 12 years.
b. There was a lack of realistic orientation to the world of work and this was deemed to contribute to the poor employment situation for many students.
c. There was evidence from the Report of the Commission on Vocational, Technical and Trades Training in British Columbia, (1977) that more effective vocational training was needed in grades 11 and 12 to adequately prepare some students for direct entry into the work force.

Pilot programs in career preparation were undertaken in various areas of the province between 1977 and 1980 and the results of these programs supported assumptions that:

a. in addition to the present provisions for secondary school graduation, the school may extend the opportunity in grades 11 and 12 for a student to gain marketable skills and/or advanced standing in post-secondary courses or programs;
b. the provision of employment skills should not reduce the percentage of graduating students when compared to the school population generally;
c. the provision of marketable skills should have a positive effect upon the graduates' employment opportunities when compared to the total graduate population;
d. the monitoring of the pilot projects would provide information on the effects of the projects on the number of students choosing to further their full time studies;
e. the pilot projects would have a positive effect upon the total integration process between secondary and post-secondary education (including the Apprenticeship Branch of the Ministry of Labour);
f. the funding arrangements for the pilot project would provide the information necessary to establish a rational system of funding if the projects are extended to the whole province;
g. monitoring of the pilot projects would provide information on the effects of the project on:
    i. the basic comprehensive graduation programs offered in the schools;
    ii. the standards and expectations of post-secondary courses and programs with respect to secondary schools, and
    iii. the possible areas of conflict regarding the responsibilities of the secondary school and teachers and the post-secondary institutions and instructors.

4.2 Recommendations

In 1980, the Ministry of Education agreed to the recommendations of a steering committee that the career preparation program receive formal endorsation. Four goals for the program were established. The Ministry of Education should:

a. foster career training in the schools without sacrificing the general education function of the school,
b. increase the articulation of programs between secondary schools and post-secondary institutions through joint development of relevant curriculum units in career and vocational areas,
c. define the career preparation program and monitor career training in order to assure the status, quality and provincial credibility of such training, and
d. develop, through joint consultation, the administrative framework which will guide the general and specific conditions for course recognition by post-secondary institutions.

The primary goal for the career preparation program is to provide students at secondary schools with the opportunity to gain increased awareness of career and employment needs without sacrificing the general educational function of the schools. Courses are designed to integrate with the business and industrial community and with post-secondary colleges and Provincial institutes.

4.3 Student Outcomes

Goals for student outcomes in career preparation programs are:

a. to develop competencies and marketable skills for some individuals to prepare for an entry level job;
b. to acquire prerequisite qualifications for some individuals who may pursue further training and/or advanced placement in an integrated program at a post-secondary school;
c. to attain skills necessary to locate, read and comprehend material or literature related to their particular field of career interest;
d. to attain a basic level of skills and talents needed for employment in a particular vocation (occupation);
e. to achieve the competencies necessary for critical thinking and problem solving in a specialized area of study;
f. to develop self-discipline for constructive work and study habits;
g. to develop feelings of pride and self-confidence in achievement and progress;
h. to acquire a sense of respect and concern toward personal property as well as the property of others;
i. to increase personal and social competencies and acquire a sense of social responsibility; and
j. to increase cooperative work skills to attain group goals.

PART 5.0 ORGANIZATION

A career preparation program has been defined as a selection and arrangement of courses in general education subjects and in major vocational fields to form a systematic pattern leading to secondary school graduation with qualifications for direct entry to employment and/or advanced admission to a post-secondary school program.

5.1 Goals and Outcomes

General goals are provided for each program, each course, and for each module within the course. These goals are intended to provide general direction to the teachers, students and employers to indicate the broad parameters at each level.

Learning outcomes are specified for each module in terms that will indicate the performance levels that students are expected to achieve for completion of each unit and course. Criterion referenced tests may be developed by teachers to ensure that projected competencies for students are similar in various regions of the province.

5.2 Program Requirements

Requirements to complete a career preparation program consist of four constant courses, six provincially approved specialty courses and at least two additional elective courses for a minimum of twelve courses to meet the requirements for secondary school graduation. Within the six specialty courses of approximately 120 hours each (minimum of 700 hours), students will complete units in cooperative career preparation studies in grades 11 and 12.

Courses in the sample outline that follows for a student program in grades 11 and 12 should be regarded as the basic requirements for graduation with a career preparation specialty. There will be situations where it will be necessary, and to the student's advantage, to apply the elective courses to subjects as mathematics, physics or general business to acquire adequate preparation for a vocational choice or for requirements of a post-secondary institution. Students planning on a career in trades related to general mechanics will benefit from a mathematics course while another student may require a business education course for a career in the hospitality industry. The student program should be organized to provide the most useful background for entry into a chosen career field.

CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM FOR

METAL FABRICATION

CONSTANTS (4)	English 11		
	English 12		
	Social Studies 11		
	Physical and Health Education 11		
SPECIALTY (6)	C P 11 Metal Fabrication		Minimum of 700 hours
	C P 11 Metal Fabrication		
	C P 11 Metal Fabrication		
	C P 12 Metal Fabrication	Machinist Training	
	C P 12 Metal Fabrication	Sheet Metal	
	C P 12 Metal Fabrication	Welding	
		Millwright	
ELECTIVES (4)	4 courses		

SECONDARY SCHOOL REQUIREMENTS - completion of a minimum of twelve courses for graduation. For further details, refer to the Administrative Handbook 1981.

5.3 Guidelines

The fundamental purpose in the foregoing organization is to ensure that students complete the general education constants and acquire some specialized experiences that will prepare them for employment or continuing education. When students enter a career preparation program in grade 11, they will concentrate on the acquisition of core skills related to an occupational field or industry. Development of personal and interpersonal skills and an orientation to the organization of business and labour will be an integral part of the learning process.

In grade 12, the students will move from the core skills acquired in grade 11 to more specific skills related to an occupational/vocational choice. During this school year, students will gain practical experience in community based learning activities at a job site for a minimum period of 100 - 120 hours. Teachers of the specialty courses will arrange for the external practical experience with various business firms and visit each student at the training station as part of the cooperative career preparation studies. Teachers should prepare information that will assist the employer in assessing the performance of the student at a training station.

Practical experience is an integral part of the educational program for students enrolled in career preparation. School credit is granted for the cooperative career preparation component at a job site but the student should not be paid wages while working under the supervision of school personnel. The student must not displace a regular employee and should recognize that there is no assurance of a job at the conclusion of the training period.

In addition to Workers' Compensation Board coverage for school arranged cooperative career preparation with an employer, a student or their parents may choose to purchase personal accident insurance. Any student under the age of majority requires parent or guardian approval in writing before participating in a learning situation external to the school. Further details and approval forms are available from the Ministry of Education (Career Programs).

5.4 Advisory Committees

Advisory committees can perform a valuable role in the development of career preparation programs. The advice and guidance provided to teachers by representatives of employers, employees and the community is extremely important. The function of the advisory committee is not to establish policy or to make financial decisions but this voluntary group can provide a vital communication link between the school and the community. Recommendations for action will represent the best advice available to plan viable programs for the benefit of the student.

Functions of advisory committees as they relate to career preparation programs are:

- a. to assist in determining and evaluating the needs which the program is designed to meet;
- b. to assist in defining relevant program objectives;
- c. to assist in promoting public awareness of the instructional program by colleges, unions, professional associations, employers and appropriate community groups and government;
- d. to assist in securing community support of the instructional program, including formal recognition by industry and regulatory bodies, as well as government approval;
- e. to assist in the placement of graduates; and
- f. to assist in obtaining and coordinating student field experience in the community.

Advisory committees should have representation, where appropriate, from the secondary school, school district, local industry, unions or related associations, and post-secondary institutions in the region. A suggested composition for the advisory committee would include: Superintendent of Schools or representative; school principal or representative; teacher(s); college or Provincial institute representative; employer representative(s); employee representative; district career coordinator (work experience coordinator); labour representative; school trustee.

5.5 Cooperative Education

Education is currently viewed as the way to prepare people for their lifework and the need for experiential learning is evident. One of the proven methods for the student to develop responsibility and dependability within the educational process is to arrange for organized learning experiences with an employer. Opportunities can be provided for the student to gain practical experience with an employer under the concept of cooperative education. The primary purpose of cooperative education is to provide the student with planned and evaluated practice/experiences which will enhance the integration of theory learned in the classroom with pragmatic requirements of the work situation. Acceptance of this premise implies that there are definite procedures that must be followed for implementing cooperative education practices.

Primary responsibility rests with the teacher to:

- a. design an overall plan for the student to participate in cooperative education;
- b. involve the advisory committee to validate proposed plans before implementation;
- c. consult with teachers, counsellors and CHOICES specialists concerning career goals for students;
- d. establish and maintain training stations;

e. outline parameters of student experiences to be provided by employers;
f. develop a training plan of proposed experiences and how these activities relate to school based courses;
g. provide guidelines that may be used by the employers;
h. outline the legal requirements that apply to students for compliance with guidelines from Ministry of Education, Ministry of Labour and the Workers' Compensation Board;
i. contact the local office of the appropriate labour organization (where applicable);
j. conduct visits with each student at the training stations; and
k. determine and implement the evaluation procedures that will be used for each student in the course.

In conducting the cooperative education component of a career preparation program, the teacher coordinator is of vital importance to the operation of a successful plan. Detailed planning and evaluation procedures will enable all the affected parties to contribute to the learning experiences of each student. All activities between the school and a business must be coordinated in a manner that allows maximum opportunity for each student to practice what they learn. When evaluation techniques are well designed, the teacher and the advisory committee will be able to analyze the results and consider changes for improving this aspect of experiential learning.

Educational planning for cooperative career preparation experiences are incorporated as an integral part of this curriculum guide. The provision of the cooperative career preparation studies cannot be implemented as a separate component in isolation to approved courses. When people from the education system develop a cooperative approach with the business community to the learning needs of students, the transition from school to work will be more effective for all students who participate in cooperative career preparation.

Teachers of career preparation programs will need to coordinate their planning with a district staff person assigned to coordinate activities between the schools and employers. In large school districts there will be greater need to develop procedures between schools to organize the efforts of teachers who provide general work experience for students in any subjects and for students in the cooperative career preparation studies. The district coordinator will be responsible for maintaining consistency in policy and ensuring that all legal requirements are complied with according to school board policies.

PART 6.0 EVALUATION

6.1 Evaluation Process

One of the important components of the Career Preparation Program that is critical to the successful acceptance by the community and post-secondary institutions is the matter of evaluation. Criteria within a curriculum guide for student performance must be established to indicate student progress. Evaluation must be consistent to provide the necessary documentation of the student achievement. Each program is organized in units and modules to indicate expected performance in terms of intended learning outcomes. On the basis of the statements concerning student performance, various testing methods may be employed to validate the achievement for the benefit of the students, parents, post-secondary teachers and potential employers.

Included in the evaluation process will be tests to consider progress in the affective, cognitive, psychomotor and perceptive domains. Terminal performance should consider theoretical knowledge, practical skills and the personal and interpersonal attributes that contribute to successful employment. Students are expected to affirm their understanding of the learning outcomes for each module through valid expression of their skills and talents. Indications of their cooperation with others and attitudes to work and future learning needs are an important consideration of the evaluation process for career preparation.

Students can be encouraged to judge their own progress in relation to the established objectives for the modules comprising a course outline. Rigid time limits for each module are not prescribed since there is recognition of the variable abilities of individuals to acquire skills and talents necessary for acceptable performance.

Learning outcomes and criteria have been stated according to the perceived needs of the students, employers and instructors of related courses and programs in colleges and Provincial institutes. Evaluation techniques and methods must be flexible but the results should indicate the standard of performance that has been achieved. Collaboration between teachers at secondary schools and instructors at post-secondary institutions is essential to ensure that the goals of the program are being met to effectively integrate courses which comprise each career preparation program. Regular meetings of advisory committees will help facilitate reviews of the goals and objectives and ensure that the interests of the concerned individuals are being considered.

Evaluation processes should be designed to assist students to acquire the necessary skills and talents that will be useful for a vocational goal. Performance criteria can be reviewed at appropriate intervals to ensure that standards are realistic and that employers and post-secondary instructors are satisfied with the graduates of the programs. Students should acquire a broad view of an employment field before they select an occupation that will require concentrated study and preparation. Qualifications for one job are often related to other jobs and the evaluation process must be designed to enhance student growth for employability in related occupations. Procedures for testing in any career area should help and not hinder student growth in the realization of personal goals that will lead to gainful employment. Evaluation should clarify the capabilities of individuals and provide essential information to students, parents and employers.

6.2 Determination of Performance Criteria

Part of the learning process concerns the evaluation process and various methods may be used by teachers to determine the progress of students. Teacher strategies will be employed in the affective, cognitive, psychomotor and perceptive domains. Performance levels in the cognitive domain will usually be assessed by formal written exams. In addition, there will be procedures to determine performance in the practical demonstration of abilities and other tests that will require the professional expertise of the teacher to assess performance levels. There are at least six evaluation procedures that teachers may apply to assess student progress toward the learning outcomes in this curriculum guide.

A bank of evaluation resource materials, including curriculum referenced tests and procedures for evaluating manipulative skills, will be developed and made available on a provincial basis to assist the classroom teacher and to serve as external benchmarks. At the same time, within the six categories below, it is expected that teachers will develop and share other materials that may be applied to the instructional process.

- Comprehensive written examination (on the cognitive level for all aspects of subject matter)
- Practical demonstration (on manipulative skills)
- Oral examination (on verbal descriptions of processes)
- Team or group examination (on activities that involve two or more students)
- Observation
- Questionnaire/opinionnaire instrument (on reactions from cooperative education experiences)

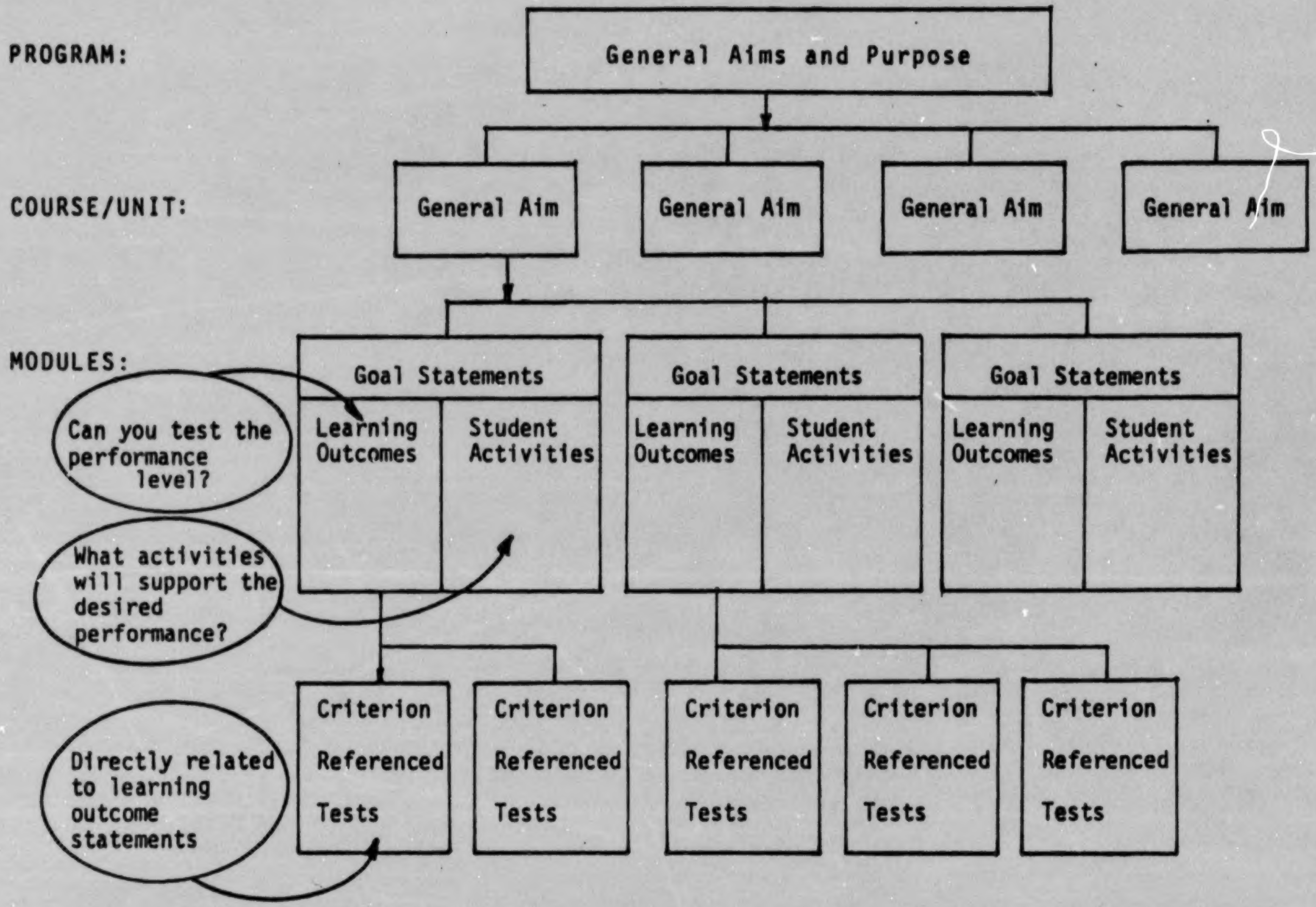
CURRICULUM FORMAT

The following sections of this curriculum guide consist of:

- Aims and purposes for students enrolled in a Career Preparation Program for Metal Fabrication.
- Course/unit general aims which indicate the general knowledge/skill required to achieve a satisfactory level of performance,
- Goal statements and learning outcomes for each module with student outcomes for the expected levels of achievement,
- Student activities designed to support the learning outcomes of each module, and
- Bibliography and resources that may be used to assist the student achieve the learning outcomes.

The learning outcomes specify the minimum levels that are essential for the satisfactory completion of each module. This information is compiled under particular topics but the sequence of teaching any aspect of the program is the responsibility of the teacher. Professional expertise should be applied to plan instruction and to expand and enhance student performance without undue reliance on tests to measure cognitive knowledge. In the process of evaluation the teacher should consider all aspects which contribute to the effective mastery of skills for each occupation. Evaluation should include assessment of skills, knowledge, talents, personal and interpersonal behaviour related to a vocation. The development of attitudes toward the work ethic should be considered in the provision of experiences leading to successful employment.

Essential components to support the learning experiences outlines in courses will be cooperative career preparation studies. Teachers should develop procedures with business personnel in the community to ensure that cooperative activities at school and in the community are provided for all aspects of the career preparation program. Organized learning experiences away from the school building should be related to particular goals and learning outcomes stated in the following sections of this curriculum guide.


PROGRAM:
General Aims and Purpose
COURSE/UNIT:
General Aim
General Aim
General Aim
General Aim
MODULES:
Goal Statements
Learning Outcomes
Student Activities
Goal Statements
Learning Outcomes
Student Activities
Goal Statements
Learning Outcomes
Student Activities
Can you test the performance level?
What activities will support the desired performance?
Directly related to learning outcome statements
Criterion Referenced Tests
Criterion Referenced Tests
Criterion Referenced Tests
Criterion Referenced Tests
Criterion Referenced Tests

Section Two
CP 11 ~ Metal Fabrication

CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM

PAGE

SECTION TWO - C P 11 - METAL FABRICATION. 35

UNIT 1.0 - COOPERATIVE CAREER PREPARATION (SCHOOL BASED) 36

MODULE 1.01 - CAREER DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNICATION. . 37

MODULE 1.02 - WORK ETHIC AND WORK OBSERVATION 40

MODULE 1.03 - ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURES AND ROLE OF MANAGEMENT AND LABOUR 41

MODULE 1.04 - WORKING CONDITIONS AND LABOUR LEGISLATION 43

MODULE 1.05 - JOB SEARCH SKILLS AND JOB INTERVIEWS. . 44

MODULE 1.06 - FIELD TRIPS AND RESOURCE SPEAKERS . . . 46

MODULE 1.07 - EDUCATIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CAREER PLANNING. 47

UNIT 2.0 - SHOP PRACTICES, HUMAN RELATIONS AND SAFETY PROCEDURES 48

MODULE 2.01 - SHOP RULES AND PRACTICES. 48

MODULE 2.02 - HUMAN RELATIONS AND PERSONAL ATTRIBUTES 51

MODULE 2.03 - GENERAL SHOP ADMINISTRATION 54

MODULE 2.04 - EMERGENCY PROCEDURES (FIRE AND MEDICAL ROUTINES) 55

UNIT 3.0 - TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT. 57

MODULE 3.01 - USE AND CARE OF HAND TOOLS. 57

MODULE 3.02 - MEASURING TOOLS 58

MODULE 3.03 - LAYOUT TOOLS. 61

MODULE 3.04 - USE AND CARE OF PORTABLE POWER TOOLS AND ACCESSORIES 64

PAGE

UNIT 4.0 - FASTENERS. 65

MODULE 4.01 - TYPES OF FASTENERS. 65

UNIT 5.0 - TECHNICAL - READING, WRITING AND REPORTING . 67

MODULE 5.01 - TECHNICAL REPORTS AND WORK SHEETS . . . 67

UNIT 6.0 - MECHANICAL DRAWING CONCEPTS. 69

MODULE 6.01 - BASIC CONCEPTS. 69

MODULE 6.02 - MEASUREMENT 71

MODULE 6.03 - PICTORIAL DRAWINGS. 72

MODULE 6.04 - ORTHOGRAPHIC DRAWINGS 73

MODULE 6.05 - CONVENTIONAL LINES AND SYMBOLS. 75

MODULE 6.06 - CONVENTIONAL CONCEPTS 77

UNIT 7.0 - SOFT AND SILVER SOLDERING 80

MODULE 7.01 - SOFT SOLDER 80

MODULE 7.02 - SOFT SOLDER APPLICATION 82

MODULE 7.03 - SILVER SOLDER 83

UNIT 8.0 - GAS WELDING OPERATIONS 84

MODULE 8.01 - WELDING SAFETY PRACTICES. 84

MODULE 8.02 - STORAGE AND HANDLING OF OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS CYLINDERS. 85

MODULE 8.03 - HANDLING AND OPERATING OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT 86

MODULE 8.04 - ASSEMBLY OF OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT . . 87

MODULE 8.05 - TESTING FOR LEAKS 88

MODULE 8.06 - CORRECTLY LIGHT AND SHUT DOWN THE OXY-ACETYLENE UNIT. 89

PAGE

MODULE 8.07 - TORCH LINE EXPLOSIONS 90

MODULE 8.08 - FIRE PREVENTION 91

MODULE 8.09 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS. 92

MODULE 8.10 - VENTILATION 93

MODULE 8.11 - WELDING AND CUTTING CONTAINERS. 94

MODULE 8.12 - PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT. 95

UNIT 9.0 - OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT. 96

MODULE 9.01 - OXY-ACETYLENE WELDING EQUIPMENT PROCESSES AND APPLICATIONS. 96

MODULE 9.02 - CONSTRUCTION OF OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS CYLINDERS 97

MODULE 9.03 - CONSTRUCTION OF PRESSURE REGULATORS . . 98

MODULE 9.04 - OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS HOSE. 99

MODULE 9.05 - OXY-ACETYLENE TORCHES 100

MODULE 9.06 - MANIFOLD SYSTEMS. 101

MODULE 9.07 - SELECTION OF FLAMES 102

MODULE 9.08 - TIP SELECTION AND MAINTENANCE 103

UNIT 10.0 - OXY-ACETYLENE WELDING, BRAZING AND CUTTING (O.A.W.). 104

MODULE 10.01 - WELDING POSITIONS. 104

MODULE 10.02 - SELECTION OF FILLER METALS 105

MODULE 10.03 - FOREHAND WELD. 106

MODULE 10.04 - BEADING. 107

MODULE 10.05 - CORNER JOINT 108

MODULE 10.06 - LAP JOINT. 109

MODULE 10.07 - EDGE JOINT 110

MODULE 10.08 - TEE JOINT. 111

MODULE 10.09 - BUTT JOINT 112

MODULE 10.10 - FUSION WELD OF CAST IRON 113

MODULE 10.11 - BRAZE WELDING. 114

MODULE 10.12 - BRAZE WELDING. 116

MODULE 10.13 - BRAZE WELDING. 117

MODULE 10.14 - BRAZE WELDING. 118

MODULE 10.15 - BRAZE WELDING. 119

MODULE 10.16 - BRAZE WELDING. 120

MODULE 10.17 - BRAZE WELDING. 121

MODULE 10.18 - GAS CUTTING OXY-FUEL CUTTING-ACETYLENE 122

MODULE 10.19 - GAS CUTTING OXY-FUEL CUTTING-ACETYLENE 126

UNIT 11.0 - SHIELDED METAL ARC WELDING. 130

MODULE 11.01 - FUNDAMENTALS OF ARC WELDING. 130

MODULE 11.02 - ARC WELDING SAFETY 132

MODULE 11.03 - ARC WELDING EXERCISES. 134

UNIT 12.0 - METALLURGY. 139

MODULE 12.01 - FERROUS METALS 139

MODULE 12.02 - NON-FERROUS METALS 142

MODULE 12.03 - WELDABILITY OF STEELS. 143

MODULE 12.04 - HEAT TREATMENT 144

MODULE 12.05 - SHAPES OF METALS 145

PAGE

UNIT 13.0 - POWER SAWS, SHAPERS AND MILLING MACHINES. . . . 146

MODULE 13.01 - POWER SAWS 146

MODULE 13.02 - SHAPERS. 148

MODULE 13.03 - MILLING MACHINES (VERTICAL, HORIZONTAL). 149

UNIT 14.0 - HOT METALS. 151

MODULE 14.01 - TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT. 151

MODULE 14.02 - FORGING AND BENDING. 152

MODULE 14.03 - FOUNDRY. 153

UNIT 15.0 - INTRODUCTION TO SHEET METAL 156

MODULE 15.01 - SHEET METAL TRADES 156

MODULE 15.02 - SAFETY IN THE SHEET METAL SHOP 157

MODULE 15.03 - COMMON SHEET METALS. 158

MODULE 15.04 - HAND TOOLS 159

MODULE 15.05 - SHEET METAL MACHINES 160

MODULE 15.06 - APPLIED GEOMETRY 161

MODULE 15.07 - SIMPLE PATTERN LAYOUT. 163

MODULE 15.08 - HEAVY GAUGE AND STRUCTURAL FABRICATION . 164

MODULE 15.09 - RADIAL LINE DEVELOPMENT. 165

MODULE 15.10 - HEAVY GAUGE AND STRUCTURAL FABRICATION . 166

UNIT 16.0 - GRINDING, POLISHING AND SURFACE FINISHING . . 167

MODULE 16.01 - GRINDING MACHINES 167

MODULE 16.02 - SAFETY PRECAUTIONS 168

MODULE 16.03 - BUFFING AND POLISHING. 169

MODULE 16.04 - PAINTING 170

MODULE 16.05 - PLATING AND COLOURING METAL SURFACES . . 171

PAGE

UNIT 17.0 - DRILLING, REAMING, TAPPING. 172

MODULE 17.01 - DRILLING MACHINES. 172

MODULE 17.02 - DRILLING MACHINES. 173

MODULE 17.03 - REAMING. 175

MODULE 17.04 - TAPS AND DIES. 176

UNIT 18.0 - LATHES. 177

MODULE 18.01 - LATHE NOMENCLATURE 177

MODULE 18.02 - WORK HOLDING 178

MODULE 18.03 - LATHE CUTTING TOOLS. 179

MODULE 18.04 - FEEDS AND SPEEDS 180

MODULE 18.05 - OPERATIONS 181

C P 11 - METAL FABRICATION

The primary aim of the Metal Fabrication is to provide learning experiences for students to develop marketable skills for employment or to qualify for advanced standing in a related program at a post-secondary college or provincial institute. Part of the program includes an integral component of cooperative career preparation studies which is designed to orient students to the requirements of employment through work study experiences. This component can be organized by the specialist teacher to use various resource persons who can provide the expertise necessary to help students understand aspects of career preparation studies.

Student should acquire knowledge of:

a. career opportunities and educational requirements in the metal fabrication industry;

b. basic practices in the development of generic skills;

c. theory and operation of fitting, machining and fabrication of metals;

d. concepts applicable to the mathematics, layout and measuring of the metal trades;

e. practice of clean, safe and orderly work habits;

f. employment opportunities and occupational qualifications needed for initial job entry levels;

g. continuing education opportunities at various post-secondary institutions;

h. job satisfaction concepts and an appreciation of work ethics for successful employment;

i. attitudes and skills required for entry and advancement in occupations related to metal fabrication; and

j. surveys of industrial shops through field trips to develop an appreciation of actual working conditions.

UNIT 1.0 COOPERATIVE CAREER PREPARATION (SCHOOL BASED)

Career planning and preparation involves a combination of educational experiences that will enhance the individual's personal development and provide practical experiences leading to a vocational field of interest. Cooperative educational experiences are designed to provide opportunities for students to become involved in career related experiences through community participation. In grade 11 the students will have opportunities to:

a. learn about career development within the course requirements,
b. observe employees at work in the community,
c. participate in discussion with resource persons from the community,
d. acquire knowledge of proven procedures for job searching and interviewing, and
e. become aware of educational requirements for particular careers.

These educational experiences are intended to be an integral part of the learning experiences within the career preparation program. Students will gain further experiences in cooperative education in grade 12 through actual work experience in the community.

General Aims

The student will:

a. gain practical assistance in making the transition from school to a career field of interest,
b. develop skills and abilities that are needed for employment in a career field of the student's choice,
c. be prepared to enter the world of work with an increased measure of competence,
d. develop respect for other people and the work that they do,
e. develop a systematic approach to solving problems,
f. participate in discussions related to career choice and life style to increase the student's awareness of the importance to health, happiness and economic security.

MODULE 1.01 CAREER DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNICATION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student:

a. increase awareness of the job opportunities in the community;
b. gain insight into the aptitudes and skills required for various occupations;
c. develop a relationship between immediate experiences and decisions that influence their evolving career development;
d. understand factors that influence the choice of a vocation or profession;
e. develop suitable, realistic and personally desirable career goals;
f. enter the world of work with an increased measure of competence;
g. gain experiences in decision-making skills;
h. understand communication processes and barriers;
i. learn and practice good work habits for employment situations;
j. acquire skills in writing reports in a specified format.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.01.01 identify reasons that lead people to work	- consider why people work - discuss work ethic, social values, economic independence
1.01.02 analyze and list tentative vocational choices in the metal trades - machinist - millwright - tool and die maker - machinist fitter - sheet metal worker - boiler maker - plater and fitter - welder - plumber - pipe fitter - iron worker - structural steel worker	- compare vocational family grouping of occupations

- blacksmith and farrier - foundry worker - production fabricator - auto body man - refrigeration mechanic - saw filing fitter - aircraft sheet metal worker - gas fitter - oil burner mechanic - roofer	
1.01.03 analyze factors to consider in career selection	- discuss reasons for people to work - examine job cluster charts - discuss educational requirements of jobs - identify factors to consider in career decisions - discuss career 'payoffs'
1.01.04 convey positive attitudes toward punctuality, honesty, courtesy, responsibility and cooperation	- discuss company losses due to theft, absenteeism, shoplifting, material wastage - discuss employee responsibilities and personal relations.
1.01.05 identify factors that influence the student's vertical and horizontal mobility in a selected career field	- analyze qualifications for job entry - use examples from industry
1.01.06 practice communication skills in an employment situation	- view films or read examples and react - discuss importance of clear communication
1.01.07 describe successful work behaviour - attitudes, skills and responsibilities	

1.01.08	
participate and use communication skills in group interaction situations	
1.01.09	
use verbal and non-verbal communication skills	- participate in small and large group discussions - listen to instructions and restate them accurately and interpret them
1.01.10	
list three things that influence how one makes a decision	- react to problem situations - discuss communication techniques to resolve a problem situation
1.01.11	
speak clearly and confidently in situations involving another individual or a group and using a telephone	
1.01.12	
participate and use communication skills in group interaction situations	- work with other students in class
1.01.13	
prepare a brief report or memo from prepared examples of occupational situations	- review and discuss types of reports used in various employment situations, e.g. accident reports, evaluation, communications, etc.
1.01.14	
prepare a report of a work situation in school	- discuss reports

MODULE 1.02 WORK ETHIC AND WORK OBSERVATION

Goal Statements

The learning activities in this module are designed to:

a. review the concept of 'work ethic' in relation to the economy,
b. provide each student with various methods of conducting observation (shadowing) session, and
c. increase the student's ability to interview and gather information from people.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.02.01 describe positive work habits and attitudes	- class discussion - discuss job/career satisfaction
1.02.02 conduct a informational gathering analysis of a particular occupation	- discuss the nature of work tasks and social skills - examine the impact of technology change
1.02.03 prepare a brief oral report on a selected career that outlines advantages and disadvantages for employment in the field	- review social and economic aspects of various occupations - examine present and future demands for employment in particular jobs.
1.02.04 list the safety factors that are critical to a particular job	- consider training needs - discuss "external" dangers, and jobs with high degree of risk in maintenance, e.g. mine sites - research importance of "safety attitude" - categorize "risk" factors
1.02.05 list training requirements for three specific careers in area of interest	- use related resource information and sources of career information

MODULE 1.03 ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURES AND ROLE OF MANAGEMENT AND LABOUR

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student relate individual jobs to various organizational structures,
b. provide examples of the inter-relationships of occupations and functions in a company related to mechanical trades,
c. help each student to understand the function and responsibility of management,
d. help the student recognize the role of the labour organizations in company operations,
e. orient the student to the respective roles of labour and management personnel,
f. provide the student with a brief overview of the process of contract negotiations,
g. increase student awareness of the contribution of labour to economic growth and development in the country,
h. provide information that outlines the contribution of the labour movement to the social and economic growth of the country, and
i. examine the organizational structure and development of the major unions.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.03.01 prepare a chart to outline a typical company organization	- discuss the importance of various roles in a company - review organizational plan for small and large companies, identify "essential" positions
1.03.02 compare the essential differences between management roles and workers	
1.03.03 list some of the attributes of a manager and a leader	

1.03.04 list some of the methods used to accomplish company goals	- discuss social and consumer goals and needs
1.03.05 outline the steps that are followed for contract negotiations	- group discussions and guest speaker
1.03.06 debate an issue concerning any of these topics: unionism, capitalism, equal rights, sexual equality or employee benefits	- discuss with resource speakers
1.03.07 discuss the concept of the labour market in a career field and project conditions that would affect them	- discuss job stability - project employment needs and the role of labour
1.03.08 list the procedures to be followed in a grievance procedure	- use resource people from labour organizations
1.03.09 define common terminology, e.g. shop steward, local, grievance, negotiation process	- review prepared materials - read case studies (print, tape)
1.03.10 describe background for developments in the labour movement	- discuss handouts and films
1.03.11 make a flow chart on the labour organizational structure.	- group discussions and activities

MODULE 1.04 WORKING CONDITIONS AND LABOUR LEGISLATION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student:

a. become familiar with common requirements and responsibilities of an employee,
b. become aware of employee/employer rights under legislation,
c. develop an awareness of the legislative process and laws that protect employee rights, and
d. become familiar with the sources of information relative to employee rights and responsibilities.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.04.01 list examples of proper care of company equipment and materials	- differentiate between routing maintenance and careless breakage
1.04.02 list reasons for employee punctuality in five occupations	- discuss different occupational requirements
1.04.03 define 'overtime' in two different occupations	- discuss labour laws - relate concept of overtime to salary
1.04.04 complete various types of applications forms, income tax forms, time cards etc.	- practice completion of basic forms that employees use - calculate salary by day, week, month and year
1.04.05 analyze desirable and non-desirable considerations that relate to a specific geographical location for employment	- discuss particular jobs in urban, rural and remote areas

MODULE 1.05 JOB SEARCH SKILLS AND JOB INTERVIEWS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student:

a. become familiar with a disciplined and methodical approach to the job search process,
b. review examples of proven processes in preparing resumes and qualifications briefs,
c. analyze some non-traditional job search skills,
d. prepare for job interviews,
e. practice methods of conducting job interviews, and
f. review and clarify various methods of arranging and participation in an interview for employment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.05.01 identify the 'hidden' job market	- review methods used by people to find jobs
1.05.02 complete two resume outlines for simulated situations	- use various formats, chronological, functional, qualifications brief - organize information in an approved format and style
1.05.03 draft a covering letter for resume	- write letters and compare with others in class
1.05.04 examine procedures used to screen applicants for employment	- discuss various company personnel procedures
1.05.05 follow detailed instructions to complete an application form	- use and complete sample application forms

1.05.06 outline basic steps to follow for initial contact with an employer	- prepare a letter that requests an application form - discuss pros and cons of contracts by phone, letter or interview
1.05.07 apply successful job search techniques	- use resource personnel from Canada Employment and Immigration Commission (CEIC) - list agencies and organizations that may be contacted for jobs
1.05.08 list employment opportunities for a metal trades occupation from a search of: - newspaper classified sections - personal contacts - informational interviews (friends) - Canada Employment and Immigration Commission	- discuss terms and occupational titles for various occupations - interpret information from printed employment want ads
1.05.09 practice interviewing skills	- tape a simulated interview situation with other students - demonstrate appropriate manners and etiquette - writing letters of thanks where appropriate
1.05.10 prepare a job prospect card	- review examples and complete a sample

MODULE 1.06 FIELD TRIPS AND RESOURCE SPEAKERS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. provide the opportunity for occupational observation by utilizing the resources of the community, and
b. involve the community in the educational career development of students.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.06.01	
write a synopsis of a film or article on a career field of the student's choice	- view films or articles and discuss in class
1.06.02	
contact and arrange for a guest speaker to visit the class for a discussion	- discuss procedures and act as host/hostess
1.06.03	
interview three employers to record opinions and requirements that are deemed to be important to effective employment	- conduct interviews and make oral report to class
1.06.04	
prepare an outline of specific items on working conditions that should be observed during a plant visit	- complete written evaluation outline

MODULE 1.07 EDUCATIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CAREER PLANNING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to enter the world of work with an increased measure of competence;
b. help each student increase their awareness of a wide variety of career and educational options; and
c. provide the student with an understanding of opportunities for continuing education - university, college or Provincial institute programs.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
1.07.01	
identify the most powerful reinforcers to their proposed career choices	- class discussions
1.07.02	
list the names and locations of post-secondary institutions offering courses in three career fields	- review entry requirements, program offerings, length of terms for specific courses - select one career field and prepare an educational plan for report to class
1.07.03	
demonstrate an ability to define career ladders and how to reach more advanced positions	- review a line diagram of a company organization pattern - work from prepared samples to design a career ladder in a particular field of interest - interview people at different levels in a career area and assess opinions regarding job satisfaction

UNIT 2.0 SHOP PRACTICES, HUMAN RELATIONS AND SAFETY PROCEDURES

General Aim

The student should develop and apply positive attitudes toward the application of standard shop practices, interpersonal relations and observance of safety rules and regulations.

MODULE 2.01 SHOP RULES AND PRACTICES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help enable the student to acquire sufficient skills to identify, select, maintain and to safely operate shop equipment;
b. increase student awareness of the construction and operating principles of various items of shop equipment;
c. help each student acquire a sensitivity for determining stress and strain in certain lifting operations; and
d. safe use of compressed air and gas.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
2.01.01 identify safety and health hazards	- locate safety and health equipment and discuss reasons for safety and health protection
2.01.02 demonstrate good housekeeping habits	- list areas that require housekeeping and various methods used
2.01.03 maintain a clean and safe work area	- review both safe and unsafe work areas

2.01.04 use safety glasses, shields, guards, and other protective clothing according to prescribed standards	- discuss proper applications of protective equipment
2.01.05 identify and use proper cleaning agents	- study and discuss the characteristics of different cleaning agents and their applications
2.01.06 safely handle and store cleaning agents	- examine safety storage provided and consider applicable regulations
2.01.07 describe the design, safe operating procedures, and maintenance for general shop equipment	- proper cleaning and maintenance of equipment
2.01.08 explain first aid for common injuries; lay out procedure of response in any injury for your work situation	- discuss basic procedures for reporting and disposition of injuries
2.01.09 describe the need for the use of safety tags	- discuss the need for the use of safety tags
2.01.10 identify and explain the procedure to follow when finding a safety tag on a piece of equipment	- discuss the procedure to follow when finding a safety tag on a piece of equipment
2.01.11 state the basic steps to follow in filing a claim with Workers' Compensation Board	- discuss the importance of W.C.B. and their role in worker safety

2.01.12 list examples of legal protection for employees within Workers' Compensation Board	- discuss legal role of W.C.B. - consider limitations of first aid and importance of adequate training before treating injured persons

MODULE 2.02 HUMAN RELATIONS AND PERSONAL ATTRIBUTES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student:

a. develop an awareness of their own potential, a sense of pride in accomplishment and confidence in their own ability;
b. develop an awareness of appropriate standards of human relations for various occupations;
c. become familiar with techniques for improved interpersonal relations;
d. develop positive attitudes in relations with teachers and students;
e. appreciate the continuing importance of good human relations;
f. make an inventory of interests and capacities;
g. develop a sense of personal identity and worth;
h. consider the theories of perceiving people as individuals rather than identification by traditional sex roles in society;
i. prepare information regarding interests, temperaments and aptitudes required for various jobs;
j. recognize the importance of appearance and personal ethics to employment success; and
k. become aware of their own individual values and reactions toward people, situations and themselves.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
2.02.01	
exhibit positive behaviour towards other students	- role playing - display approved techniques for interpersonal relationships
2.02.02	
display acceptable manners in all activities	- discuss need for appropriate manners

2.02.03 demonstrate individual differences in perception	- use examples of good and poor relations between employers and employees; teachers and students
2.02.04 complete a self-appraisal outline on personal traits and attitudes	- discuss importance of personality, attitudes and health to occupations - assess personal traits and talents
2.02.05 assess strengths, capabilities and weaknesses of people	- consider and discuss problems in relation to employment roles - discuss the need to conform in specific situations - review the importance of health for employment - list positive and negative personal attributes
2.02.06 use particular skills necessary to gather, process and act upon information about self in relation to their environment	- discussion of self-development
2.02.07 recognize the importance of standards in appearance, dress and grooming, manners; and correct use of the English language	- observe films - review safe working conditions concerning dress
2.02.08 list factors that influence discrimination, i.e. race, religion and sex	- discuss equality of individuals - react to examples of prejudice - discuss ways to overcome discrimination

2.02.09 identify five important reasons for appropriate dress for an occupation	- group discussions
2.02.10 provide an example of a conflict situation created by employee/employer attitudes toward dress	- group discussions

MODULE 2.03 GENERAL SHOP ADMINISTRATION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. provide each student with a working knowledge of fundamental principles of shop systems, and
b. help each student recognize the need for efficiency in shop administration procedures.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
2.03.01 outline tool check out system in use	- become familiar with area for tool storage and check out system
2.03.02 recognize areas where specific types of work may take place	- sketch a simplified shop layout
2.03.03 direct responsibilities in a supervisory capacity during clean up	
2.03.04 list responsibilities required to maintain assigned area	

MODULE 2.04 EMERGENCY PROCEDURES (FIRE AND MEDICAL ROUTINES)

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to approved processes for dealing with emergencies in shop situations; and
b. describe the basic operation of four types of fire extinguishers (A B C D)

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
2.04.01 demonstrate proper procedures for assigned emergency situations	- discuss common injuries - review available safety films and procedures
2.04.02 distinguish between various classes of fires	- in group activities, use the correct fire fighting equipment and describe correct use of an oil fire (in a controlled environment)
2.04.03 describe the basic operation of four types of fire extinguishers (A B C D)	- examine all fire extinguishers - local fire department involvement
2.04.4 use appropriate fire extinguishers on different types of fires	- discuss school emergency exit procedures - practice prescribed exit procedures - inspect any given piece of fire fighting equipment and state the type of fire on which it may be used - review locations of extinguishers (refer to sketch of shop layout)

2.04.05 identify basic first aid procedures and telephone numbers for emergency assistance	- locate the required first aid equipment and discuss use

UNIT 3.0 TECHNICAL - READING, WRITING AND REPORTING

General Aim

The student should further develop skills for reading, writing and reporting information.

MODULE 3.01 TECHNICAL REPORTS AND WORK SHEETS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student read and interpret technical information,
b. increase student ability to use English in communication,
c. encourage neatness and legibility in all written work, and
d. to develop the abilities to record and maintain accurate work done.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
3.01.01 interpret technical text books and other reference sources	- review various manuals
3.01.02 complete a neat and legible report on an assigned reporting task	- at task completion, a short concise report is to be forwarded to the instructor for evaluation
3.01.03 maintain a neat and legible notebook on activities	
3.01.04 use correct English in verbal and written communications	- practice completion of daily work sheets

3.01.05 record information in a neat and legible format	
3.01.06 describe in appropriate terms, work performed during a day	- compare samples of worksheets
3.01.07 complete a basic 'time card' or record a work form	- compare various formats and assess need for accuracy and neatness

UNIT 4.0 FASTENERS

General Aim

The student should develop an understanding of fastening devices and their selection, installation and maintenance.

MODULE 4.01 TYPES OF FASTENERS

Goal Statements

The learnings experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student identify and select common fasteners,
b. increase ability to classify into categories various types of fasteners,
c. make students aware of the types and uses of adhesives, and
d. make students aware of the consequences of using dissimilar metals in fasteners.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
4.01.01	
identify and classify types of threads according to: a. size b. pitch c. thread series d. thread classes - S.I. metric - unified - Imperial e. pipe threads	- study and discuss the reasons for using different types of threads - identify threads for a variety of fasteners from a large assortment
4.01.02	
identify and classify a. types of bolts and machine screws b. types of bolt heads - hex - square - Allen or socket - Phillips - Robertson - slotted	- use pitch gauge, steel rule and calipers to measure bolts and nut sizes - compare common uses of bolts and screws

4.01.03	
identify and classify various types of nuts: - hex - square - slotted hex - castellated - acorn - pal - interference - self locking	- common use of nuts
4.01.04	
identify and classify types of: - flat washers - lock washers - snap rings	- compare common uses of washers
4.01.05	
identify and classify self tapping screws: - type A sheetmetal screws - drive screws - head shapes	- compare thread configurations and common uses - compare various types and uses
4.01.06	
identify and classify various types of pins: - cotter - spring - dowels - aligning - taper	- compare common uses

UNIT 5.0 TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

General Aim

The student should develop an understanding of the proper use care of tools used in the metal trades.

MODULE 5.01 USE AND CARE OF HAND TOOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help student identify, select, use and maintain hand tools necessa use in the metal trades.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
5.01.01 identify and select appropriate hand tools required for use in the metal trades	- list usage of hand t
5.01.02 demonstrate a knowledge of metric and imperial tool sizes	
5.01.03 explain the construction, safe handling and techniques of hand tools such as: - hammers, punches - wrenches, pliers - chisels, files, hacksaws, drills - vises, clamps	- use hand tools: - hammers, punches - chisels, pliers, wrenches - files, hacksaws - screwdrivers - clamp, vises

MODULE 5.02 MEASURING TOOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student identify, select and become proficient in handling non-precision and precision instruments, and interpreting their readings (both S.I. metric and Imperial).

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
5.02.01	
state the necessity of measuring instruments such as: - steel scales - tapes - inside calipers - outside calipers - squares - hermaphrodite calipers - dividers - drill gauge - wire gauge - micrometers (outside, inside) - vernier calipers - dial indicators - feeler gauges - telescoping gauges - thread gauges	- discuss why exact measurements are required - use S.I. metric and Imperial - apply proper handling and manipulation techniques
5.02.02	
identify the specified steel measuring rules (flexible or non-flexible) in terms of: - types - values of graduations - obtainable measuring accuracy - measuring range - holding techniques for measuring, checking and layout operations - applications - determine and apply the correct methods of handling, storing and maintaining steel measuring rules	- discuss and use measuring instruments on sample pieces - use S.I. metric and Imperial

5.02.03

identify precision steel squares
- types
- sizes
- holding techniques for checking and layout operations
- applications

- discuss and use instruments on sample pieces

5.02.04

identify the micrometer (outside, inside, depth) measuring tools
- types
- components and working principles
- attaching and securing extension rods
- holding techniques for measuring operations
- setting, locking and measuring micrometers at determined values
- handling, storing and maintaining micrometers

- discuss and in small groups use micrometers on sample pieces

5.02.05

identify vernier calipers
- types
- components and working principles
- holding techniques for measuring operations
- setting and measuring calipers at determined values
- handling, storing and maintaining calipers

- discuss and in small groups use vernier calipers on sample pieces.

5.02.06

identify dial indicators
- types
- components and working principles
- obtainable measuring accuracy
- handling, storing and maintaining dial indicators

- discuss the use of dial indicators

5.02.07	
identify feeler gauges - types - overall checking range - using individual and combination blades to determine the correct measurement - holding techniques for checking operations - handling, storing and maintaining thickness gauge sets	- discuss and in small groups use feeler gauges on sample pieces
5.02.08	
identify telescoping gauges - overall checking range - applications - holding techniques for checking operation - setting, locking and measuring the overall valve with the outside micrometer - handling, storing and maintaining telescoping gauges	- discuss the use of telescoping gauges on sample pieces
5.02.09	
identify check gauges - drill gauges - wire gauges - pitch gauges - S.I. metric - Imperial	- discuss and use check gauges where applicable
5.02.10	
identify calipers - outside calipers - inside calipers - hermaphrodite calipers	- discuss and use calipers where applicable
5.02.11	
identify dividers	- discuss and use dividers
5.02.12	
select proper measuring devices for specific jobs	- study and discuss the reasons and advantages of each instrument - study and discuss the different measuring systems

MODULE 5.03 LAYOUT TOOLS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student identify, select and become proficient in the use of layout tools, and
b. help each student use layout tools to produce accurate layouts to specification.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
5.03.01	
identify and list various layout tools: - scribers (hook, pocket, straight) - steel rules (metric and imperial - precision square - combination set - plain steel protractor - hook rule - dividers - angle-plates - hermaphodite calipers - surface-gauge - trammels - centre punch - prick punch - surface plate - toolmakers clamp - vee blocks - scratch awl	- list basic layout tools

5.03.02

scribe a line parallel to a datum edge using various tools and methods

- steel rule and scriber
- combination set square and scriber
- hermaphrodite calipers
- surface plate, angle plate and surface gauge
- tool makers clamp and surface gauge

5.03.03

scribe a line at 90° to a datum edge using various methods and tools

- combination square
- precision square
- angle plate, precision square and surface gauge

5.03.04

scribe circles, arcs and tangent lines using various tools and methods

- dividers or compass
- trammels
- dividers and steel rule

5.03.05

scribe angles to specification using various tools and methods

- protractor
- protractor head (combination set square)
- vee block and surface gauge
- bevel vernier protractor

- layout a project or projects to include layout activities outlined in Modules 3.03.02 to 3.03.10 to specifications

5.03.06

layout equal distances with various tools and methods to specification

- dividers, layout equal distances around a circumference
- dividers, trammels, layout equal distances along a scribed line
- layout parallel lines with dividers
- layout perpendicular lines with dividers and trammels
- bisect an angle with dividers

5.03.07

find the centre of circles using various tools and methods

- hermaphrodite calipers
- dividers
- centre-head (combination set square)
- vee blocks and surface gauge

5.03.08

prick punch accurately around a finished layout

5.03.09

prepare a layout for drilling by prick punching, then centre punching

5.03.10

layout a double circle with centre lines to facilitate accurate drilling

MODULE 5.04 USE AND CARE OF PORTABLE POWER TOOLS AND ACCESSORIES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student identify, select, use and maintain portable power tools and accessories for use in the metal trades.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
5.04.01	
recognize the purpose, type and application of electrical and air power tools, i.e.: - portable drill presses - portable hand drills - portable hand grinders and polishers	- study and discuss power tools and accessories - discuss the effect of ferrous and non-ferrous metals on grinding wheels
5.04.02	
demonstrate the safe and correct use of electrical and air power tools	- after instruction, use appropriate equipment
5.04.03	
point out and list the care and service required for electrical and air power tools	- review manuals and assigned materials

UNIT 6.0 MECHANICAL DRAWING CONCEPTS

General Aim

The student should develop skills to read, sketch, draw and interpret basic methods used for graphic representation.

MODULE 6.01 BASIC CONCEPTS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student recognize the necessary instruments used in to prepare accurate drawings,
b. help the student practice gothic lettering and numbering techniques, and
c. develop skills in sketching.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
6.01.01	

identify types of pencils	- discuss basic types of pencils
	  - hard - 9H, 8H 4H
	  - medium - 3H, 2H, H, F, HB, B
	  - soft - 2B, 3B, 4B 7B

6.01.02	

identify types of instruments and their use	- discuss types and uses of instruments
	  - T square
	  - set square 30°-60°, 45°
	  - triangular architects scale
	  - triangular engineering scale
	  - triangular metric scale
	  - irregular curves
	  - protractor
	  - erasing shield
	  - drawing paper
	  - tape
	  - other

6.01.03 identify the reasons for - accuracy - neatness	- discuss
6.01.04 perform gothic lettering and numbering	- complete gothic lettering and numbering sheets
6.01.05 identify the need for spacing and use of guide lines on drawings	- discuss and practice
6.01.06 sketch - horizontal lines - vertical lines - circles - angles	- discuss and complete drawing sheets

MODULE 6.02 MEASUREMENT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. improve measuring skills with the use of triangular scales, and
b. help each student recognize and interpret scale drawings.
simple components.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
6.02.01	
identify and use the following triangular scales - architect's scale - mechanical engineers' scale - metric scale	- discuss and use each on line measurement exercises
6.02.02	
explain the use of scaled engineering or blueprint drawings	- discuss

MODULE 6.03 PICTORIAL DRAWINGS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student to recognize and develop the basic principles of pictorial drawings, and
b. develop in each student the ability to freehand sketch and also accurately develop instrument drawings of machine parts.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
6.03.01	
identify pictorial drawings	- discuss
6.03.02	
do isometric drawings - freehand sketching - with drafting instruments	- discuss and complete isometric drawings
6.03.03	
do perspective drawings - one-point perspective - two-point perspective	- sketch perspective drawings
6.03.04	
identify and sketch oblique drawings - cavalier - cabinet	- sketch oblique drawings

MODULE 6.04 ORTHOGRAPHIC DRAWINGS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student recognize and develop concepts or orthographic drawings,
b. develop in each student the ability to freehand sketch and develop instrument drawings machine parts, and
c. increase student ability to read orthographic drawing and relate them to actual components.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
6.04.01	
identify orthographic drawings	- discuss
6.04.02	
complete a one-view drawing - freehand sketching - instrument drawing	- discuss and complete one-view drawings
6.04.03	
complete a two-view drawing - freehand sketching - instrument drawing	- discuss and complete two-view drawings
6.04.04	
complete a three-view orthographic drawing in third angle projection - freehand sketching - instrument drawing	- discuss and complete three-view orthographic drawings

6.04.05 relate lines and surfaces between pictorial and orthographic drawings	- discuss and complete unfinished views - reference text (blueprint reading for industry)

MODULE 6.05 CONVENTIONAL LINES AND SYMBOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student read and interpret the meaning of conventional lines and symbols used in graphic representation.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
6.05.01	
identify basic lines used in graphic representation - border or visible lines - section - hidden - centre - extension - dimension - cutting plane - short break - long break - leaders - phantom - other	- discuss and list basic lines
6.05.02	
identify basic symbols used in graphic representation - arrowheads - diameter symbol (D) (O) - radius symbol (R) - countersink (C'SK) - cold roll steel (C.R.S.) - hot roll steel (H.R.S.) - hexagon (HEX) - others	- discuss and list basic symbols

6.05.03

identify surface finish ratings

- 1000	very rough (torch cut)
- 500	rough machining (heavy cut on mill machine)
- 250	coarse (coarse machining operation with sharp tool)
- 125	medium (fine machining operation with sharp tool)
- 63	good machine finish (extra fine feeds)
- 32	high grade machine finish (extremely fine feed on lathe or mill)
- 16	high quality machine finish (surface grinding)
- 8	very fine machine finish (fine honing or lapping)
- 2-4	extremely smooth (extra-fine honing or lapping)

- recognize and list symbols

MODULE 6.06 CONVENTIONAL CONCEPTS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student acquire competency in conventional concepts of dimensioning and use of symbols,
b. help students understand auxiliary views, and
c. help each student understand the use of different types of sectional views.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
6.06.01	
identify material symbols - brick - concrete - rubble and stone - steel - wood - perforated metal - marble - coarse wire mesh - fine wire mesh - cast iron - bronze, brass - aluminium - white metal, babbit	- discuss and list section linings
6.06.02	
identify schematic threading symbols - external - internal	- discuss

6.06.03	

select proper placement of dimension and extension lines on a drawing	- discuss rules for dimensioning drawings
	- identify the
	  - unidirectional
	  - aligned system

6.06.04	
dimension - figures - angles - arcs - fillets and rounds - holes - threads - tapers - chamfers - keyways - knurls - other	- discuss and complete drawings
6.06.05	
identify special methods in dimensioning - baseline - point to point - datum - tolerancing - fits - other	- recognize and list special dimensioning methods
6.06.06	
identify the purpose of an auxiliary view	- discuss and complete a drawing using an auxiliary view
6.06.07	
identify the purpose of sectional views	

6.06.08 identify the types of sectional views - full section - half section - broke-out section - revolved section - removed section - other	- discuss and complete sectional views of parts
6.06.09 identify welding symbols	- recognize and list welding symbols
6.06.10 identify architectural symbols and schedules - mechanical - electrical - structural	- recognize and list symbols and schedules

UNIT 7.0 SOFT AND SILVER SOLDERING

General Aim

The student should gain experience using approved practices for the safe management and operation of soft and silver soldering equipment and gain proficiency in various soldering operations.

MODULE 7.01 SOFT SOLDER

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. develop skills in the proper preparation of soldering coppers for soft soldering;
b. help each student select proper fluxes for various soldering operations;
c. make the student aware of the composition of tin-lead solder;
d. help the student understand the uses of soldered joints; and
e. make the student aware of the potential danger of fluxes.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
7.01.01 forge a soldering copper	- discuss various soldering copper shapes such as pointed and bottom copper - heating and mechanical cleaning of coppers
7.01.02 tin a copper	- chemically clean and tin copper
7.01.03 select fluxes for specific operations	- discuss purposes of a flux corrosive and noncorrosive fluxes, safe handling and storage - use fluxes for plated and bright steels and nonferrous metals

7.01.04
discuss the composition and forms on tin-lead solder
	- discuss solders for various applications - 50-50, 60-40, 95-5, body leads etc.
	- study various forms:
	  - wire
	  - cored wire
	  - bar
	  - sheet

7.01.05 explain the various uses of soft solder joints	- discuss soldering for water-tight joints in sheet metal and plumbing, airtight joints for blowpiping, sweat soldering for parts assembly.

MODULE 7.02 SOFT SOLDER APPLICATION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. make the student aware of the safe procedures in soldering,
b. help the student become proficient in applying soft solder, and
c. help the student become proficient in suface cleanup after soldering.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
7.02.01 explain the safe procedures for soldering	- study and discuss dangers inherent in various fluxes - lighting firepots, furnaces and torches safely - handling hot work safety
7.02.02 properly apply soft solder with soldering coppers and open flame torch	- prepare and solder various joints such as: - lap - rivetted - seamed - pre-tinned - plumbing
7.02.03 clean metal surfaces after soldering operations	- remove corrosive fluxes and restore surface finish of various metals such as: - bright steel - nonferrous - stainless steel

MODULE 7.03 SILVER SOLDER

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. assist the student to understand the need for silver soldering.
b. help the student to safely apply silver solder to metal joints, and
c. help the student become proficient in surface cleaning up after silver soldering.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	- discuss applications of silver soldering
7.03.01 select and prepare joints for silver soldering	- discuss and fabricate scarf and butt joints and sweat solder joints
7.03.02 apply silver solder using open flame torch	- apply silver solder in proper amounts to various joints
7.03.03 clean metal surfaces after silver soldering	- remove corrosive fluxes and restore surface finishes on ferrous and nonferrous metals

UNIT 8.0 GAS WELDING OPERATIONS

General Aim

The student should gain experience using approved practices for the safe management and operation of gas welding equipment.

MODULE 8.01 WELDING SAFETY PRACTICES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student appreciate the importance of applying safe practices in the use of gas welding equipment,
b. introduce the student to methods of checking gas welding equipment before operating on welding or heating tasks, and
c. increase student awareness of the characteristics of gases used for heating and welding operations.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
8.01.01	
identify the safety regulations for gas welding, cutting and heating to ensure a safe working environment	- read and discuss Workers' Compensation Board Sections 14, 17, 18.

MODULE 8.02 STORAGE AND HANDLING OF OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS CYLINDERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to ensure that each student can safely handle and store oxygen and fuel gas cylinders.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.02.01 demonstrate the correct storage and handling practices of oxygen and fuel gas cylinders	- identify correct storage practices for empty Oxygen cylinders - identify correct storage practices for empty Acetylene cylinders - identify correct handling practices for full Oxygen cylinders - identify correct handling practices for full Acetylene cylinders - identify correct procedure in removal of defective Acetylene cylinder from service - identify correct mode of transporting cylinders in shop - transport to and store empty cylinders in storage area

MODULE 8.03 HANDLING AND OPERATING OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable each student to correctly handle and operate oxy-acetylene equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.03.01 describe correct handling and operating practices of oxy-acetylene equipment	- crack cylinder and purge valve with appropriate wrench - identify appropriate regulator to be used - identify types of threads on acetylene equipment - describe why an Oxygen regulator is set facing away from a acetylene regulator - describe how oxy-acetylene fuel gas hose is stored - describe correct method in purging oxy-acetylene - describe the effect of oil and grease in contact with oxygen - describe correct equipment handling practices - describe correct equipment operating practices

MODULE 8.04 ASSEMBLY OF OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to correctly and safely assemble oxy-acetylene equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.04.01 correctly assemble a portable oxy acetylene unit	- select place and secure cylinders in cart - remove cap and crack cylinder valves - attach regulators and hoses with proper wrench - release regulator adjusting screw, open cylinder valve and set pressure to blow out hose - open needle valves, attach torch assemble and blow out torch assembly - attach welding or cutting apparatus to torch body securely.

MODULE 8.05 TESTING FOR LEAKS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to safely test oxy-acetylene equipment for leaks.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.05.01 demonstrate correct procedures and methods in testing for leaks	- describe methods employed in detecting leaks in oxygen and fuel gas systems *- pressurize oxy-acetylene equipment and adjust regulator to working pressure *- close cylinder valve and observe high pressure gauge on regulator *- determine pressure drop, if any *- apply nondetergent soap suds with brush to joints and connections *- depressurize oxy-acetylene equipment and make necessary repair - repeat * and determine outcome of repair

*star denotes repeat of operation

MODULE 8.06 CORRECTLY LIGHT AND SHUT DOWN THE OXY-ACETYLENE UNIT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to correctly light and safely shut down the oxy-acetylene unit.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
8.06.01 correctly light an oxy-acetylene unit	- employ general and personal safety precautions - identify tip size and select appropriate oxygen and acetylene pressures - test connections for leaks using detergent, soapy water - open acetylene valve on torch and light with striker. Adjust acetylene flow until smoke disappears - open oxygen needle valve until complete combustion of acetylene occurs - adjust torch to neutral flame setting
8.06.02 shut down the oxy-acetylene unit safely	- review general safety precautions - close acetylene needle valve on torch body - close oxygen needle valve on torch body - close acetylene cylinder valve, open acetylene needle valve on torch body - turn out pressure adjusting screw on acetelyene regulator, then close needle valve - close oxygen cylinder valve, open oxygen needle valve on torch body - turn out pressure adjusting screw on oxygen regulator then close needle valve - coil oxy-acetylene hose on unit.

MODULE 8.07 TORCH LINE EXPLOSIONS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to identify the causes of torch line explosions.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.07.01 identify the causes of flashback, backfire, burnback	- describe conditions and causes for a flashback - describe conditions and causes for a backfire - identify equipment maintenance procedures to eliminate explosions - describe gas speed and speed of flame propagation - identify the purpose of a reverse flow check valve (RFCV) - identify conditions causing a burnback

Information note

Backfire - the flame backs up into the tip and generally reestablishes itself with a bang or popping noise

Burnback - combustion takes place steadily in the tip and mixer

Flashback - occurs when one gas backs up into the other line forming an explosive mixture. Flashback always occurs in the line carrying the lower pressure.

MODULE 8.08 FIRE PREVENTION

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to identify the requisites in fire prevention.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.08.01 identify the requisites in fire prevention	- define the term fire prevention - describe the welder's responsibilities for fire prevention - describe the employers' responsibilities for fire prevention - describe conditions creating fire hazards and explosions - identify remedies to eliminate fire hazards and explosions - identify the importance of a fire watcher

MODULE 8.09 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to identify the components of a fire, types of fires, and extinguishers.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.09.01 identify pressurized A, B, and C type fire extinguishers	- describe the requisites for a fire - describe the types of fires - describe the classes of fires - describe the types of fire extinguishers - describe the classes of fire extinguishers - identify the types of fire extinguishers used to extinguish rubbish and paper fires - identify types of fires combated with CO2 fire extinguishers - identify the uses of A, B, C, fire extinguishers

MODULE 8.10 VENTILATION

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to give a simulated working environment to enable the student to identify ventilation requirements for welding, cutting and general shop work.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 8.10.01 identify ventilation requirements for welding, cutting and general shop work	- review Section #17, Workers' Compensation Board Regulations for ventilation requirements - identify conditions that require ventilation - identify materials that emit toxic fumes when heated, welded or cut with torch - identify precautions required when working in confined areas

MODULE 8.11 WELDING AND CUTTING CONTAINERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to identify the correct and safe methods for welding and cutting containers.

Learning Outcomes	Students Activities
The student should be able to: 8.11.01 identify the extreme hazards involved in welding or cutting containers that are sealed or containers that have held combustibles	- study and discuss safe methods of welding or cutting containers a. steam cleaning b. purging using inert gases c. filling with water

MODULE 8.12 PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to select and use protective equipment in welding.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
8.12.01	
identify and select proper protective equipment	- describe the reason for wearing safety glasses - describe uses and types of goggles in welding and cutting - describe the uses and types of welding helmets - describe the use of tinted or coloured lenses in welding and cutting and their shade description - identify types of hearing protection equipment used - identify the advantage of using leather jackets in welding and cutting - identify the advantages of using leggings and aprons in welding and cutting

UNIT 9.0 OXY-ACETYLENE EQUIPMENT

General Aim

The student should identify, understand, and use oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

MODULE 9.01 OXY-ACETYLENE WELDING EQUIPMENT PROCESSES AND APPLICATIONS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will enable the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 9.01.01 describe the production and properties of oxygen and acetylene gas	- describe the nature of oxygen - describe the properties of oxygen - describe the production of oxygen - describe the nature of acetylene - describe the properties of acetylene - describe the production of acetylene

MODULE 9.02 CONSTRUCTION OF OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS CYLINDERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will teach the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 9.02.01 describe the construction of oxygen and fuel gas cylinders	- state agencies that govern standards in cylinder construction - describe the construction of an oxygen cylinder - describe the function of the oxygen cylinder valve - describe the function of the oxygen cylinder valve cover - describe the construction of an acetylene cylinder - describe the construction of an acetylene cylinder valve - describe the construction of a fusible plug and its location - describe the construction of a mapp-gas cylinder and valve

MODULE 9.03 CONSTRUCTION OF PRESSURE REGULATORS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will enable the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 9.03.01 identify the construction and application of regulators on oxy acetylene equipment	- state purpose of a pressure-reducing device in oxy-acetylene equipment - describe the construction of the single and double stage regulator - identify the limitations of a single stage regulator - identify the operating characteristics of a two-stage acetylene regulator - identify correct maintenance procedures for regulators

MODULE 9.04 OXYGEN AND FUEL GAS HOSE

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will teach the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 9.04.01 identify the correct maintenance practices for oxygen and fuel gas hoses	- describe the construction of twin design oxygen and fuel gas hose - identify the colouring scheme employed to separate oxygen and fuel gases - identify the thread design employed in the fuel gas hose connector fittings - identify correct practices in splicing of oxygen and fuel gas hose - identify correct practices in coiling and storing oxygen and fuel gas hoses

MODULE 9.05 OXY-ACETYLENE TORCHES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will enable the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
9.05.01	
identify and describe two types of oxy-acetylene torches	- describe the function of a balanced pressure type mixing chamber - describe the function of an injector-type mixing chamber - identify the limitations of a one-piece torch - identify the advantages and disadvantages of a two-piece torch - identify correct methods in installing heating, cutting and welding tips - identify correct maintenance practices for one and two-piece torches

MODULE 9.06 MANIFOLD SYSTEMS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will enable the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 9.06.01 identify the application of a manifold system	- identify types of manifold systems - identify regulations and standards governing construction and operation of manifold systems - identify and define the term 'pickled pipe' - explain the requirements for a hydraulic back pressure valve - identify the purpose of pigtails and check valves - identify the purpose of a master regulator - identify the advantages and disadvantages of a manifold system

MODULE 9.07 SELECTION OF FLAMES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will enable the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 9.07.01 identify the use of neutral, oxidizing, and carburizing flames in oxy-acetylene welding and cutting	- identify the types of flames - identify the temperature ranges for neutral, oxidizing and carburizing flames - identify and define the 3X flame system - determine the use of a 3X flame - identify the type of flame employed in oxy-acetylene cutting and welding of plain carbon steel

MODULE 9.08 TIP SELECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will enable the student to identify, understand, and use basic oxy-acetylene welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
9.08.01	
identify and select the correct welding or cutting tip	- identify types of cutting tips - identify purpose of numbering systems used - install selected tip employing accepted methods
9.08.02	
perform tip cleaning procedure	- identify condition of models - identify maintenance procedures employed for tip cleaning

UNIT 10.0 OXY-ACETYLENE WELDING, BRAZING AND CUTTING (O.A.W.)

General Aim

The student should gain experience using approved practices for the safe management and operation of oxy-acetylene welding, brazing and cutting.

MODULE 10.01 WELDING POSITIONS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the letter identification for groove (G) and fillet (F).

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.01.01 identify the accepted positions of welding	- review handout on positions of welding - identify the -F- positions - identify the -G- positions

MODULE 10.02 SELECTION OF FILLER METALS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to select filler metals.

Learning Outcomes	Students Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.02.01	
identify and select proper filler rod	- review gas welding filler metals - identify type of steel to be joined - identify types of gas welding rods
10.02.02	
select an R.G. 60 rod	- select one filler rod from stock and match with properties of steel - identify selected filler rod

MODULE 10.03 FOREHAND WELD

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to become proficient in using the forehand method of welding.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.03.01 forehand weld with the oxy-acetylene welding process (O.A.W.) Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Forehand Weld Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective: #2	- employ general and personal safety precautions - select piece of M.S. 1/8" x 6" x 8", remove oxides and place in flat position - select tip, install, choose and set correct oxy-acetylene pressures and light torch - right handed person, hold torch with flame pointing to left, lower flame onto plate - hold flame 1/6" over plate, preheat and create puddle - oscillate torch and move from right to left in a straight line holding torch at 45° - review progress and repeat procedure

MODULE 10.04 BEADING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to become proficient in bead welding with the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.04.01 deposit beads with the O.A.W. process Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Gas Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective #3	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - select base metal and filler material - select tools and equipment for job - determine sequence of operation and employ personal safety precautions *- clean metal surfaces and place metal in flat position *- heat to desired temperature *- apply filler metal with the dipping method and employ forehand technique *- let cool and perform specification check - repeat process and follow * tasks

*star denotes repeat of operation

MODULE 10.05 CORNER JOINT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to weld a corner joint with the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.05.01 fusion weld a corner joint, with the O.A.W. process Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Gas Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective: #4	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - select base metal and filler material required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ forehand welding technique *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks.

MODULE 10.06 LAP JOINT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to perform a lap weld with the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.06.01 fusion weld a lap joint with the O.A.W. process Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective: #4	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - select base metal and filler material required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ forehand welding techniques *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks.

MODULE 10.07 EDGE JOINT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to fusion weld an edge joint with the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.07.01 fusion weld an edge joint with the O.A.W. process	
	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precaution - select base metal and filler material required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ forehand welding technique *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks.
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Gas Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective: #6	

MODULE 10.08 TEE JOINT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to fusion weld a tee joint with the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.08.01 fusion weld a tee joint with the O.A.W. process Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Gas Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective #5	- read specification sheet and employ General Safety Precautions - select base metal and filler material required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ forehand welding technique *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks.

MODULE 10.09 BUTT JOINT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to fusion weld a butt joint with the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.09.01 fusion weld a butt joint with the O.A.W. process Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Gas Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective #7	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - select base metal and filler material required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ Forehand welding technique *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks

MODULE 10.10 FUSION WELD OF CAST IRON

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to fusion weld cast iron using the O.A.W. process.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.10.01 fusion weld grey cast iron with the O.A.W. process. Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Gas Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 11 Performance Objective #13	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - bevel joints and assure accurate fitup of cast iron - clean metal surfaces, assemble and support cast iron - sear metal surfaces and apply appropriate preheat - preheat cast iron to desired temperature - heat filler metal and apply fluxing agent - apply heat to attain melting temperatures, add filler metal - continue fusion welding in the forehand method and complete weld - cool slowly to room temperature and perform specification check.

Information Note:

Cast iron should not be quenched. But be cooled under controlled conditions

MODULE 10.11 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. define the braze welding process,
b. identify filler metals,
c. identify types of fluxes,
d. identify flame type in braze welding, and
e. identify types of edge preparations.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.11.01 define the braze welding process	- read handout - explain what occurs in liquid-solid phase joining - describe 2 types of processes - identify the types of heat required for braze welding - identify correct surface preparations in braze welding - identify the properties of filler metals in braze welding - identify the nature of the braze bond
10.11.02 identify filler metals	- read handout - identify type of base metal to be joined - identify the main constituent metal in a copper base alloy welding rod - identify the properties of zinc in the braze welding process - identify a low fuming bronze alloy in braze welding - identify a common type of filler metal used in braze welding

10.11.03 identify types of fluxes	- read handout - define the term flux - identify types of fluxes and their properties - identify two types of flux employed in braze welding - identify the type of flux on the coated non fuming RCUZN-C filler metal
10.11.04 identify flame type used in braze welding	- read handout - identify the effect of a reducing flame in braze welding - identify the effect of a highly oxidizing flame
10.11.05 define the types of edge preparations	- read handout - describe the nature of the braze bond - identify the effect of searing - identify the desired bevel angle in braze welding - identify the purpose of fluted bevels - identify the effect of unbroken edges on the braze bond

MODULE 10.12 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the opportunity to deposit beads with RCUZN-C filler metal on M.S. plate. (Mild Steel Plate)

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.12.01 deposit beads with RCUZN-C filler metal on M.S. plate	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - identify filler metal and select base metal - clean metal surface and employ personal safety precautions - choose correct O.A. flame and heat base metal to desired temperature - employ forehand technique, add filler, observe tinning action - proceed to deposit filler metal
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Braze Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 12 Performance Objective #1	

MODULE 10.13 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the opportunity to perform braze welds to lap joints.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.13.01 perform braze welds on lap joints	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - select base metal and filler material required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ Forehand welding technique *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Braze Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 12 Performance Objective #2	

MODULE 10.14 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the opportunity to braze weld tee joints.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.14.01	
Braze weld tee joints	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - select base metal and filler materials required - select tools and equipment for job *- determine sequence and position of operation *- clean metal surfaces, assemble and support parts to be joined *- employ personal safety precautions *- heat to desired temperature, tack weld in appropriate places and place joint into position *- apply filler metal into joint, employ forehand welding technique *- let cool and perform specification check - follow repeat procedures on handout and follow * tasks
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Braze Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 12 Performance Objective #3	

MODULE 10.15 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the opportunity to braze weld M.S. plate.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to: 10.15.01 braze weld M.S. plate Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Braze Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 12 Performance Objective #4	- read specification sheet, employ general safety precautions - bevel joint and assure proper fitup of plate - clean metal surfaces, assemble, space and support plate - employ personal safety precautions - heat to desired temperature - tin joint and proceed to fill groove - let cool and apply final cleaning - perform specification check

MODULE 10.16 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the opportunity to braze weld cast iron.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.16.01	
braze weld grey cast iron Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Braze Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 12 Performance Objective #5	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - prepare joint and assure proper fitup - clean metal surfaces, assemble, space and support cast iron - employ personal safety precautions - sear metal or joint surface and preheat to desired temperature - assure good tinning and proceed to fill groove - cool slowly and apply final cleaning - perform specification check - do not quench

MODULE 10.17 BRAZE WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with the opportunity to weld dissimilar metals.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.17.01	
braze weld dissimilar metals	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - prepare joint to given dimensions and assure proper fit-up - clean metal surfaces, assemble, space and support metals - employ personal safety precautions - sear cast iron surface and preheat metals - heat to desired temperature, assure good tinning action and proceed to fill groove - let cool and apply final cleaning - perform specification check
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Braze Welding Practical Module: P 3 Goal 12 Performance Objective #5	

MODULE 10.18 GAS CUTTING O.F.C.-A. (OXY-FUEL CUTTING - ACETYLENE)

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide knowledge and experience that will help the student understand and use gas cutting equipment, efficiently and safely.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.18.01 define the oxy-fuel gas cutting process and its application	- describe how chemical reactions generate heat - explain an exothermic reaction - explain an endothermic reaction - identify the most efficient methods in thermal cutting
10.18.02 define and apply terminology used in O.F.C.-A	- identify the term O.F.C.-A - read and study reference material - define the term "cutting attachment"
10.18.03 identify Worker's Compensation Board standard governing cutting	- identify and read section 17 of Worker's Compensation Board Industrial Health and Safety regulations
10.18.04 describe three types of cutting equipment	- describe manual cutting equipment - describe types of portable O.F.C.-A machines - list advantages and disadvantages of portable O.F.C.-A machines - describe types of stationary O.F.C.-A machines - list advantages and disadvantages of stationary O.F.C.-A machines

10.18.05 identify a two-piece oxy-acetylene cutting torch	- describe the function of an injector type mixing chamber - identify the limitations of a one-piece cutting torch - identify the advantages and disadvantages of a two-piece cutting torch - identify correct maintenance practices for one and two-piece cutting torch - identify correct methods in installing heating, cutting and welding tips
10.18.06 install a four-hole oxy-acetylene cutting tip	- identify types of cutting tips - identify purpose of numbering systems used - select a #2 four-hole oxy-acetylene cutting tip - identify condition of various tips - install selected tip employing accepted methods - identify maintenance procedures employed for tip cleaning
10.18.07 correctly assemble a portable oxy-acetylene cutting unit	- select, place and secure cylinders in cart - remove cap and crack cylinder valves - attach regulators and hoses with proper wrench - release regulator adjusting screw, open cylinder valve and set pressure to blow out hose - open needle valves, attach torch assembly and blow out torch assembly - insert cutting tip into torch and tighten snugly with proper wrench

10.18.08 correctly light a cutting torch	- employ general and personal safety precautions - identify tip size and select appropriate oxygen and acetylene pressures - test connections for leaks using appropriate medium - open acetylene valve on torch and light with striker; adjust acetylene flow until smoke disappears - open oxygen needle valve until complete combustion of acetylene occurs
10.18.09 identify the use of the neutral oxy-acetylene flame in cutting	- identify the types of flames - identify the temperature range of an oxidizing flame - identify the type of flame employed in oxy-acetylene cutting of plain carbon steel
10.18.10 shut-down the oxy-acetylene unit	- review general safety precautions - close acetylene needle valve on torch body - close oxygen needle valve on torch body - close acetylene cylinder valve, open oxygen needle valve on torch body - turn out pressure adjusting screw on acetelene regulator then close needle valve - close oxygen cylinder valve, open oxygen needle valve on torch body - turn out pressure adjusting screw on oxygen regulator then close needle valve - coil oxy-acetylene hose on unit

10.18.11 identify the six main factors governing oxy-acetylene cutting	- identify material thickness - determine surface conditions - determine size of cutting tip - determine condition of cutting tip - assure proper flame setting and select correct cutting oxygen pressure - determine speed of travel - identify conditions determining a good quality cut
10.18.12 identify the metals that can be cut with O.F.C.-A process	- list the ferrous alloys that cannot be cut - describe what occurs when non-ferrous alloys are subjected to the cutting torch - describe the behaviour of various elements when exposed to the cutting process - list the high alloy steels that cannot be cut with the O.F.C.-A - identify the ferrous metals that can be cut with the O.F.C.-A process

MODULE 10.19 GAS CUTTING O.F.C.-A (OXY-FUEL CUTTING - ACETYLENE)

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to become proficient in using gascutting equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
10.19.01 cut sheet steel with the O.F.C.-A process	- employ general and personal safety precautions - mark a straight line with scriber, soapstone, chalkline, or employ centre punch - proceed with cutting employing correct angle and speed - perform specification check and review quality of cut
10.19.02 cut mild steel plate with the O.F.C.-A process	- employ general safety precautions - read specifications sheet - employ personal safety precautions - light cutting torch selecting appropriate flame - proceed with cutting operation; employ correct angle and speed - shut down oxy-acetylene unit - perform specification check and review quality of cut - follow repeat procedures

Refer to:

Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"
Module: P 2
Goal 6
Performance Objectives #3

10.19.03

cut structural sections with the O.F.C.-A process

- employ general safety precautions
- read specification sheet
- measure and mark member to be cut in appropriate places
- employ personal safety precautions
- light cutting torch selecting appropriate flame
- identify sequence of cutting operation
- proceed with cutting operation employing correct angle and speed
- shut down oxy-acetylene unit
- perform specification check and review quality of cut

Refer to:
Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"
Module: P 2
Goal 6
Performance Objective #7

10.19.04

cut round stock with the O.F.C.-A process

- employ general safety precautions
- read specification sheet
- measure and mark selected piece of stock
- employ personal safety precautions
- light cutting torch selecting appropriate flame
- identify sequence of cutting operation
- proceed with cutting operation employing correct angle and speed
- shut down oxy-acetylene unit
- perform specification check and review quality of cut

Refer to:

Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"
Module: P 2
Goal 6
Performance Objective #8

10.19.05

perform bevel cuts on mild steel plate with the O.F.C.-A process

Refer to:
Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"
Module P 2
Goal 6
Performance Objectives #5

- employ general safety precautions
- read specification sheet
- determine degree of bevel, measure and mark selected mild steel plate
- employ personal safety precautions
- light cutting torch selecting appropriate flame
- identify sequence of cutting operation
- proceed with cutting operation employing correct angle and speed
- shut down oxy-acetylene unit
- perform specification check and review quality of cut

10.19.06

pierce holes in mild steel plate with the O.F.C.-A process

Refer to:

Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"
Module: P 2
Goal 6
Performance Objectives #6

- employ general safety precautions
- read specification sheet
- determine size of holes, measure and mark selected mild steel plate
- determine thickness of metal, select and install appropriate size cutting tip
- identify sequence of piercing operation
- employ personal safety precautions
- proceed with piercing operation, employing correct starting technique
- perform specification check and review quality of cut

10.19.07 gouge weldments with the O.F.C.-A process Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module P 2 Goal 6 Performance Objective #9	- employ general safety precautions - read specification sheet and obtain weldment sample - determine width and depth of gouge required - select and install appropriate size gouging tip - determine and select correct oxygen and acetylene pressures - identify sequence of gouging operation - employ personal safety precautions - proceed with gouging operation. employing correct starting technique - stop gouging and restart lost cut - perform specification check and review quality of cut
10.19.08 fit structural members with the O.F.C.-A process	- read specification sheet - determine type of structural member to be fitted - measure and mark sections to be cut in appropriate places - allow for cutting loss, and identify sequence of cutting operation - proceed with cutting operations employing correct angle and speed - clean cutting surfaces, remove slag and oxides - fit cut members and determine quality of cuts - perform specification check

UNIT 11.0 SHIELDED METAL ARC WELDING (S.M.A.W.)

General Aim

The student should gain experience using approved practices for the safe management and operation of arc welding equipment.

MODULE 11.01 FUNDAMENTALS OF ARC WELDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide introductory experiences that will help the student to understand the fundamentals of arc welding.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	

11.01.01
demonstrate a working knowledge of basic electricity as applied to shielded metal arc welding
	- study and discuss:
	  - voltage, amperage, current flow characteristics
	  - directional flow, straight and reverse polarity and effects of each

11.01.02 identify types of arc welding machines	- define the uses of an A.C. transformer - define the uses of a rectifier - define the uses of an AC/DC rectifier - define the uses of an electrical motor generator - define the uses of an engine driven generator
11.01.03 demonstrate a working knowledge of electrodes	- identify the types of covered arc welding electrodes in S.M.A.W. - study the classification system of carbon steel electrodes - identify the application and characteristics of mild steel

	electrodes, i.e.: sizes, diameters - identify the function of electrode coatings
11.01.04 understand and identify basic joints and variations in joint design	- identify and sketch the following basic joints: - butt - corner - tee - edge - lap

MODULE 11.02 ARC WELDING SAFETY

Goal Statment

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student understand the importance of applying safe practices in the use of arc welding equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
11.02.01 describe the need and use of personal protective equipment	- identify and discuss the use of the following: - protective clothing, i.e. boots, gloves, leathers - welding helmets - helmet lenses (shade numbers) - flash goggles - hearing protection - extreme hazards of contact lenses - butane lighters
11.02.02 identify electrical hazards in sheielded metal arc welding (.S.M.A.W.)	- discuss electric shock and the effects on the body - describe the effects of damaged cables and leads - identify the cause of electrical fires
11.02.03 identify corrective measures to eliminate electrical hazards	- inspect and repair welding cables and leads - demonstrate correct steps in maintenance of S.M.A.W. machines - select proper fire extinguisher for electrical fires - importance of a proper ground connection
11.02.04 explain the effects of arc flash and identify first aid treatment	- identify and discuss the three types of radiation: - ultra violet - infra-red - visible light rays

11.02.05 describe the effects of hot metal burns	- discuss burns and the first aid treatment for burns: - first degree - second degree - third degree
11.02.06 describe the effects of inadequate ventilation	- identify toxic fumes and discuss their effect: - lead - zinc - cadmium - painted surfaces - ozone (the product of intense arc amperage)
11.02.07 identify acceptable noise levels in a welding environment	- discuss and identify the need for hearing protection - study Workers' Compensation Board Handbook, Section 13

MODULE 11.03 ARC WELDING EXERCISES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. develop manipulative skills in basic competency of arc welding (S.M.A.W.); and
b. demonstrate arc welding techniques on various types of joints and weld positions, 1-2-3 groove, fillet, 1-flat, 2-horizontal, 3-vertical.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
11.03.01	
strike an arc using the S.M.A.W. process when given the equipment, materials, tools and a procedure sheet	- read procedure sheet and select electrode - cut and clean M.S. plate - secure plate in flat position and attach ground - select polarity and amperage (welding current) - insert electrode in stinger, apply personal safety precautions and start machine - strike electrode on pre-determined spot on plate using scratch method - strike electrode on plate using tap method
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #2	
11.03.02	
run beads by applying single and multipass stringer beads on 1/4 plate when given the equipment, materials, tools, and a procedure sheet	- define the term Stringer bead - read specification sheet - select materials, welding machine and welding current - attach ground to plate, insert electrode into stinger and apply personal safety precautions - start welding machine - apply stringer bead - remove slag and spatter - apply second stringer bead - compare to model - remove slag and spatter
Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #3	

	- apply third stringer bead - compare to model - remove slag and spatter - perform specification check
11.03.03 weave a bead by producing deposits with the Weave methods when given the equipment, materials, tools and a procedure sheet Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #4	- define the term weave method of weave bead - read specification sheet - select materials, welding machine and welding current - attach ground to plate, insert electrode into stinger and apply personal safety precautions - start welding machine - apply filler material in the screscent weave method - remove slag and spatter - compare deposit to model - apply second weave bead adjacent to previous pass employing herringbone weave - remove slag and spatter - compare deposit to model
11.03.04 produce tack welds when given the equipment, materials, tools and a procedure sheet Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #5	- define the term tack weld - read procedure sheet - identify and locate M.S. plate - cut plate, clean metal surfaces, and assure proper fit-up - assemble and support plates - select welding machine and welding current - apply tacks in prscribed places on joints - remove slag and spatter - perform specification check
11.03.05 arc weld lap joints by following all the procedures	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - identify and locate plate and electrode - cut plate, clean metal surfaces and assure proper fit-up

Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #6	- employ personal safety precautions - assemble, support and tack weld plates in prescribed position - apply filler material in sequence, clean between passes - final cleaning - perform visual specification check - perform destructive bend test and evaluate
11.03.06 arc weld a corner joint by following all the procedures Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #6	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - identify and locate plate and electrodes - employ personal safety precautions - cut plate, clean metal surfaces, tack weld plates in prescribed position - apply filler metal in sequence, clean between passes - final cleaning of completed weldment - perform specification check
11.03.07 arc weld a tee joint (2F) by following all the procedures Note: Filler metal - E6012, E6010/11, 5/32" dia. E7018, 1/8" dia. Refer to: Provincial Welding Curriculum Level "C" Module: P 4 Goal 11 Performance Objective #6	- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions - identify and locate flat bar and electrodes - employ personal safety precautions - cut plate, clean metal surfaces, tack weld plates in prescribed position - apply filler material - final cleaning - perform visual specification check and evaluate - perform physical specification check and evaluate

11.03.08

arc weld a corner joint (3G) vertical down by following all the procedures

- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions
- identify and locate material and electrodes
- cut material to size, clean metal surfaces and assure accurate fit-up
- employ personal safety precautions
- use scrap sheet metal to adjust amperage, select electrode angle, arc length and speed of travel
- assemble, support and tack weld material in prescribed position
- strike electrode in weld joint, apply filler metal with single pass
- final cleaning of completed weldment
- perform specification check

Refer to:

Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"

Module: P 4
Goal 11
Performance Objective #8

11.03.09

arc weld a tee joint (2F) 12.GA.MS. plate by following all the procedures

- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions
- identify and locate material and electrodes
- cut material to size, clean metal surfaces and assure accurate fit-up
- employ personal safety precautions
- use scrap sheet metal to adjust amperage, select electrode angle, arc length and speed of travel
- assemble, support and tack weld material in prescribed position
- strike electrode in weld joint, apply filler metal with single pass
- final cleaning of completed weldment
- peform specification check

Refer to:

Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"

Module: P 4
Goal 8
Performance Objective #8

11.03.10

arc weld a lap joint (1F) by following all the procedures

Refer to:

Provincial Welding Curriculum
Level "C"

Module: P 4
Goal 11
Performance Objective #8

- read specification sheet and employ general safety precautions
- identify and locate material and electrodes
- cut material to size, clean metal surfaces and assure accurate fit-up
- employ personal safety precautions
- use scrap sheet metal to adjust amperage, select electrode angle, arc length and speed of travel
- assemble, support and tack weld material in prescribed position
- strike electrode in weld joint, apply filler metal with single pass
- final cleaning of completed weldment
- perform specification check

UNIT 12.0 METALLURGY

General Aim

To teach the student the fundamentals of basic metallurgy as applied to the metal trades.

MODULE 12.01 FERROUS METALS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce each student to basic processes used in making ferrous metals,
b. introduce to the student the various types of ferrous metals, and
c. help the student acquire sufficient skills to identify and select the proper types of ferrous metals.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
12.01.01 introduce basic metallurgy	- read and study handout on terminology
12.01.02 describe the furnaces used in the process of making ferrous metals: - blast - open hearth - basic oxygen process - electric arc	- discuss the types of furnace and their products

12.01.03
describe the types of ferrous metals
- cast
  - grey
  - white
  - malleable
  - ductile
  - steel
	- discuss the various types of casts

12.01.03 (Cont'd.)	

- carbon steels
  - low carbon steel
  - medium carbon steel
  - high carbon steel
	- discuss the various types of carbon steels

- alloy steels
  - high speed steel
  - stainless steel
  - nickel steel
  - chromium steel
  - others
	- discuss the various types of alloy steels

12.01.04 describe the procedures for classifying and identifying different types of ferrous metals - spark test - Society of Automotive Engineers numbering - American Iron and Steel Institute numbering	- discuss and individually perform practise tests on sample pieces of ferrous metals
12.01.05 describe the effects of alloying elements on the weldability of steel	- describe the elements affecting weldability - identify carbon steels requiring pre and post heating to improve weldability - identify alloy steels requiring control welding heat - define the causes and effects of the Heat Affected Zone
12.01.06 describe mechanical and physical properties as applied to the weldability of steel	- identify and study mechanical properties such as hardness and malleability - identify and study physical properties such as carbon and alloying

MODULE 12.02 NON-FERROUS METALS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to the various types of non-ferrous metals, and
b. introduce the student to the skills to identifying and selecting the proper types of non-ferrous metals for a given application.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
12.02.01	
describe the types of non-ferrous metals - aluminum - babbitt - brass - bronze - copper - lead - magnesium - nickel - zinc - others	- discuss the various types of non-ferrous metals
12.02.02	
describe the procedures for classifying and identifying different types of non-ferrous metals	- discuss and identify samples of various pieces of non-ferrous metals

MODULE 12.03 WELDABILITY OF STEELS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to teach the student the heat effects in welding on the weldability of steel.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
12.03.01	

understand the influence of heat effects in welding	- study and discuss heat effects of a single bead arc weld
	  - to the weld
	  - to the surrounding base metal
	- identify the effects of
	  - electrode size
	  - current
	  - welding speed
	- discuss the effect of atmospheric temperatures (freezing) on welds made outdoors

MODULE 12.04 HEAT TREATMENT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to the basic principles of heat treatment, and
b. introduce to the student the methods to determine the hardness of heat treated metals.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
12.04.01 describe the different types of heat treating methods - hardening - tempering - annealing - normalizing - surface hardening - various methods	- discuss and in small groups perform heat treating processes on sample pieces of metal
12.04.02 describe the method to determine the hardness of a heat treated metal - Brinell method - Rockwell method - others	- discuss and in small groups perform hardness tests on heat treated sample pieces

MODULE 12.05 SHAPES OF METALS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to introduce the student to the various shapes of metals.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
12.05.01	
identify various shapes of metals - H-beam - I-beam - Channel - Rail - Angle - T - Square - Hexagon - Octagon - Round - Pipe - Tubing - Bar - Half oval - others	- discuss the various shapes of metals and their manufacture

UNIT 13.0 POWER SAWS, SHAPERS AND MILLING MACHINES

General Aim

The student should develop a basic understanding of power saws, shapers, and milling machines, their nomenclature and safe operation.

MODULE 13.01 POWER SAWS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in those module are designed to:

a. enable the student to recognize the various types of power saws,
b. introduce the student to the nomenclature of power saws, and
c. help the student operate a power saw in a correct and safe manner.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
13.01.01	

identify and list various types of power saws
- horizontal reciprocating
- horizontal bandsaw
- vertical bandsaw
- cutoff saw
  - abrasive wheel
  - saw wheel
	- list various types of power saws

13.01.02	
identify and list the operating parts of a - vertical band saw - horizontal reciprocating	- list operating parts of a vertical band saw - list operating parts of a horizontal reciprocating saw

13.01.03 adjust and operate a horizontal power saw in a correct and safe manner	- adjust and operate a horizontal saw
13.01.04 clamp and saw a workpiece to a specified length	- saw a workpiece to length
13.01.05 adjust and operate a vertical saw in a correct and safe manner	- saw to a layout line

MODULE 13.02 SHAPERS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce each student to the nomenclature of the shaper,
b. help the student operate the shaper in a correct and safe manner, and
c. enable the student to shape a component accurately and to specification.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
13.02.01	
identify and list the operating parts of a shaper	- list operating parts of a shaper
13.02.02	
adjust and operate the shaper in a correct and safe manner	- operate the shaper safely
13.02.03	
clamp workpiece in place on the shaper table using various tools and fixtures - T bolts - parallels - vice - angle plates - strap clamps - vee blocks - lead hammer - round bar	- clamp a workpiece to the table
13.02.04	
shape surfaces square to each other and to specification	- shape all four sides of a block

MODULE 13.03 MILLING MACHINES (VERTICAL, HORIZONTAL)

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to the nomenclature of the milling machine,
b. help the student operate the milling machine in a correct and safe manner, and
c. enable the student to mill a component accurately and to specification.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
13.03.01 identify and list the operating parts of various types of milling machines	- list operating parts of a milling machine
13.03.02 adjust and operate the milling machine in a correct and safe manner	- operate the milling machine safely
13.03.03 clamp a workpiece on the milling table using various tools and fixtures as needed - T-bolts - vice - parallels - lead hammer - angle plates - strap clamps - packers - round bar	- clamp a workpiece to the table
13.03.04 mount a vise on the milling table, square with table travel using a dial indicator and parallel	- dial in a vise

13.03.05	
identify and list various types of cutters	- list various types of cutters
13.03.06	
select and mount a cutter correctly and safely	- mount a cutter
13.03.07	
touch on workpiece and zero dials (table)	- touch on and zero dials
13.03.08	
mill surfaces square to each other and to specification	- mill all four sides of block

UNIT 14.0 HOT METALS

General Aim

The student will develop an awareness of the types and characteristics of hot metal forming in relation to the metal trades.

MODULE 14.01 TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to identify, select and use the tools and equipment related to hot metal forming.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
14.01.01 describe the types of tools used in hot metal forming - anvils - forging hammers - tongs - vices - fullers - swage blocks - swages	- discuss the types of tools used in hot metal forming
14.01.02 describe the equipment used in hot metal forming - gas fired forges - drop hammer - press forges - coal fired forges - oil fired forges	- discuss the types of equipment used in hot metal forming

MODULE 14.02 FORGING AND BENDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to introduce the student to the operations and procedures involved with forging and bending hot metals.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
14.02.01 identify the safety equipment and procedures dealing with hot metal forming	- discuss the needs for proper use of safety equipment and procedures dealing with hot metal forming
14.02.02 describe the procedures involved in bending hot metals - angle bending - circular bending - etc.	- discuss and, in small groups, bend hot metal sample pieces
14.02.03 illustrate the necessary calculations for bending metals - arcs - circles - L-angle - radius	- discuss and demonstrate the necessary calculation for bends on flat bar and round metal material
14.02.04 draw out a point, change sections, hot twist	- forge hot metal work pieces

MODULE 14.03 FOUNDRY

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student appreciate the importance of applying safe practices in the foundry;
b. introduce the student to the operations and procedures of a foundry;
c. introduce the student to methods in forming a mold; and
d. introduce the student to methods of cleaning a casting.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
14.03.01 describe the equipment used in foundry melting processes - gas fired furnaces - electric-arc furnaces	- discuss and, where possible, show the process in operation
14.03.02 identify the safety procedures on proper and approved safety equipment for foundry pouring - face shields - leather or heat resistant aprons - heat resistant gloves - heat resistant legging - leather shoes - others	- discuss the needs for wearing proper safety equipment for foundry pouring
14.03.03 describe the various metals used in the casting process - aluminum - brass or bronze - iron - steel - etc.	- discuss metals for casting

14.03.04 identify safety procedures for handling and making a pour - crucibles - pre-heating metals - pouring tongs - others	- discuss and perform a demonstration for proper handling and pouring procedures
14.03.05 describe the types of tools used in foundry work - riddles - flasks - rammers - slick and spoon - trowel - bellows - others	- discuss the use of the different types of tolls used
14.03.06 illustrate the different types of materials used for making patterns - wood - metals - plaster of Paris - wax - plastic - others	- discuss the different types of materials used for making patterns, their advantages and working live
14.03.07 explain the use of the different types of patterns used in foundry work - solid patterns - split patterns - matched plate patterns	- discuss the use and cost of different types of patterns used
14.03.08 describe the techniques used in making and finishing a pattern	- discuss the problems that the pattern maker must encounter when making a pattern - draft - shrinkage - etc.

14.03.09 demonstrate the making of a mold - green sand - waterless sand - shell molding - investment	- discuss the uses of different sand for forming a mold
14.03.10 explain sand preparation and control - refractoriness - cohesiveness - permeability - collapsibility - moisture content	- discuss the importance of proper sand preparation in forming a mold
14.03.11 discuss the use and design of cores	- discuss and make a core
14.03.12 illustrate the purpose of - gates - risers - sprues - others	- discuss and in small groups use a pattern and ram up a mold
14.03.13 illustrate the importance of pouring temperatures of metals - pyrometers	- discuss melting and pouring temperatures of metals
14.03.14 explain the different methods for cleaning castings - sand blasting - shot blasting - tumbling	- discuss and in a small group, where possible, demonstrate the different methods for cleaning a casting

UNIT 15.0 INTRODUCTION TO SHEET METAL

General Aim

The student should gain an insight into the scope and demands of the sheet metal trades.

MODULE 15.01 SHEET METAL TRADES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. provide the student with an insight into the sheet metal industry, and
b. describe the qualifications required for entry into the metal trades.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.01.01 recognize the special demands placed on tradesmen in the various sheet metal trades	- study and discuss various aspects of the metal trades
15.01.02 explain and list the qualifications required for entry into the various sheet metal trades	- visit shops and work sites (field trips)
15.01.03 explain and list the types of work performed by the various sheet metal trades in: - blow pipe - ventilation - stainless steel - marine work - architectural	

MODULE 15.02 SAFETY IN THE SHEET METAL SHOP

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to develop an appreciation for the special precautions involved in handling plate and sheet metal, and for the use of specialized machines related to sheet metal fabrication.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.02.01 properly handle thin sheet metal and plate to avoid injury from edges, burrs and notches	- study and discuss the specialized problems inherent in the materials and machines used in the metal trades
15.02.02 avoid tearing clothing and shoes on materials stacked on floors and benches	
15.02.03 operate all types of shears safely and properly	
15.02.04 avoid crushing fingers in forming machines	
15.02.05 be aware of the hazards to eyes caused by fluxes and acid cleaning baths	
15.02.06 remove all mushroom heads on impact tools	- grind and remove mushroom heads on rivet sets, groovers, chisels, punches, etc.
15.02.07 illustrate the danger of carrying objects in pockets	

MODULE 15.03 COMMON SHEET METALS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to gain an understanding of the characteristics of common sheet metals such as base metals, coated metals and alloys;
b. enable the student to understand and select the appropriate thickness of materials needed according to the correct gauge schedules; and
c. enable the student to learn the various standard sheet sizes.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.03.01	
demonstrate a working knowledge of hot and cold rolled steel, copper and alluminum	- study and discuss the finishes on steel sheet, hot and cold rolled - study and discuss the characteristics and uses of copper and aluminum sheet
15.03.02	
understand the need for coatings such as galvanized, tin, and terne plate	- study and discuss the various coating methods and uses of coated metals
15.03.03	
explain the purpose and uses of common alloys such as aluminum, brass and stainless steel	- discuss how alloying affects the characteristics and uses of sheet metals
15.03.04	
select sheet stock according to size, gauge, and composition: - U.S. Standard gauge for steels - the Brown & Sharpe gauge for non-ferrous metals	- practise selecting sheet according to gauge and appearance

MODULE 15.04 HAND TOOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student identify, select, use and maintain the hand tools specific to the sheet metal industry.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.04.01	
recognize, maintain, and use correctly the following hand tools: - scratch awl - tinners and riveting hammers - tin snips - aviation snips - mallets - hole punches - rivet sets - hand groovers - circumference rulers - protractors - layout and testing squares - dividers - compasses - trammels - bevel gauges - bending tongs - pliers - nippers - vice grips - cold chisels and punches - forming stakes and drift pins - others	- select proper hand tools for specific jobs - maintain and sharpen hand tools as required

MODULE 15.05 SHEET METAL MACHINES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to recognize, use, and maintain sheet metal machinery.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.05.01 describe the adjustment, correct use and maintenance of: - barfolds - standard and pan brakes - roll forming machines - squaring shears and circle shears - Beverly and bench shears - bending and crimping machines - turning machines - burring machines - Pittsburgh, button lock, and Acme lock machines - others	- discuss, dismantle, service, and set up sheet metal machinery - study operations and practice skills towards mastery of sheet metal machinery
15.05.02 recognize ineffective or damaged machinery and initiate necessary repairs	- discuss methods of blade replacement and repair of damage

MODULE 15.06 APPLIED GEOMETRY

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student become proficient in practical applied geometry required for pattern layout.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.06.01 define and name all parts of geometric shapes such as: - squares - rectangles - circles - trianges - pyramids - cylinders - cones	- learn the formula for calculating perimeter area volume of various geometrical shapes
15.06.02 Bisect a line or arc	- use dividers and straight edges to construct and solve geometric problems 15.06.02 to 15.06.16 - learn the definitions, relationships and names of all parts of geometric shapes such as: - squares - rectangles - circles - triangles - pyramids - cylinders - cones
15.06.03 divide a line or circumference into equal parts	
15.06.04 construct a right angle using proportions of 3-4-5	
15.06.05 bisect an angle	
15.06.06 draw an angle equal to a given angle	
15.06.07 erect a perpendicular to a line or arc from a point on that line or arc	
15.06.08 erect a perpendicular to a line or arc from a point off that line or arc	

15.06.09 draw lines parallel and at set distances apart using dividers	
15.06.10 divide a circle into 12 equal parts	
15.06.11 divide a circle into 16 equal parts	- solve problems involving geometric formulae
15.06.12 construct a right triangle within a circle	
15.06.13 draw an arc through three points	
15.06.14 find the centre of an arc or circle	
15.06.15 from a point on a circle circumference draw a line tangent to the circle	
15.06.16 from a point outside of a circle draw a line tangent to that circle	

MODULE 15.07 SIMPLE PATTERN LAYOUT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to become proficient in pattern development based on flat surfaces and right angles;
b. develop an understanding of seam and edge treatments as applied to sheet metal; and
c. help the student develop proper layout of notches.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.07.01	
develop patterns and fabricate workpieces involving simple layout of angular shapes	- lay out and fabricate light gauge workpieces such as boxes, pans, trays, garbage boxes, tool boxes, and wash-up pans
15.07.02	
apply proper techniques involving selection, development and fabrication of lap, rivetted, single and double seams, hems and wire edges	
15.07.03	
develop and apply notching techniques for correct fits	

MODULE 15.08 PARALLEL LINE DEVELOPMENT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to become proficient in parallel line development based on cylinders;
b. develop an understanding of seams and edge treatment for as applied to cylindrical shapes; and
c. help each student understand the importance of proper notching techniques.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.08.01	
develop patterns and fabricate workpieces involving parallel line development	- lay out and fabricate light gauge workpieces such as cans, pails, oil measurers, elbows, tees and branches
15.08.02	
apply proper techniques involving selection, development, and fabrication of lap, rivetted, and groove single and double seams, hems, and wire edges as applied to cylinders	
15.08.03	
develop and apply notching techniques for correct fits	

MODULE 15.09 RADIAL LINE DEVELOPMENT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to become proficient in radial line development in right cones and pyramids;
b. develop an understanding of seams and edge treatments as applied to conic and pyramid shapes and
c. help the student develop proper notching techniques.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.09.01 develop patterns and fabricate workpiece involving radial line development of round and square based objects	- lay out and fabricate light gauge workpieces such as pails, funnels, and/or conical, pyramid shaped projects
15.09.02 apply proper techniques involving selection, development and fabrication of lap, rivetted, single and double seams, hems and wire edges	
15.09.03 develop and apply notching techniques for correct fits	

MODULE 15.10 HEAVY GAUGE AND STRUCTURAL FABRICATION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable each student to become proficient in working heavy gauge sheet and miscellaneous bar, pipe and structural shapes;
b. teach each student to safely handle heavy materials; and
c. teach each student to develop patterns making allowances for metal thickness and inside and outside measurements.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
15.10.01	
develop patterns and fabricate workpieces in heavy sheet involving problems of fits due to metal thickness	- lay out and fabricate workpieces such as tanks, containers, furniture, guards, railings and wrought iron work
15.10.02	
cut, bend, form, twist, and fabricate jobs using miscellaneous sectional shapes	
15.10.03	
develop proper techniques for applying rivetted, welded, and bolted joints to heavy gauge sheet, bar, and structural shapes	

UNIT 16.0 GRINDING, POLISHING AND SURFACE FINISHING

General Aim

The students should gain experience in methods of grinding, polishing and surface finishing.

MODULE 16.01 GRINDING MACHINES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to the proper use and various applications of grinders and sanders, and
b. assist the student to select grinding wheels and belts of various grits and abrasives for particular operations

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
16.01.01	
demonstrate a working knowledge of bench and pedestal grinders for offhand grinding	- sharpen tools - grind edges to a reference line
16.01.02	
demonstrate a working knowledge of angle grinders using cloth backed and fibre wheels	- grind welds, remove oxides and surface finishes
16.01.03	
demonstrate a working knowledge of belt sanders for grinding and surface cleaning	- grind welds, finish edges, remove burrs and oxides, and polish surfaces

MODULE 16.02 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Goal Statement
The learning experiences in this module are designed to emphasize the safety precautions which must be practised while grinding and polishing.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
16.02.01 describe the safe operation and maintenance procedures for grinders and buffing machines, disk sanders, angle grinders and belt sanders	- study and discuss the following precautions and procedures: - adequate eye protection - clothing hazards - tool rest adjustment - suitable guards - work positions in relation to the wheel, grind up rather than down - excessive wheel vibration - clamping devices to hold small work while grinding - heat generated while grinding and polishing - even wheel wear - catching work in wire wheels and buffing wheels - setting down disk sanders on the disk - flying grit from portable grinders and sanders - excessive noise - belts breaking while in use - getting tangled up in disk sanders and belt sanders - cracked or chipped wheels and disks and cut belts - loading the wheel - truing grinding wheels - rotation of wheels and correct belt rotation - always grind and polish towards and edge

MODULE 16.03 BUFFING AND POLISHING

Goal Statments

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. teach the student the proper use and various applications of surface polishing on metals.
b. assist the student to select buffing and polishing processes for particular applications

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
16.03.01	
mount and properly use cloth buffing wheels and wire wheels	- discuss various buffing and polishing processes
16.03.02	
select buffing and polishing materials and compounds according to the type of material and the degree of polish required either by hand or by machine process	- buff and polish metal surfaces as required

MODULE 16.04 PAINTING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. prepare metal surfaces for paint finishes;
b. introduce the student to the various types of paint finishes and application in common use; and
c. develop an understanding of safe procedures used in cleaning, etching, dipping and finish applications.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
16.04.01	
properly clean and prepare metal surfaces for paint finishes	- discuss industrial cleaning, dipping and etching processes - clean and prepare metal surfaces using various etching and washing methods
16.04.02	
select suitable paints according to job requirements	- discuss various paints and plastic finishes

MODULE 16.05 PLATING AND COLOURING METAL SURFACES

Goal Statments

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to the various plating techniques used in industry, and
b. give the student an understanding of the use of heat and various chemicals to colour metal surfaces.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
16.05.01	
outline the different techniques used in electro-plating and hot dipping	- discuss plating methods heat treating, and acid and chemical colouring of metals
16.05.02	
describe the use of heat to colour metal surfaces through various oxidation rates	- plate and colour metals as required
16.05.03	
select elementary chemical combinations or substances such as of sulphur to color metal surfaces	

UNIT 17.0 DRILLING, REAMING, TAPPING

General Aim

The student should develop an awareness of the safe operation and setups of drilling, reaming and tapping procedures.

MODULE 17.01 DRILLING MACHINES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student become conversant with the different types of drilling machines.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
17.01.01 identify the various types of drilling machines and their uses	- review notes, textbooks and handouts
17.01.02 identify various parts of drilling machines and their uses	- maintain and operate available drilling machines

MODULE 17.02 DRILLING MACHINES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. familiarize the student with the basic theory of drill feeds and speeds relative to the material being drilled,
b. demonstrate the correct method of work holding,
c. familiarize the student with twist drills and their holding and drive methods,
d. help the student select the correct setup for drilling holes, and
e. familiarize the student with the types and uses of countersinks, counterbores, circle cutters and reamers.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
17.02.01	
calculate the required R.P.M. when given a cutting speed and drill diameter	- calculate the correct R.P.M. using the drill speed formula
17.02.02	
apply the correct pressure depending upon material and drill size	- drill holes within a given tolerance, using different drill diameters
17.02.03	
select the correct vise or work holding device to safely secure workpiece	- select from a group of work holding fixtures the correct device for a specific application

17.02.04 select the correct drill holding device with respect to straight or taper shank	- mount straight or taper shank drills according to job requirements
17.02.05 select the correct setup for various drilling operations	- drill - thin metals - deep holes - large holes
17.02.06 recognize the various types of drills - straight shanks - taper shanks - counterbore - countersink	- review notes, textbooks and handouts
17.02.07 identify various types of drill size methods - Imperial - S.I. metric - number - letter	- review notes, textbooks and handouts

MODULE 17.03 REAMING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to familiarize the student with the types and uses of machine reamers.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
17.03.01	
recognize the various types of reamers - straight flute - helical flute	- review notes, textbooks and handouts
17.03.02	
determine drilling allowances for machine reaming	- calculate drill size for reaming
17.03.03	
determine speeds and feeds for reaming	- calculate speeds and feeds for reaming
17.03.04	
ream an accurate hole on the drill press	- set up a drill press and ream a hole

MODULE 17.04 TAPS AND DIES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to familiarize the student with taps, dies and their use.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
17.04.01	
identify various thread systems - metric (I S 0) - Imperial (Unified) - pipe	- review notes, textbooks and handouts
17.04.02	
select the correct drill size from a tap drill chart	- study classroom notes and the prescribed text description
17.04.03	
identify the various types of taps - taper - plug - bottoming - pipe - straight pipe	- review notes and handouts
17.04.04	
identify various types of dies	- review notes and handouts
17.04.05	
tap a hole with a hand tap	- drill and tap a hole
17.04.06	
thread a rod with a solid or adjustable die	- thread a rod to size
17.04.07	
thread and tap pipe fittings with hand threading tools	- thread and tap pipe fittings

UNIT 18.0 LATHES

General Aim

The student should develop a basic understanding of types of lathes, tools and operations which can be performed; and become proficient in basic lathe operations.

MODULE 18.01 LATHE NOMENCLATURE

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student become conversant with the different types of lathes and their parts.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
18.01.01 identify the various types of lathes and uses	- review notes and handouts - shop tour
18.01.02 identify the various parts of an engine lathe and their uses	- review notes and handouts - shop tour

MODULE 18.02 WORK HOLDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with experiences with various work holding methods.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
18.02.01	
identify the following spindle noses - camlock - threaded - taper and key - flange	- review notes and handouts - shop tour
18.02.02	
identify the following work holding devices and their uses - universal three jaw - independent four jaw - combination - face plate - driving plate - collets	- review notes and handouts - shop tour
18.02.03	
demonstrate the care and knowledge necessary to mount chucks on the various types of spindle noses	- mount and dismount chucks on various spindle noses
18.02.04	
mount a workpiece in a universal three jaw chuck	- mount a workpiece in a three jaw chuck
18.02.05	
mount a workpiece in a four jaw universal chuck	- mount a workpiece in a four jaw chuck
18.02.06	
mount work between centres	- mount a workpiece between centres using the correct dog and dead centre pressure

MODULE 18.03 LATHE CUTTING TOOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to familiarize students with the various types of high speed steel cutting tools.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
18.03.01 identify the various shapes of cutting tools	- review textbook information
18.03.02 identify the various tool bit cutting and clearance angles	- review textbook information and handout
18.03.03 grind a high speed steel tool bit for turning steel	- practice grinding on cold rolled steel before attempting to grind a high speed bit

MODULE 18.04 FEEDS AND SPEEDS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to recognize the need for different feeds and speeds.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
18.04.01	
determine factors that affect speeds and feeds	- review textbook information relating to feeds and speeds
18.04.02	
calculate speed and feeds for basic lathe operations	- review textbook materials relating to cutting speeds of metals

MODULE 18.05 OPERATIONS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to introduce the student to the basic operations which can be performed on an engine lathe.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
18.05.01 prepare a workpiece for mounting between centres	- face and centre drill a workpiece and mount between centres
18.05.02 turn a cylindrical workpiece	- set up and turn the cylindrical workpiece parallel
18.05.03 bore a through hole to size	- select the correct tools and set up to bore a through hole
18.05.04 knurl a workpiece for size and appearance	- set up and knurl a workpiece
18.05.05 cut a 60° thread	- set up and cut a thread
18.05.06 drill and machine ream a hole	- review reaming speeds and operations in the textbook - set up and ream a hole

18.05.07 part off a workpiece	- set up and part off a workpiece
18.05.08 turn a taper using - compound rest - taper attachment - offset method	- turn three tapers using: - compound rest - taper attachment - offset method

Section Three
CP 12 ~ Machinist Training

CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM

PAGE

SECTION THREE - C P 12 - MACHINIST TRAINING. 189

UNIT 1.0 - COOPERATIVE CAREER PREPARATION (COMMUNITY BASED). 190

MODULE 1.01 - PREPLACEMENT ROUTINE 190

MODULE 1.02 - PLACEMENT (EXTERNAL TO SCHOOL) 192

MODULE 1.03 - POSTPLACEMENT ROUTINE. 193

MODULE 1.04 - STUDENT REPORTING PROCESS. 194

MODULE 1.05 - LETTER OF THANKS TO EMPLOYER 195

UNIT 2.0 - SAFETY. 196

MODULE 2.01 - ACCIDENT PREVENTION. 196

MODULE 2.02 - FIRE PREVENTION. 199

UNIT 3.0 - INTRODUCTION TO MACHINES. 201

MODULE 3.01 - SHOP MACHINERY 201

UNIT 4.0 - HAND TOOLS. 202

MODULE 4.01 - HAMMERS. 202

MODULE 4.02 - WORK HOLDING 203

MODULE 4.03 - SCREW DRIVERS. 204

MODULE 4.04 - WRENCHES 205

MODULE 4.05 - PUNCHES AND STAMPS 206

MODULE 4.06 - HAND SAWING. 207

MODULE 4.07 - FILING 208

MODULE 4.08 - CHISELS. 209

MODULE 4.09 - BROACHING. 210

MODULE 4.10 - DRILLS 211

MODULE 4.11 - TAPS, DIES 212

PAGE

UNIT 5.0 - DRILL PRESS OPERATIONS AND SETUPS 213

MODULE 5.01 - DRILL PRESS TERMINOLOGY. 213

MODULE 5.02 - SPEEDS AND FEEDS 215

MODULE 5.03 - CUTTING FLUIDS 217

MODULE 5.04 - WORK HOLDING 219

MODULE 5.05 - DRILLING 220

MODULE 5.06 - COUNTERSINKING AND COUNTERBORING . . . 223

MODULE 5.07 - REAMING. 225

MODULE 5.08 - LARGE HOLE CUTTING 227

MODULE 5.09 - THREAD CUTTING 229

UNIT 6.0 - LAYOUT. 231

MODULE 6.01 - LAYOUT TOOLS 231

MODULE 6.02 - PREPARING FOR LAYOUT 233

MODULE 6.03 - CARE AND USE OF HEIGHT GAUGE 235

UNIT 7.0 - POWER SAWS. 236

MODULE 7.01 - POWER SAW TYPES AND OPERATIONS 236

MODULE 7.02 - INSTALL AND ADJUST SAW BLADES. 238

MODULE 7.03 - COLD SAWS AND ABRASIVE CUTOFF SAWS . . 240

MODULE 7.04 - CONTOUR BANDSAWS 241

UNIT 8.0 - SHAPERS, PLANERS AND SLOTTERS 242

MODULE 8.01 - SHAPERS, PLANERS AND SLOTTERS. 242

PAGE

UNIT 9.0 - MILLING MACHINES 245

MODULE 9.01 - MILLING MACHINE NOMENCLATURE. 245

MODULE 9.02 - MILLING CUTTERS 246

MODULE 9.03 - WORK HOLDING 248

MODULE 9.04 - SPEEDS AND FEEDS. 250

MODULE 9.05 - BASIC MILLING OPERATIONS. 251

MODULE 9.06 - INDEXING DEVICES. 253

MODULE 9.07 - GEARS AND GEAR CUTTING. 255

UNIT 10.0 - GRINDING. 256

MODULE 10.01 - ABRASIVES AND WHEELS 256

MODULE 10.02 - GRINDING MACHINES. 258

UNIT 11.0 - FITTING AND ASSEMBLY. 260

MODULE 11.01 - BOLTS AND SCREWS 260

MODULE 11.02 - SHAFT FASTENERS. 262

MODULE 11.03 - SCREWS AND RIVETS. 264

UNIT 12.0 - METALLURGY. 265

MODULE 12.01 - FERROUS MATERIALS. 265

MODULE 12.02 - PHYSICAL PROPERTIES. 267

MODULE 12.03 - HEAT TREATMENT 268

UNIT 13.0 - LATHES. 270

MODULE 13.01 - LATHE TERMINOLOGY. 270

MODULE 13.02 - WORK HOLDING 272

MODULE 13.03 - CUTTING TOOLS. 274

MODULE 13.04 - TURNING TECHNIQUES 276

MODULE 13.05 - THREADING. 279

MODULE 13.06 - DRILLING, REAMING AND BORING 281

MODULE 13.07 - FILING AND POLISHING 283

PAGE

UNIT 14.0 - MEASUREMENT 284

MODULE 14.01 - MEASURING SYSTEMS AND SCALES. 284

MODULE 14.02 - RULES 286

MODULE 14.03 - CALIPERS. 287

MODULE 14.04 - MICROMETERS AND VERNIER CALIPERS. . . 289

MODULE 14.05 - SQUARES - PROTRACTORS 290

MODULE 14.06 - MISCELLANEOUS MEASUREMENTS. 291

MODULE 14.07 - CARE AND ADMUSTMENT OF MEASURING INSTRUMENTS 293

UNIT 15.0 - BLUEPRINT READING 294

MODULE 15.01 - SKETCHING 294

MODULE 15.02 - ALPHABET OF LINES AND SYMBOLS 296

MODULE 15.03 - DIMENSIONING. 298

UNIT 16.0 - APPLIED MATHEMATICS 300

MODULE 16.01 - BASIC CALCULATIONS. 300

MODULE 16.02 - GEOMETRIC MEASUREMENTS. 302

MODULE 16.03 - TRIGONOMETRY. 304

MODULE 16.04 - APPLIED MATH. 305

UNIT 17.0 - RIGGING AND MATERIAL HANDLING 307

MODULE 17.01 - SAFETY REGULATIONS ON RIGGING 307

MODULE 17.02 - MATERIAL HANDLING EQUIPMENT 310

SECTION FOUR - RESOURCE MATERIAL. . . . . -314-

C P 12 - MACHINIST TRAINING

General Aim and Purpose

The primary aim of this grade 12 program is to provide learning experiences that will help students develop marketable skills or qualify for advanced standing in a related program at a college or provincial institute. At the grade 12 level, an integral part of the learning experience involves practical experience in a working situation external to the school. This cooperative career preparation component involves at least 100 hours of activities that are community based to provide actual work experience organized through the cooperation of employers and union organizations.

Students should acquire a comprehensive knowledge of:

a. basic requirements for successful employment in the machinist trade;

b. practices necessary for clean, safe and orderly habits;

c. the characteristics, properties, machinability, sizes and shapes of various sheet, bar and extruded metals used in the machinist trade;

d. sketching, pattern development, blueprint reading and applied mathematics;

e. the tools and machinery used in industry;

f. machining methods used in the various branches of industry;

g. employment opportunities and cccupational qualifications needed for job entry levels;

h. procedures and opportunities and occupational qualifications needed for job entry levels;

i. employers expectations for a positive attitude toward the work ethic and good relations in working with others.

UNIT 1.0 COOPERATIVE CAREER PREPARATION (COMMUNITY BASED)

General Aims

The student should:

a. develop an increased understanding of the employment opportunities in the community, province and country;
b. gain practical experience relating to employment responsibilities;
c. benefit from the knowledge and experience of resource persons from business and industry.

Community representatives should participate in organized activities connected with the program.

MODULE 1.01 PREPLACEMENT ROUTINE

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. provide an opportunity for the student to review appropriate regulations of Workers' Compensation Board;
b. review all necessary procedures for student transportation to and from a placement work site;
c. increase student responsibility to school and employer;
d. acquaint the student with documentation, forms, contracts, and the reports of employer, teacher, and student.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
1.01.01	
dress appropriately for the type of employment experience	- discuss appropriate dress for different occupations
1.01.02	
describe the transportation procedures necessary to reach the job site	- consider public or private means

1.01.03 list the important factors related to behaviour on the job	- review introductory procedures to contact employers - discuss manners, speech, things to observe - discuss significance of reports - read examples of reports that will be written by the employer and the teacher

MODULE 1.02 PLACEMENT (EXTERNAL TO SCHOOL)

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. provide the student with experiences that will relate school experiences with actual working conditions;
b. provide students with actual job experience in a working environment;
c. increase student awareness and understanding of employee responsibilities;
d. have the student practise increased responsibility within a work environment
e. facilitate effective transition of students between school and employment;
f. assist the student to see value in education and training;
g. create a student awareness of the opportunities for further training.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
1.02.01 function effectively in a job situation	- follow directions mutually agreed to by employer and teacher
1.02.02 work cooperatively with other students or employees	- ask questions related to career goals - maintain good relations with others - acquire training experiences in the community

MODULE 1.03 POSTPLACEMENT ROUTINE

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. assist the student to make a job analysis of an occupation related to the placement,
b. review employment and career possibilities related to actual job experiences.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
1.03.01	
prepare a job analysis of an occupation where work experience was obtained	- review format of sample analyses - discuss career paths
1.03.02	
list safety factors that must be observed in a chosen occupation	- review safety aspects related to self and others

MODULE 1.04 STUDENT REPORTING PROCESS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in those module are designed to:

a. provide students with a format for reporting on their field experience with an employer,
b. examine the role of employee duties in an occupation and relate to particular school experiences, and
c. have the student prepare a formal list of contacts and practical job experiences.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
1.04.01 complete a report of the job placement and discuss in detail the positive (and negative) aspects of the experience	- review content of reports and prepare details on the work experience - prepare an oral report to the class on the experience at a job site
1.04.02 explain the various advantages and disadvantages of an occupation	- discussions in class
1.04.03 list criteria of satisfactory job performances	- discussions in class
1.04.04 list criteria of unsatisfactory job performances	- discussions in class

MODULE 1.05 LETTER OF THANKS TO EMPLOYER

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with a format for preparing a letter of thanks to employers who provided work experience.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to: 1.05.01 organize and write a letter of thanks to the business firm where job experiences was obtained	- prepare a draft for the consideration of the teacher - type or write a neat letter using correct grammar - mail or deliver to business within one week of return to school

UNIT 2.0 SAFETY

General Aim

The student should be knowledgeable of safe work practices in the shop.

MODULE 2.01 ACCIDENT PREVENTION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. make the student aware of the causes of accident,
b. increase the student's knowledge of protective equipment,
c. make the student aware of the effect their personal attitude has on safety,
d. help the student acquire sufficient skills to identify safety procedures,
e. help each student acquire a sensitivity for determining unsafe stresses on equipment,
f. make the student aware of the safe use of compressed air, and
g. help the student differentiate between types of fire fighting equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
2.01.01 identify basic causes of accidents	- list areas and activities that can cause accidents - poor attitudes - lack of cooperation with fellow workers - improper tool use - horseplay - poor machine guards - excess haste - electrical hazards

2.01.02 identify personal protective equipment	- list types and uses of protective equipment - proper clothing - hat - shoes - safety glasses, shields and goggles - welding screens - protective creams - guards
2.01.03 identify and demonstrate safe lifting habits	- list and demonstrate safe lifting habits - physical lifting - mechanical lifting - rigging - hoisting - jacks
2.01.04 demonstrate good housekeeping habits	- list areas that require housekeeping - cleanliness - removal of scrap materials - removal of spilled oil - proper material storage - proper equipment storage
2.01.05 identify safe electrical practice	- list and physically identify safe electrical practice - proper grounding of electric tools - authorization for repairs - tag out routines - observation of tag outs - tag removal
2.01.06 identify the dangers of compressed air	- list compressed air dangers - physical danger - first aid procedures

2.01.07 state the required steps when filing an accident claim with Workers Compensation Board	- discuss the importance of Workers Compensation Board and their role in worker safety - list basic regulations applying to the Metal Fabrication Industry

MODULE 2.02 FIRE PREVENTION

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. acquaint the student with the various causes of fires,
b. acquaint the student with the various types of fires,
c. enable the student to identify methods of extinguishing the various types of fires,
d. familiarize the student with safety practices in conjunction with fire prevention.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
2.02.01	
state or list some of the major causes of fires	- review and list some major causes of fires - welding sparks - electrical sparks - matches or cigarettes - spontaneous combustion
2.02.02	
state or list the types of fires	- discuss and list the types of fires - Class A - wood and paper - Class B - grease, solvents, paints or any combination of A and B - Class C - electrical involved with any combination of A and B - Class D - metals, magnesium, phosphorous, sodium

2.02.03 identify and list the various extinguishing methods	- discuss the proper application of protective equipment - Class A - water as a jet spray or fog or any chemical extinguisher for small spot fires - Class B - soda acid, CO , dry chemical nozzle without water - Class C - CO , dry chemical, leave alone if high voltage is involved - Class D - dry compounds
2.02.02 identify some safe fire prevention practices	- discuss and list some fire prevention rules - proper waste disposal - oil, rags and waste - used oil - used solvent - metallic chips - proper storage - oil and grease - dry materials away from heat - chemicals - fire pails for fire only

UNIT 3.0 INTRODUCTION TO MACHINES

General Aim

This unit will give the student knowledge of the variety of machines used in the trade and the type of operations performed.

MODULE 3.01 SHOP MACHINERY

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. give the student an awareness of the type of equipment used in the trade,
b. give the student a working knowledge of the capabilities of the equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
3.01.01 recognize the types of machines used in the machine shop	- identify and list the following machines - drilling machines - grinders - power saws - lathes - milling machines - shapers and planers - boring mills - furnaces - welders - hydraulic presses - gas welding equipment
3.01.02 recognize the basic capabilities of the machines	- identify and list the basic operations performed on the machines listed above

UNIT 4.0 HAND TOOLS

General Aims

The student will acquire the ability to select the correct tools for a given job, and know how to use and care for them safely and efficiently.

MODULE 4.01 HAMMERS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student:

a. select and use the correct hammer, and
b. maintain and care for hammers.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will able to:	
4.01.01 select and correctly use hammers	- use hammers - ball peen - lead - plastic wood
4.01.02 identify hammers and their construction	- list and identify hammers and their construction
4.01.03 care for and recondition various types of hammers	- reconditioning soft faced and ball peen hammers

MODULE 4.02 WORK HOLDING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to select the correct work holding device,
b. enable the student to use the correct work holding methods
c. help the student care and maintain work holding devices.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.02.01	

select the correct work holding device	- list the correct work holding device for various clamping situations
	  - machinist vise
	    - plain
	    - swivel
	    - quick action
	  - hand clamps
	  - pin vise
	  - magnets
	  - jigs and fixtures
	  - soft jaws

4.02.02	

demonstrate correct work clamping methods	- demonstrate work clamping methods
	  - clamp work in vise
	  - clamping in vee blocks
	  - use of hand clamps
	  - use of jigs and fixtures
	  - use of soft jaws
	  - use of magnetic devices

MODULE 4.03 SCREWDRIVERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to select, use and maintain screwdrivers.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.03.01 select and name the correct screwdriver for a given application	- list and identify screwdrivers - slotted - robertson - phillips - socket head - nut drivers
4.03.02 use a screwdriver correctly	- list and identify correct and incorrect uses of screwdrivers - screwdrivers used as: chisels - screwdrivers used as: pry bar - incorrect size
4.03.03 correctly maintain screwdrivers	- recondition screwdrivers by grinding and filing

MODULE 4.04 WRENCHES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. identify various types and methods of designating size,
b. select and use the proper wrench as required.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.04.01 identify various types and sizes of wrenches	- correctly identify wrenches of the following types: - open end, box and combination - adjustable - hexagon - socket - hook and pin - strap - torque - inch, metric and British
4.04.02 select and use the correct wrench	- demonstrate the proper use of wrenches according to: - leverage - fit - application

MODULE 4.05 PUNCHES AND STAMPS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to correctly use and maintain various types of punches and stamps.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.05.01	

select and name the correct punch for a given application	- list and identify punches
	  - pin punches
	  - drift pin

4.05.02	

use and maintain punches correctly	- list uses of punches
	  - removing dowels
	  - removing taper pins
	  - hammer size in relation to pin
	  - reconditioning mushroom heads

4.05.03	

select, use and maintain stamps	- discuss and list uses of stamps
	  - necessary layout to balance stamping
	  - stamping on hard surfaces
	  - mushroom heads
	  - correct procedure

MODULE 4.06 HAND SAWING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to select and apply the correct methods for hand sawing a variety of types and shapes of materials.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.06.01 identify and use hand hacksaws according to: - frame types and sizes - holding and adjusting saw blades - applications - storing	- select hand hacksaws
4.06.02 identify and list saw blades according to: - sizes - pitch - sets - material	- select the saw blade for the type and shape of material to be cut
4.06.03 use a hand hacksaw correctly and safely	- determine - cutting speed - cutting pressure - apply skills when starting and finishing the cut

MODULE 4.07 FILING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to;

a. help each student select the correct file,
b. enable the student to correctly use files, and
c. help each student to maintain files.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.07.01	
select the correct file given the size and type of work	- identify and list files according to use - ferrous - non ferrous - non metalic
4.07.02	
use a file correctly for a given application	- filing - to layouts - contour surfaces - contours to fit templates - with safe edge files - flats - with needle files - for surface finish
4.07.03	
maintain files correctly	- clean pinned file - use file card - mount handle

MODULE 4.08 CHISELS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student select the correct chisel,
b. enable the student to use chisels, correctly
c. enable each student to maintain and grind chisels.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.08.01	
recognize and select the correct chisel given the operation required and type of material: - flat (cold) - gouge - round nose - diamond point - cape	- identify and list chisels according to use - grooving - cutting to a layout - cutting a vee groove - removing bolt and rivet heads - removing nuts
4.08.02	
use a chisel correctly	- chiseling - to a layout - cut a concave groove - cut a square groove - cut a rivet
4.08.03	
grind a chisel correctly	- grind a flat chisel to the correct angle - remove mushroom heads by grinding - grind a diamond point chisel - grind a cape chisel

MODULE 4.09 BROACHING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to select and use a hand broach for cutting an internal keyway or shape.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The stuent will be able to:	
4.09.01	
identify the broach and related accessories	- select the required broach, horn and shims
4.09.02	
check and ensure the correct alignment of the work and the broach	- set up a part for broaching
4.09.03	
apply cutting oils as required	
4.09.04	
determine the finished depth of keyway - how to measure - addition of clearance	- complete the broaching operation using shims as required

MODULE 4.10 DRILLS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student select the correct type and size of drill,
b. enable the student to correctly grind a twist drill,
c. enable the student to correctly select the lip and tip angles for various materials,
d. make the student aware of the need for web thinning.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.10.01 select the correct drill for various materials	- identify and list types of drills according to materials being machined: - steels - irons - aluminium - brass - woods, plastics
4.10.02 select the correct lip angle and point for various materials	- list the various point and lip angles for various materials
4.10.03 grind a drill correctly	- grind drills to suit various materials
4.10.04 realize the need for web thinning	- outline the reason for web thinning
4.10.05 thin a drill web	- thin a drill web by grinding

MODULE 4.11 TAPS, DIES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student select the correct tap and wrench,
b. help each student select the correct die and stocks,
c. enable each student to correctly cut internal and external threads,
d. enable the student to assemble, disassemble and clean taps and dies,
e. help each student select the correct tap wrench or holder,
f. help each student select the correct die stock or holder.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
4.11.01 select the correct tap for a particular operation	- select and list taps for various operations - through holes - blind hole - taper (pipe)
4.11.02 select the correct die for a given operation	- select and list dies for various operations - solid button - split button - rethreading (die nut) - adjustable - taper (pipe)
4.11.03 select and use a tap and wrench for a given application	- tap - through holes - blind holes - pipe thread (straight, taper)
4.11.04 use a die correctly for a given application	- cut external threads

UNIT 5.0 DRILL PRESS OPERATIONS AND SETUPS

General Aim

The student will develop an awareness of the safe operation, maintenance, and setup for drilling, reaming and tapping procedures.

MODULE 5.01 DRILL PRESS TERMINOLOGY

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student become conversant with different types of drilling machines,
b. help the student become conversant with the uses of various drilling machines,
c. enable a student to use and maintain the drilling machine in a safe manner.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.01.01	
recognize the types and uses of drill presses - sensitive - upright - radial arm - multiple spindle - gang drill	- identify the machines and describe their uses

5.01.02 recognize the terminology and identify the major components of drill presses - spindle - quill - table - arm - head - size designation - other	- identify and list components
5.01.03 identify proper care and maintenance of the machines	- practice care and maintenance procedures

MODULE 5.02 SPEEDS AND FEEDS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. familiarize the student with the basic theory of drill speeds and feeds,
b. help the student select, adjust and apply the correct speed and feed, and
c. enable the student to ascertain the effects of speeds and feeds in relation to drilling problems.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.02.01 state the difference between cutting speed and revolutions per minute	- define "cutting speed" and how it relates to revolutions per minute
5.02.02 identify the various factors affecting cutting speed selection	- list factors that affect cutting speeds - hole size - material to be drilled - drill material - type of cutting fluid - condition of drilling machine - size of drilling machine - work holding methods - hole surface finish required - heat generation - chip disposal
5.02.03 calculate the drill rev/min for a given drilling operation	- calculate drill rev per min for various given hole sizes and cutting speeds

5.02.04

detemine the cutting speeds for various materials from a chart

- list average cutting speeds for various materials
  - aluminium
  - alloy steel
  - mild steel
  - high carbon
  - brass and bronze
  - copper
  - stainless steel
  - cast iron

5.02.05

state and correct drilling problems connected to speeds and feeds

- list cause and proper corrective procedures for various drilling problems

PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTION
drill breaking	feed too high	decrease feed or increase rev/min
rapid wearing of cutting corners	cutting speed too fast	reduce rev/min
cutting edge and lip chipping	feed rate too high	reduce feed
cracking of high speed (HS) drills	excessive feed	reduce feed
rough hole surface	excessive feed	reduce feed
drill splitting along centre	excessive feed	reduce feed

MODULE 5.03 CUTTING FLUIDS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to select and use the correct coolant or cutting fluid, and
b. introduce the student to various methods of preparing cutting fluids and their application.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.03.01 explain the reasons for the use of cutting fluids	- list reasons for using cutting fluids - list operating conditions that affect cutting fluid selection

5.03.02
identify the various types of cutting fluids
	- list types of cutting fluids
	  - chemical (synthetic)
	  - emulsified
	  - cutting oils

5.03.03 identify the attributes and properties of cutting fluids	- list attributes and properties of various types of chemical, and emulsified cutting oils

5.03.04
select the correct cutting fluid for a given job
	- list metals and some suitable cutting fluids
	  - aluminium (kerosene
	  (soluble oil
	  (lard or mineral oil
	  - brass (dry
	  (soluble oil
	  - cast iron (dry
	  (soluble oil
	Cont'd.

5.03.04 Cont'd.	- copper (soluble oil (lard oil - steel (soluble oil (low carbon)(mineral oil (sulphur base oil - steel (sulphur base oil (tool) (mineral oil (soluble oil
5.03.05 select the best method of cutting fluid application for various operations	- list the proper method of cutting fluid application for a given job, i.e. material (aluminium, steel etc. and operation (drilling, boring, reaming etc.)

MODULE 5.04 WORK HOLDING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. familiarize the student with basic work holding devices, and
b. show the student the correct and safe method of work holding.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.04.01	
recognize and describe various work holding devices	- list and describe work holding devices - parallel bars - vise - angle vise - C-clamp - T-bolts - T-nuts - strap clamps - step blocks - vee blocks - angle plates - drill jugs and fixtures - screw jacks
5.04.02	
select the correct work holding device to safely secure a workpiece	- select from a group of work holding devices the correct setup for a specific application

MODULE 5.05 DRILLING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student identify the parts of a twist drill and describe their function,
b. introduce the student to the materials of twist drill construction,
c. determine the proper drill point angles for various materials and operations,
d. help the student understand the need for correct lip clearance and web thinning,
e. enable the student to determine the proper lid clearance for various materials,
f. help the student check drill sizes,
g. help the student start a hole and check its location,
h. enable the student to draw a hole that is off centre,
i. help a student drill a through and blind hole,
j. help a student identify and correct basic drilling problems.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.05.01	
identify the parts of a twist drill and describe their function	- review handouts and notes - list the parts of a twist drill and describe their function
5.05.02	
outline the materials involved in twist drill manufacture	- review handouts and notes - list twist drill materials and state their advantages and disadvantages
5.05.03	

determine the proper drill point angle for various materials	- list the drill point angle for various materials
	  - general purpose
	  - tool steel
	  - bronze and brass
	  - cast iron
	  - aluminium
	  - wood, hard rubber

5.05.04
explain and determine the need for proper lip clearance for various materials
	- state the reason for lip clearance angles
	- list lip clearance angles for various materials
	  - general purpose
	  - tool steel
	  - brass bronze
	  - cast iron
	  - aluminium
	  - wood, hard rubber
	  - hard metals

5.05.05 explain the need for point thinning	
5.05.06 list four systems of drill sizes and identify their range of sizes	- list four drill systems and their ranges
5.05.07 locate the size markings on twist drills	
5.05.08 determine the drill size of an unmarked drill	- determine drill sizes using a drill gauge or a micrometer and chart
5.05.09 start a hole using a centre or standard drill	- set up and start a hole
5.05.10 draw a drill which is off centre	- spot surface - check for concentricity - cut one or more grooves in wide side - spot surface - repeat above until hole is concentric with layout

5.05.11 correctly drill a through or blind hole	- drill holes to layouts and specifications

5.05.12
identify, describe and correct basic drilling problems
	- list drilling problems
	  - hole oversize
	  - chipped lip and cutting edge
	  - broken drills
	    - ferrous
	    - nonferrous
	  - tang breaks
	  - drill will not enter work
	  - cutting on one lip
	  - hole rough
	  - outer corners break
	- list corrections to drilling problems

MODULE 5.06 COUNTERSINKING AND COUNTERBORING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student describe the types, parts and uses of countersinks and counterbores;
b. enable the student to select the correct speed;
c. enable the student to perform countersinking and counterboring operations;
d. enable the student to gauge holes, sizes and depth;
e. help the student use the correct pilot for counterboring;
f. help students identify countersinking and counterboring problems and solutions.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.06.01	
describe the types of countersinks and counterbores available	- list types of countersinks - list types and components of counterbores
5.06.02	
describe the uses of countersinks and counterbores	- list the uses of countersinks and counterbores
5.06.03	
perform the countersinking operation choosing the correct speed and feed pressure	- calculate correct rev/min - perform countersinking operation using the correct feed pressure - use cutting fluid if required
5.06.04	
measure to specification the correct countersunk hole size	- measure countersunk hole

5.06.05 identify and correct basic countersinking problems	- list causes and corrections for countersinking problems - rough work - burred hole - tool dulls rapidly - chatter - excessive heat
5.06.06 perform the counterboring operation choosing the correct speed and feed	- calculate the correct rev/min - perform counterboring operations using the correct feed
5.06.07 ascertain the correct counter boring depth	- review drawing specification for correct depth - review text book
5.06.08 spotface a workpiece correctly	- spotface to drawing specification or washer diameter

MODULE 5.07 REAMING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to select and use the correct reamer;
b. assist the student to calculate the correct reaming allowance;
c. enable the student to calculate the feed and speed for a given size of reamer;
d. help the student realize the necessity for reaming operations;
e. assist the student to recognize and correct reaming problems.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.07.01 recognize the various types of machine reamers	- recognize and list - fluted reamers - straight flute - helical fluted - shell reamers - rose reamers - taper reamers - expansion chucking reamer - step reamer
5.07.02 calculate the correct reaming allowance	- list reaming allowance for different reamer diameters
5.07.03 select the appropriate reamer for a given job	- list the correct reamer for a given job

5.07.04 calculate speeds and feeds for a given operation	- calculate speeds and feeds
5.07.05 state the reason(s) for reaming operations	
5.07.06 select and apply the correct coolant and cutting oil	- list cutting oils or coolants for various reaming operations
5.07.07 state the correct steps in reaming a hole	- list the steps in reaming a hole - set up and accurately drill the correct reamer hole - remove drill and replace with correct reamer - set drill for correct speed and feed - start reamer carefully and apply the correct cutting fluid - ream through and remove reamer from the hole while it is still revolving - clean hole and check for dimensional accuracy - useream if necessary - remove burrs
5.07.08 identify and correct basic reaming problems	- list basic reaming problems and their corrections - excessive wear - hole oversize - rough finish - tool runout - cutting edge damaged

MODULE 5.08 LARGE HOLE CUTTING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student make various sizes and shapes of holes,
b. enable the student to recognize the various types of cutting tools that can be used on standard drilling machines,
c. enable the student to use various cutting tools to cut large or unique holes.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.08.01	
recognize sizes and shapes of bored holes that can be performed on drilling machines	- sketch and name bored holes - blind holes - counterbored holes - stepped holes - large holes - large holes (thin material) - internal recess
5.08.02	
recognize boring bars, hole saws and circle cutting tools	- sketch and name
5.08.03	
determine correct cutting speeds	- using notes state the proper cutting speeds for boring, circle cutting and hole saws

5.08.04
set up and bore holes to specification using various types of boring bars and holders
	- set up and bore holes using various types of boring bars and holders
	  - solid boring bar
	  - single point adjustable
	  - single point screw adjustable
	- solid bar holder
	- adjustable bar holder

5.08.05 assemble setup and use a circle cutting tool to cut large shallow through holes and grooves	- assemble setup and cut a large circular groove to specification - cut a large circular through hole - use the correct cutting fluid for cutting
5.08.06 assemble setup and use a holesaw	- assemble setup and drill a hole to specification - use the correct cutting fluid for cutting

MODULE 5.09 THREAD CUTTING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. make the student aware of the advantages of thread cutting on a drill press
b. make the student aware of the types of die holders and tap drivers that are available,
c. enable the student to set up and use die holders and tap drivers,
d. help the student tap a hole,
e. make the student aware of threading problems and their correction,
f. enable the student to use the correct cutting fluid.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
5.09.01	
calculate tap drill diameters in order to achieve various percentage of thread	- calculate tap drill diameters for various percentages
5.09.02	
state advantages of threading on a drill press	- list advantages of using a drill press for threading
5.09.03	
tap a hole true with drill spindle	- drill with the correct tap drill - chamfer top of hole with a countersink - place tap in drill chuck or use centre plug - apply cutting fluid - apply pressure with the feed handle and turn chuck by hand - feed into workpiece three or four turns - finishing tapping on the drill press or move to the bench and finish with a tap wrench

5.09.04 identify various types of threading attachments	- list various types of threading attachments - die holders - tapping attachments
5.09.05 state basic threading problems and their correction	- list various threading problems and their corrections - tap breaking - teeth chipping - excessive thread wear - torn and rough threads - oversized threads - undersize threads
5.09.06 select the correct cutting fluid for each threading operation	- list various material and their suggested cutting fluids

UNIT 6.0 LAYOUT

General Aim

The student will develop an awareness of procedures, tools and methods used in the layout of workpieces for various machine shop operations.

MODULE 6.01 LAYOUT TOOLS

Goal Statement

The experiences in this unit are designed to enable the student to be able to recognize the tools used in layout work as well as be able to practice the proper care and maintenance of the tools.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
6.01.01	
recognize the tools used in general layout - scribers - prick and centre punches - layout tables - V blocks - angle plates - parallels - surface gauge - squares - dividers - calipers - combination sets - height gauges - trammels - rules and keyseat clamps - surface plates - clamps	- identify the various tools

6.01.02 practice care and maintenance of layout tools	- perform maintenance of - scribers - dividers - punches - calipers - surface plates

MODULE 6.02 PREPARING FOR LAYOUT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. be able to prepare a workpiece for layout,
b. measure and scribe layout lines on a workpiece,
c. locate and establish hole centre layouts,
d. use geometric constructions as they apply to layout work.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
6.02.01 recognize the need for proper surface preparation	- remove sharp edges - remove oils and greases - establish datums (base lines)

6.02.02
determine the type of layout dye, as applicable
	- identify and select as required
	  - layout dye
	  - whiting
	  - copper sulphate
	  - felt markers
	  - heat

6.02.03
use layout tools as required to measure and scribe lines as well as locate and establish hole centres
	- select and use:
	  - rulers
	  - protractors
	  - squares
	  - scribers
	  - dividers
	  - punches

6.02.04	
develop and apply geometric constructions - parallel lines - locate centre of a circle or an arc - bisect angles - bisect lines - construct perpendiculars - transfer an angle - construct 30° and 60° angles - layout six hole bolt circles - divide a line into a number of equal divisions	- demonstrate the use and development of geometric constructions
6.02.05	
recognize the need for and applications of transfer layouts using: - templates - transfer punches - other	- demonstrate the use of transfer layout

MODULE 6.03 CARE AND USE OF HEIGHT GAUGES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to identify the major parts and describe the applications of the height gauge for precision layout,
b. enable the student to use the height gauge for layout work.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
6.03.01 recognize the major parts of a vernier height gauge	- identify and list: - base - beam - vernier plate - scriber
6.03.02 maintain vernier height gauges	- describe care used in: - handling carbide scribers - resharpening scribers
6.03.03 read vernier height gauges	- demonstrate ability to: - read inch and metric dimensions - use zero reference and zero offset scribers - demonstrate methods of mounting work and layout when using - V blocks - angle plates - other

UNIT 7.0 POWER SAWS

General Aim

To familiarize the student with the two types of power sawing applications and the various equipment used on each.

MODULE 7.01 POWER SAW TYPES AND OPERATIONS

Goal Statements

The experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. recognize the classes and types of sawing machines,
b. recognize the various accessories used on sawing machines.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
7.01.01 identify the two main classes of power sawing and their purposes - cut-off sawing - contour sawing	- identify and list the types of machines and their uses - list advantages and disadvantages of the various machines
7.01.02 identify the types of machines in the classes - reciprocating - horizontal bandsaws - abrasive saws - cold saws - vertical contour saws	- identify and list power saw classifications

7.01.03 identify accessories and operations performed on various machines - automatic bar stock feeding mechanism - band filing - band polishing - friction sawing - power feed worktables	- describe and/or demonstrate the use of accessories and operations

MODULE 7.02 INSTALL AND ADJUST SAW BLADES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. identify saw blade terminology,
b. prepare and weld a bandsaw blade,
c. select, install and adjust a bandsaw blade,
d. select, install and adjust a power hanksaw blade,
e. select, install and adjust cutoff saws.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
7.02.01 use correct saw blade terminology - width and gauge - pitch - set - kerf - blade materials	
7.02.02 identify different tooth forms as they pertain to various materials	- identify and list the saw blades according to - material being cut - shape being cut - set required
7.02.03 define terminology used in the welding of bandsaw blades - resistance weld - annealing	- describe terms used in bandsaw welding
7.02.04 successfully prepare and weld a bandsaw blade	- weld, install and adjust a blade on a bandsaw
7.02.05 adjust blade guides on bandsaw	

7.02.06 install and adjust the blade on a reciprocating hacksaw	- correctly install a blade on a reciprocating hacksaw
7.02.07 identify proper workholding techniques when clamping - angle iron - I beam - channel iron - flat bar - multiple parts	- demonstrate and/or describe proper holding and clamping methods
7.02.08 determine recommended feed pressures and speeds	- set correct feed pressures and speeds

MODULE 7.03 COLD SAWS AND ABRASIVE CUTOFF SAWS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. enable the student to identify and describe the operation of abrasive and cold saws,
b. make the student aware of the safety precautions involved with abrasive cutoff saws.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
7.03.01 recognize abrasive cutoff saws	- identify and list advantages and disadvantages
7.03.02 recognize cold saws	- identify and list advantages and disadvantages
7.03.03 recognize safety precautions involved witht he use of abrasive cutoff saws - use of guards - wheel speeds - wheel inspection - workpiece clamping	- list safety requirements for abrasive cutoff saws

MODULE 7.04 CONTOUR BANDSAWS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. identify the various operations which can be performed on the vertical bandsaw,
b. perform setups for the various operations.
c. set speeds and feeds

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
7.04.01 select and set correct blade speeds	
7.04.02 setup for straight cutting using hand and power feed	- perform cutting operations
7.04.03 determine correct blade width required for contour cutting operations	- select proper blade for specified operation
7.04.04 recognize methods used to cut out internal sections	- describe procedures used for cutting out internal sections
7.04.05 recognize related operations and setups performed on contour saws - friction sawing - band filing - band polishing	- perform and/or describe - friction sawing - band filing and polishing

UNIT 8.0 SHAPERS, PLANERS AND SLOTTERS

General Aim

The student should develop skills to accurately and safely operate shapers, planers and slotters.

MODULE 8.01 SHAPERS, PLANERS AND SLOTTERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student identify the nomenclature, maintenance, use and lubrication of shapers, planers and slotters.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
8.01.01 identify and list various types of shapers - horizontal (crank type) - horizontal (hydraulic) - vertical (slotters)	- recognize and list shaper types
8.01.02 identify and list various types of planers - double housing - open side	- recognize and list planer types
8.01.03 identify and list various parts of shapers	
8.01.04 identify and list various planer parts	
8.01.05 maintain and care for shaper and planers	

8.01.06	
calculate cutting speeds for shapers and planers	- calculate cutting speeds
8.01.07	
identify and list various cutting tools - steel - roughing - round nose general purpose - finishing - cast iron - roughing tool - finishing tool - miscellaneous - side cutting - key seating - dovetail	- recognize and list various cutting tools
8.01.08	
grind tool bits to specifications	- grind tool bits
8.01.09	
check squareness of shaper and planer table with a dial indicator	- check table squareness
8.01.10	
bolt down and align shaper vise with dial indicator	- dial in shaper vise
8.01.11	
bolt workpieces to shaper and planer tables using various types of hold downs: - tee bolts - clamps - plain - U clamp - finger clamp - double finger - gooseneck - angle plates - step blocks - hold down grippers - toe dogs and poppets - parallels	

8.01.12 set tool and clapper box angle correctly for various types of cut - horizontal - vertical - angular - contour - keyways - T slots - dovetail	- set tool for cutting
8.01.13 set up and shape flat horizontal surfaces	- plane horizontal surfaces
8.01.14 set up and shape parallel surfaces to specification	- plane parallel surfaces
8.01.15 set up and shape four sides of a block perpendicular and parallel	- plane four sides
8.01.16 set up and shape the ends of a workpiece using vertical feed to specification	- plane ends
8.01.17 set up and shape angular surfaces to specification	- plane angular surfaces
8.01.18 set up and shape a groove or keyseat to specification	- cut keyseats
8.01.19 set up and shape an internal keyseat to specification	- cut keyseats

UNIT 9.0 MILLING MACHINES

General Aim

The student should develop skills to operate the milling machine in a safe and accurate manner.

MODULE 9.01 MILLING MACHINE NOMENCLATURE

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student to identify the nomeclature, care and maintenance of milling machines.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.01.01	
identify and list various types of milling machines - plain knee and column - universal knee and column - vertical knee and column - manufacturing types - automation types - ram turret - planer type	- recognize and list various types of milling machines
9.01.02	
identify and list various parts of horizontal milling machines	- recognize and list parts of horizontal mills
9.01.03	
identify and list various parts of vertical milling machines	- recognize and list parts of vertical mills
9.01.04	
maintain and care for milling machines	- list maintenance and lubrication schedules

MODULE 9.02 MILLING CUTTERS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student identify milling cutters,
b. enable the student to list the purpose and applications of milling cutters,
c. enable the student to correctly install arbours and other cutter holders,
d. enable the student to correctly mount cutters.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.02.01 identify milling cutters by their type, shape and size - plain - side - side and face - half side - single and double angle - face - profile relieved - shell end mills - slot drills - woodruff - T slot - fly cutters - saws	- recognize and list cutters - identify cutters according to: - size - hand of rotation - code (woodruff)
9.02.02 identify various cutter holding devices: - milling machine tapers - A, B & C style arbours - collets and adaptors	- recognize and list
9.02.03 identify the purpose and application of each type of cutter	- recognize and list cutters according to type and operation

9.02.04 mount arbours and adaptors into the spindle nose	- mount arbours and adaptors
9.02.05 mount cutters on: - arbours - adaptors - weldon shank - clarkson shank - straight shank	- mount cutters using correct tightening procedures and arbour supports as applicable
9.02.06 identify proper requirements for the care, use and storage of milling cutters and arbours	- practice proper techniques for the handling and storage of cutters and arbours

MODULE 9.03 WORK HOLDING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student identify various types of work holding devices,
b. help the student to securely bolt workpieces to milling tables.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.03.01 identify various types of work holding devices and clamps - tee bolts - locating plates - V blocks - machine vises - angle plates - rotary tables - jacks - step blocks - wedges - strap clamps - machinist clamps - parallels - foot stocks - dividing heads	- recognize and list work holding devices
9.03.02 mount a machine vise accurately using a dial indicator and parallel	- mount a machine vise

9.03.03	
align dividing head and foot stock centres using a dial indicator and parallel test bar	- align centres
9.03.04	
mount a round workpiece in a dividing head chuck	- mount round work
9.03.05	
mount a workpiece directly on a milling table using tee bolts, clamps and packers	- mount workpiece on a milling table

MODULE 9.04 SPEEDS AND FEEDS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. calculate cutting speeds and feeds,
b. use tables to determine recommended chip loads.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.04.01	
use tables to determine recommended chip loads	- select the chip load for a given operation
9.04.02	
determine feed rates using information and formulas required	- calculate feed rates
9.04.03	
select feed rates in a logical manner using feed calculations to establish a reference point	- apply appropriate feed rates for various cutting conditions

MODULE 9.05 BASIC MILLING OPERATIONS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. set up and machine a flat surface,
b. recognize and correct basic problems,
c. set up and machine slots and keyseats,
d. locate hole centres using rectangular coordinate dimensioning.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.05.01	
check the spindle on a vertical machine for alignment using a dial indicator	- align the spindle
9.05.02	
check table travel for perpendicularity to the spindle on a universal machine	- align the table
9.05.03	
recognize the difference between climb and conventional milling	- identify climb and conventional milling operations
9.05.04	
adjust a backlash eliminator for climb milling operation	- adjust a backlash eliminator
9.05.05	
recognize the advantages and disadvantages of climb milling	- identify and list advantages and disadvantages

9.05.06	
recognize the purpose of - adjustable trip dogs - table safety stops	- identify and describe the use of trip dogs and safety stops
9.05.07	
perform the following setups and operations on both horizontal and vertical machines - mill a flat surface - mill sides of a block square to each other - mill a slot - mill a keyseat (open and blind) - mill a pocket	- set up and perform the operations as indicated - perform calculations to determine depth of keyseat
9.05.08	
determine rectangular coordinates from polar coordinates	- calculate rectangular coordinates for X and Y axis
9.05.09	
locate hole centres using rectangular coordinates	- set up and locate hole centres

MODULE 9.06 INDEXING DEVICES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. identify the types of indexing devices,
b. operate and maintain these devices,
c. perform calculations necessary for using these tools,
d. identify and select the required method of indexing.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.06.01 recognize the following types of indexing devices and their applications: - rotary tables - rotary tables with indexing attachment - direct indexing dividing head - plain dividing head - universal dividing head - wide range dividing head	- identify and list the types and applications of the indexing devices
9.06.02 recognize the various parts of the tools and be aware of their functions	- identify the parts and their functions
9.06.03 describe the following types of indexing operations - direct indexing - indirect indexing - angular indexing	- describe the various types of indexing operations and their applications

9.06.04 perform calculations for the above indexing operations	- do calculations as required
9.06.05 set up a dividing head to perform the various indexing operations	- set up a dividing head, including sector arms, to perform the required operations
9.06.06 use a rotary table for circular milling operations	- set up a circular milling operation
9.06.07 use a rotary table for spacing of angularly dimensioned holes and surfaces	- set up and locate a rotary table and workpiece for angular spacing

MODULE 9.07 GEARS AND GEAR CUTTING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. identify common types of gears,
b. identify various types of materials used for gears,
c. identify spur gear terminology,
d. perform calculations for spur gears.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
9.07.01	
recognize various types of gears	- identify and list types of gears
9.07.02	
recognize the types of material which are used for gears - ferrous - nonferrous - nonmetallic	- identify and list types of materials and their advantages and disadvantages
9.07.03	
recognize spur gear nomenclature	- identify and describe terminology pertaining to spur hears - identify and describe various gear cutters
9.07.04	
perform calculations required to produce a spur gear	
9.07.05	
set up a machine and cut a spur gear	- cut a spur gear

UNIT 10.0 GRINDING

General Aim

The student should be able to select, safely use and care for grinding abrasives, wheels and machines.

MODULE 10.01 ABRASIVES AND WHEELS

Goals Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. be aware of proper safety practices in the use of grinding machines, and
b. select the wheel shape for a specific operation.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
10.01.01 describe wheel structure - abrasive - bonds - structures - wheel markings	- describe and list wheel structures and then markings
10.01.02 recognize safety precautions to be taken when mounting and using wheels - ring test - visual check - speed check - flange washers - work rests - wheel guards - balancing	- list and practice safe work habits

10.01.03	
recognize the proper wheel shape for a grinding operation - straight - cup - flaring cup - dish - cylindrical	
10.01.04	
recognize the need for truing and dressing grinding wheels	- true and dress grinding wheels
10.01.05	
recognize the types of dressing tools and their uses	- list and use dressing tools according to their application
10.01.06	
select wheels for stated applications	- given an application the student will select the correct wheel

MODULE 10.02 GRINDING MACHINES

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. identify types of grinding machines and their uses,
b. select the correct machine for a specific job,
c. set up a surface grinding operation,
d. determine workholding method for surface grinding,
e. practice proper care and maintenance of surface grinders.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
10.02.01 identify various grinding machines and their uses - offhand - surface - cylindrical - internal - tool and cutter	- list and describe the various machines and their applications
10.02.02 select correct and safe workholding techniques for: - ferrous - nonferrous - thin materials	- identify correct workholding methods and setups
10.02.03 recognize proper wheel mounting and balancing methods	- identify and list procedures for installing grinding wheels

10.02.04 recognize the effect of varying depth of cut and feed rates when dressing a wheel	- identify and list the effects
10.02.05 practice proper procedures for dressing a wheel on a surface grinder	- dress a surface grinder wheel to produce various effects
10.02.06 freehand grind a project to size	- use an offhand grinder to gride to size
10.02.07 grind a surface flat to a given tolerance	- use a surface grinder to grind a flat surface
10.02.08 grind a cylindrical surface to a given tolerance	- use a cylindrical grinder to grind a round surface to tolerance

UNIT 11.0 FITTING AND ASSEMBLY

General Aim

The student should develop an understanding of fasteners and their methods of connection.

MODULE 11.01 BOLTS AND SCREWS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to identify and classify types of threads and systems.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
11.01.01	

identify and list imperial and S.I. metric threads by size and pitch
- terminology
- size
- pitch
- thread classes
  - metric
  - unified
  - imperial
- pipe threads
	- recognize and list threads by size and pitch
	- list screw thread terminology

11.01.02	
identify and classify types of bolts and screws - machine screws - cap screws - carriage bolts - stove bolts - studs - set screws	- recognize and list types of bolts and screws

11.01.01	
identify and clasify types of nuts - hexagon - hex flanged - square - lock - castle - inteference - jam - pal - single thread - caged - nyloc - slotted - acorn	- recognize and list types of nuts
11.01.04	
identify and classify types of washers - flat - lock - spring washers - tooth lock washers - fender - finish	- recognize and list types of washers
11.01.05	
identify use and methods of assemble of bolts, screws, nuts, studs and washers	- list uses of various bolts, screws, nuts, studs and washers
11.01.06	
classify bolt and screw fits and tensile strength	- list various bolt and screw fit classifications
11.01.07	
make basic assemblies using bolts, screws, nuts and washers	- bolt up various assembles
11.01.08	
drill, ream and thread to specification to facilitate basic fitups	

MODULE 11.02 SHAFT FASTENERS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help each student select an appropriate shaft fastener for a specific connection,
b. enable the student to identify the correct assembly method.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	

11.02.01
identify and list various types of shaft fasteners
- set screws
  - socket head
  - slot head
  - square head
- dowels
  - solid
  - taper
  - split
  - spiral wrap
- cotter pins
- clevis pins
- keys
  - square
  - rectangular
  - gib
  - woodruff
- retaining rings
- internal
- external
	- recognize and list shaft fasteners

11.02.02 identify the use of various shaft fastening systems	- recognize and list shaft assembly methods

11.02.03 identify methods of assembly for shaft fasteners	
11.02.04 make basic assemblies using keys and pins	
11.02.05 file, ream, scrape, groove and drill to specification to facilitate basic fitups	- assemble basic assembles with various shaft fasteners

MODULE 11.03 SCREWS AND RIVETS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student identify, select and assemble components with screws and rivets.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
11.03.01	
identify and list various types of sheet metal screws	- recognize and list sheet metal screw types
11.03.02	
connect components using various types of sheet metal screws	- make basic assembles using sheet metal screws
11.03.03	
identify and list various types of rivets	- recognize and list types of rivets
11.03.04	
connect components using various types of rivets	- make basic assembles using various types of rivets

UNIT 12.0 METALLURGY

General Aim

To introduce the student to the methods used in the manufacture of iron and steel and the methods of classification and coding.

MODULE 12.01 FERROUS MATERIALS

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the students to the production of iron and steel, and
b. enable the student to identify steels.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
12.01.01	
identify the materials and process used in the production of pig iron	- describe the production of pig iron
12.01.02	
identify the processes used for the production of steel - open hearth - basic oxygen process - electric	- describe the various processes and their uses
12.01.03	
recognize the difference between hot and cold rolled steel	
12.01.04	
recognize the difference between plain carbon and alloy steels and their applications	- identify and list the uses of plain carbon and alloy steels

12.01.05 describe different types of steels according to: - spark test - numbering system	- identify steels by using Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) and the American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) systems - identify steels using the spark test

MODULE 12.02 PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to introduce the student to the basic physical properties associated with steels.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
12.02.01 describe the following physical properties - tensile strength - ductility - malleability - hardness - toughness - machinability - corrosion resistance	- list and define the physical propeties of steels
12.02.02 identify the effects of the following elements: - tungsten - molybdenum - manganese - vanadium - carbon - lead - chrome - nickel	- list and identify the effects of alloying

MODULE 12.03 HEAT TREATMENT

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. introduce the student to the various heat treating operations,
b. enable the student to describe the purpose of the heat treating operation.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
12.03.01 recognize the purpose and methods of stress relieving	- identify and describe the methods of and purposes for stress relieving
12.03.02 recognize the method and purpose of a full annealing operation	- identify and describe the methods of and purposes for a full anneal - perform an annealing operation on a sample piece (weldments) (alloy steel)
12.03.03 recognize and understand the steps required to perform a hardening operation - heating - soaking - cooling	- identify and describe the hardening process - perform a hardening operation on a sample piece
12.03.04 recognize the various methods of surface hardening - cyaniding - carburizing - nitriding - flame hardening - induction hardening	- identify and describe the purposes of and methods used for surface hardening

12.03.05 recognize the method and needs for a tempering operation	- identify the methods of and the purposes for tempering - perform a tempering operation on a sample piece
12.03.06 recognize the methods used to determine the hardness of a heat treated material - file test - Rockwell - Brinell - other	- identify and describe the various methods of hardness testing - perform a hardness test on a sample piece

UNIT 13.0 LATHES

General Aim

The student should develop the ability and knowledge to operate the lathe in a safe and efficient manner.

MODULE 13.01 LATHE TERMINOLOGY

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to:

a. become familiar with the different types of lathes and their capabilities,
b. identify the major parts of the engine lathe,
c. identify the use of the major parts of the engine lathe.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.01.01 recognize the various types of lathes, their operations and capabilities	- identify and list types of lathes and their operation
13.01.02 recognize the major parts of an engine lathe	- identify the various parts
13.01.03 recognize the purpose of the major parts	- identify the purpose of the major parts

13.01.04

identify and list work holding devices
- 3 jaw universal
- 4 jaw universal
- combination
- face plate
- driving plate
- collets
- magnetic chucks

MODULE 13.02 WORK HOLDING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to understand and apply the principles of work holding devices.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.02.01	
mount chucks on various types of spindle nose - camlock - flange - threads - taper and key	- mount chucks on various types of spindle nose
13.02.02	
set up work in a 3 jaw universal chuck - chucking procedure - clean chuck - clean work - deburr	- accurately set up work in 3 jaw universal chucks
13.02.03	
set up work in a 4 jaw independent chuck - work truing methods - chalk - tool bit - dial indicator	- accurately set up work in a 4 jaw chuck using various methods depending upon the accuracy required

13.02.04	
mount work on centres, use face or driving plates - type, features and functions of lathe centres - aligning centres - types, features and functions of driving and face plates	- align centres using various methods - mount work on centres
13.02.05	
set up work in a collet	- mount collet set up - set up work
13.02.06	
mount a workpiece on a face plate - types, features and functions - methods of setting up work - mechanics and balance	- mount and balance a workpiece on a face plate
13.02.07	
set up work on mandrels - types, features and functions - methods of mounting - methods of dismounting - precaution	- mount work on mandrels
13.02.08	
set up work using steady and follower rests - types, features and functions - aligning work - clamping precautions - types of work requiring rests	- turn small diameter workpieces using steady and follower rests

MODULE 13.03 CUTTING TOOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to develop skills in the selection of various lathe tools.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.03.01	
identify shapes and sizes of tool bits - high speed - carbide, throwaway - carbide	- recognize and list
13.03.02	
identify the alloys used in tool bit manufacture	- recognize and list
13.03.03	
identify tool bit clearance and cutting angles	- state cutting angles
13.03.04	
identify factors related to tool bit selection - material to be cut - operatio - cost	- recognize and list

13.03.05 grind tool bits for basic turning operations - left and right hand - round nose general purpose - left and right hand facing - threading - boring - parting (cut-off)	- grind tool bits
13.03.06 identify and list principle of metal cutting - forming a chip - types of chips - heat and coolants	- describe stress principles involved at the tool point during a cutting operation

MODULE 13.04 TURNING TECHNIQUES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to perform basic turning operations.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.04.01	
face or square work using - 3 jaw universal chucks - 4 jaw independent chucks - centres	- face workpiece
13.04.02	

turn work parallel
- in a chuck
  - 3 jaw
  - 4 jaw
- in collets
- on centres
	- turn parallel surfaces

13.04.03	
turn a taper (chuck mounted) using the compound - types, features and functions of tapers - setting compound slide - testing and measuring tapers	- turn tapers
13.04.04	
turn a taper using the set over method (work on centres) - methods of mounting - uses and limitations - measuring set overs - effect of extreme set overs on centres	- turn tapers

13.04.05	
turn a taper using a taper attachment - types, uses and limitations of taper attachments - setting taper attachment	- turn tapers
13.04.06	
chamfer and/or round corners - types of chamfers - types of radii - methods of turning	- turn chamfers and radii
13.04.07	

turn various types of shoulders
- types, features and functions of shoulders
  - filleted
  - angular
  - square
  - recessed
	- turn shoulders

13.04.08	
cut grooves or necks on work held on centres - types of necks and grooves - use of spring tool holders	- cut grooves and necks
13.04.09	
part, neck or groove work held in a chuck - types of tools - method of parting	- part off workpiece
13.04.10	

knurl a workpiece to specification (mounted in chuck or on centre)
- knurling methods
- types of knurls
- reasons for
- speeds - feeds
- lubrication
- pressure
- patterns
  - diamond
  - straight
  - helical
	- knurl various patterns
	- describe the reasons for knurling
	- describe the various patterns available

13.04.11	
turn contours with forming tools - types of form tools - types of contoured work	- turn contours
13.04.12	
turn an eccentric on centres - types, features and functions of offsets - measuring offsets - methods of turning - mounting methods	- turn eccentrics to specifications
13.04.13	
turn an eccentric (chuck mounter) - method of layout - set up methods	
13.01.14	
file a surface to specification - filing methods - advantages and disadvantages - types of files - file cleaning	- file turned surfaces - describe types of lathe files, their parts and use

MODULE 13.05 THREADING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student understand the terminology related to thread cutting,
b. enable the students to screw cut external and internal single start thread,
c. enable the student to check and measure threads.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.05.01	

screw cut a single start external thread mounted in a chuck or on centres
- tool setting gauges
- mounting methods
- thread specification
- compound travel calculations
- threading procedures
  - types of chasing dies
  - height and position of tool bit
  - speeds
  - gear trains
  - cross feed stops
- left hand threads
- thread follower rests
	- screw cut various sizes and pitches of threads
	- describe thread classifications
	- calculate compound travel
	- describe tool setting gauges

13.05.02	
cut a single start internal thread mounted in a chuck - types and uses on internal cutting tools - direction of tool in feed - threading blind holes - boring bar size - thread endings - bottoming precautions	- cut an internal thread - describe thread endings

13.05.03 diagnose and correct basic screw cutting problems	
13.05.04 die cut an external thread, work held in check or on centres - mounting work - holding and feeding dies - work preparation	- die cut a thread
13.05.05 tap a parallel thread work held in a chuck - holding methods - tap alignment - work preparation	- tap a parallel thread

MODULE 13.06 DRILLING, REAMING AND BORING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to:

a. help the student select the correct set up for drilling,
b. enable the student to select and use the correct reamer,
c. make the student aware of the methods used for boring.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.06.01 select and use the correct centre drill - locating shaft centres - features and functions of centre holes	- list centre holes and centre drill features
13.06.02 drill a hole to specification - drill holding methods - drilling methods - drill types - drilling blind holes - drilling stepped holes	drill holes to specification
13.06.03 counterbore, spot face or countersink a hole to specification - types and features of counterbores and countersinks - controlling depth - pilot binding	- countersink, counterbore and spot face

13.06.04	

ream holes to specification
- types, nomenclature and functions of machine reamers
  - straight
  - tapered
  - helical
- holding methods
- cutting speeds and feeds
- allowances
- coolants, cutting fluids
- taper reaming
- reaming blind holes
	- ream holes
	- calculate speeds and feeds
	- describe nomenclature and types of machine reamers
	- calculate speed for reaming

13.06.05	
bore a parallel hole to specification - types and functions of boring tools and bars - methods - centering work - chatter correction - blind holes - counterbore	- bore holes - describe types of boring bars

MODULE 13.07 FILING AND POLISHING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to make the student aware of the various methods of filing and polishing.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
13.07.01	

file parallel, tapered, round and contoured work to specification
- types of files
- types of abrasives
- kinds of work requiring filing
- speeds
- filing allowances
- polishing allowances
- filing to shoulders
- file cleaning
  - file cards
  - file pins
- surface finishes obtainable
- procedures for contour filing
	- recognize and list types of files
	- recognize and list types of abrasives
	- file surfaces
	- polish surfaces
	- maintain files

13.07.02	
polish an external or internal surface - types, features and classification of abrasives for polishing - methods of holding abrasive materials - speeds - surface finishes obtainable - reasons for - use of oils and coolants - polishing sticks	- polish various surfaces - describe types of abrasives

UNIT 14.0 MEASUREMENT

General Aim

The student should develop an understanding of the care, use, and accuracies of various measuring devices.

MODULE 14.01 MEASURING SYSTEMS AND SCALES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student recognize measuring systems and tools.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
14.01.01 state the reasons for accurate measurement (interchangeability)	
14.01.02 recognize and state the difference between measurement systems - imperial - S.I. metric	- describe the: - S.I. metric system as it relates to machine shop applications - imperial system as it relates to machine shop applications
14.01.03 differentiate between graduations on steel rules - fractional - S.I. metric - decimal rules - shrink rules - circumference rules	

14.01.04
differentiate between micrometer and vernier scales
	- describe micrometer scales
	  - S.I. metric
	  - imperial
	- describe vernier scales
	  - S.I. metric
	  - imperial

14.01.05 state the principles of a vernier scale	- list principles
14.01.06 state the principles of a sine bar	- list principles
14.01.07 recognize and state the principles of gage blocks	- list principles

14.01.08
list the various types and scales of dial indicators
  - S.I. metric
  - imperial
	- recognize and list types of dial indicators

14.01.09
state the principles and reasons for go and no-go gauges
	- describe types of gauges
	  - solid
	  - adjustable

14.01.10
state the accuracies obtainable from various tools (S.I. metric and imperial)
  - steel rules
  - inside and outside calipers
  - precision square
  - micrometers
  - vernier calipers
  - gear tooth calipers
  - hole gauges
  - telescope gauges
  - gauge blocks
  - sine bar
	- describe the accuracies obtainable from various measuring tools

MODULE 14.02 RULES

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to provide the student with an opportunity to develop measuring skills (S.I. metric, imperial).

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
14.02.01 identify and list various types of rules - steel rules - hook rules - caliper rule - circumference - steel tape - shrinkage rule	- recognize and list types of rules
14.02.02 measure lengths, diameters and irregular shapes using steel tapes	- measure lengths and diameters
14.02.03 measure lengths and diameters using steel rules	- measure lengths and diameters
14.02.04 measure lengths and depths using rule depth gauge	

MODULE 14.03 CALIPERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student recognize and use various calipers.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
14.03.01 use outside calipers to measure outside diameters, lengths and widths	- measure outside diameters with calipers
14.03.02 use inside calipers to measure inside diameters, grooves and slots	- measure inside diameters, grooves and slots with calipers
14.03.03 describe and use the procedure for reading micrometers - imperial - S.I. metric	- describe procedures for taking a reading with micrometers
14.03.04 use micrometers to measure round, square and miscellaneous shapes	- measure round, square and miscellaneous shapes with micrometers
14.03.05 describe and use the procedure for reading vernier calipers - imperial - S.I metric	- describe procedures for taking a reading with vernier calipers

14.03.06 use a vernier caliper to measure round, square and miscellaneous shapes	- measure round, square and miscellaneous shapes with vernier calipers

MODULE 14.04 MICROMETERS AND VERNIER CALIPERS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student to accurately measure with various types of micrometers and verniers (S.I. metric and imperial).

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
14.04.01 use a depth micrometer to measure the depth of holes, slots, shoulders, counterbores	- measure depth of slots and shoulders
14.04.02 use an inside micrometer to measure holes, bores and inside measurements - inside micrometer - inside micrometer (jaw type)	- measure holes, bores and inside measurements
14.04.03 use vernier height gauge to measure height and hole centres above a datum	- measure heights and hole centres

MODULE 14.05 SQUARES - PROTRACTORS

Goal Statment

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to measure square and angular surfaces.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
14.05.01	
identify and list various types of squares - precision or machinist square - combination square - cylindrical square - micrometer square - toolmakers square	- recognize and list types of squares
14.05.02	
check adjoining surfaces for squareness using a square and surface plate	- check surfaces for squareness
14.05.03	
check adjoining surfaces for squareness using: - precision square - combination square - cylindrical square	- check surfaces for squareness
14.05.04	
check angles using: - combination square (protractor head) - steel protractor - combination depth and angle gauge - vernier bevel gauge	- check and measure angles
14.05.05	
check a square for accuracy	- check a square for accuracy using a surface plate

MODULE 14.06 MISCELLANEOUS MEASUREMENTS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to accurately measure holes, slots, angles, radii, tapers and threads.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
14.06.01	
measure small holes and slots using small hole gauges - ball - flat bottom	- measure small holes with small hole gauges and outside micrometers
14.06.02	
measure small and large internal holes and cavities with telescoping gauges	- measure small and large holes with telescoping gauges
14.06.03	
measure angles using sine bars, gauge blocks and dial indicator	- measure angles
14.06.04	
measure fillets and corners using radius gauges	- measure fillets and radii
14.06.05	
measure threads with - screw pitch gauges - thread micrometers - wires - comparators	- measure threads
14.06.06	
measure gear teeth with a gear tooth vernier	- measure gear teeth

14.06.07 check measurements with go and no-go gauges	- use go and no-go gauges
14.06.08 check surface characteristics (finish) using comparison blocks	- use surface comparison blocks
14.06.09 identify and list types of comparators - dial indicators - optical comparators - mechanical - air gauge - electronic - optical flats	- recognize and list types of comparators
14.06.10 list the imperial system of describing tapers - morse - brown and sharpe - milling machine spindle nose tapers	- discribe and list imperial taper systems
14.06.11 measure shafts using - outside micrometers - gauges with dial test indicators - sine bars	- measure shafts to tolerance using micrometers and gauges
14.06.12 measure holes using - inside micrometers - gauges	- measure holes to tolerance using micrometers and gauges

MODULE 14.07 CARE AND ADJUSTMENT OF MEASURING INSTRUMENTS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student maintain and adjust measuring instruments to ensure their accuracy.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The students will be able to: 14.07.01 check various measuring instruments for accuracy - outside micrometers - inside micrometers - vernier height gauge - dial indicator	- use gauge bars and blocks to check accuracy

UNIT 15.0 BLUEPRINT READING

General Aim

The student should gain an understanding of pictorial drawings, dimension and size descriptions, drawing conventions and symbols and develop an ability to interpret correct operations for shop procedures.

MODULE 15.01 SKETCHING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to sketch quick, accurate interpretations of machine parts.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
15.01.01 sketch straight parallel lines, proportion lines, arcs and circles, ellipses, radii and large circles	- sketch lines, proportion circles etc.
15.01.02 sketch one-view drawings of simple machine parts	- sketch one-view drawings
15.01.03 sketch two-view drawings of simple machine parts	- sketch two-view drawings
15.01.04 sketch three-view orthographic projections of simple machine parts in first angle mode	- sketch orthographic projections

15.01.05	
sketch various basic shapes in isometric mode - cube - rectangular blocks - cylinder - circles (ellipses) - radii - tubes - sectioned tube	- sketch various basic shapes
15.01.06	
sketch pictorial drawings in oblique and isometric modes	- sketch pictorial drawings
15.01.07	
sketch orthographic drawings using hidden, centre and dimension lines	- sketch orthographic drawings

MODULE 15.02 ALPHABET OF LINES AND SYMBOLS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help the student understand the meaning of lines and symbols.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
15.02.01 identify basic lines used in engineering drawings - border - construction - section - hidden - centre - cutting plane - short break - long break - phantom - extension	- recognize and list basic lines
15.02.02 identify basic symbols used in engineering drawings - arrowheads - diameter symbol (D) (O) - radius symbol (R) - countersink (C'SK) - cold rolled steel (CRS) - hexagon (HEX) - other	- recognize and list basic symbols

15.02.03 identify the basic welding symbols	- review handout and American National Standard Welding Symbols chart of standard welding symbols - describe the significance of the basic welding symbol - identify the significance of the basic welding symbol and its elements - identify basic welding symbols - identify supplementary welding symbols - identify location significance of basic welding symbols - identify preferred symbols - identify the placement of additional information
15.02.04 identify fillet weld symbols and their placement	- describe how size and length of fillet welds is indicated in the weld symbol - identify the methods used to determine the extent of welding - identify the method used to describe chain and staggered welding
15.02.05 identify groove, plug, J and slot weld symbols	- describe and identify various welding symbols

MODULE 15.03 DIMENSIONING

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to enable the student to understand the system of dimensioning.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
15.03.01	
identify all basic dimensioning techniques - extension lines - dimension lines - leaders - centre lines - arrow heads - inch marks - finish marks - radii - diameter - hole centres	- recognize and list basic dimensioning techniques
15.03.02	
identify basic section linings - cast iron - steel - bronze, brass - aluminium - white metal, babbit	- recognize and list section linings

15.03.03
identify special methods of dimensioning
- baseline
- point to point
- datum
- digital accuracy
- tolerancing
- threads
  - external
  - internal
  - pipe
- fits
  - screw threads
  - shafts
  - bearings
- sections
- auxiliary views
- welding descriptions
- pins
	- recognize and list special dimensioning methods

15.03.04 identify lines, edges, dimensions and symbols from given drawings	- recognize and list lines, edges and symbols

UNIT 16.0 APPLIED MATHEMATICS

This unit should be taught throughout the program as its various topics become relevent to the unit being studied

General Aim

The student should develop skills to make calculations necessary for various machine operation.

MODULE 16.01 BASIC CALCULATIONS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student develop necessary skills in the computation of numbers, fractions and decimals.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
16.01.01 add, subtract, multiply and divide whole numbers	- calculate problems involving 16.01.01 to 16.01.07
16.01.02 add, subtract, multiply and divide decimals	
16.01.04 calculate percentage problems	
16.01.05 calculate problems in weights and linear measures	

16.01.06

calculate problems involving powers and roots

16.01.07

calculate problems involving ratio and proportion
- belt drives
- gear trains
- chain drives

MODULE 16.02 GEOMETRIC MEASURMENTS

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student develop skills in geometric measurements.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
16.02.01	
calculate and measure linear geometric measurements	- measure geometric lines
16.02.02	
calculate areas of geometric figures - squares - rectangles - circles - hexagon - triangles - trapezoids	- calculate geometric areas
16.02.03	
measure and calculate angles - triangles - squares - hexagon - octagon	- measure and calculate angles
16.02.04	
calculate volumes of geometric figures - cubes - spheres - cones - cylinders	- calculate geometric volumes

16.02.05 layout geometric constructions - perpendicular - perpendicular of bisector - tangents to a point on circles - centres of circles - angle construction - angle bisectors - equal angles - parallel lines - congruent triangles - right triangles - fillets	- construct geometric theorms

MODULE 16.03 TRIGONOMETRY

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student develop an understanding of the theory and applications of trigonometric functions.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student will be able to:	
16.03.01	
calculate angles and sides of right triangles using the pythagoras theorm	- calculate angles and sides
16.03.02	
use trigonometry tables to obtain values for functions	- use trigonometry tables
16.03.03	
use trigonometry functions to solve problems involving tapers	
16.03.04	
use trigonometry tables to solve problems involving screw threads measurement	- use trigonometry functions
16.03.05	
use trigonometry functions to solve problems involving dovetails	- solve dovetail problems
16.03.06	
use trigonometry functions to solve problems involving angle cuts	- solve for angles

MODULE 16.04 APPLIED MATH

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to help each student use math principals to solve practical problems.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
16.04.01 calculate cutting speeds and feeds for lathe operations	- calculate cutting speeds and feeds
16.04.02 calculate drilling speeds and feeds	
16.04.03 calculate milling speeds and feeds	
16.04.04 calculate shaper speeds and feeds	
16.04.05 solve problems using standard formulas and equations	
16.04.06 solve problems involving graphing	- do various graphing problems
16.04.07 solve problems involving weights of materials	- solve problems involving weights of materials

16.04.08 solve questions involving production problems, i.e. pieces/hour	

UNIT 17.0 RIGGING AND MATERIAL HANDLING

General Aim

The student should be familiar with safe practices in rigging, staging and material handling

MODULE 17.01 SAFETY REGULATIONS ON RIGGING

Goal Statements

The learning experiences in this module are designed to;

a. develop safe practices in material handling,
b. increase the student's awareness of types of material handling equipment,
c. familiarize the student with crane hand signals and their application,
d. familiarize the student with types of scaffolds and their safe use.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
17.01.01	
list and identify Workers Compensation Board Accident Prevention Regulations on rigging	- identify and study Section 8.50 on housekeeping - identify and study Section 8.56 - 62 on storage of materials - identify and study Section 14.02 - 20 on personal protective equipment - identify and study Section 54.02 - 22 on rigging - identify and study Section 56.00 - 100 on hoisting equipment - identify and study Appendix D on hand signals

Cont'd

17.01.01 (Cont'd)	- identify and study Section 30.12 - 16 on ladders - identify and study Section 32.12 - 82 on scaffolds and stages
17.01.02 identify the principles governing hoisting	- determine weight to be lifted - determine type and shape of material to be involved - determine methods of hoisting to be employed - identify the safety precautions employed in the process - identify correct piling or blocking methods
17.01.03 identify types of material handling equipment and their use	- identify the types of rope - identify condition and load capacities of fibre rope and wire rope - identify condition and load capacities of chains - identify types of grab chains and their uses - identify the correct usage of Crosby clips - identify the correct methods in using plate clamps and plate hooks - identify the correct methods in using come-a-long and chain hoists - identify the correct methods in using hydraulic jacks - identify the correct methods in applying cable clamps - identify the procedures of slinging - regular shaped objects - irregular shaped objects - for holding loads horizontially - for holding loads vertically - with a snatch block

17.01.04 identify the application of hand signals	- identify conditions requiring a signaller - identify types of signalling systems - identify authorized hand signals
17.01.05 identify and describe various types of scaffolds	- identify the general requirements for construction of scaffolds - describe a wooden scaffold - describe a bracket scaffold - describe a needle beam scaffold - describe a thrust out scaffold - identify the limitations of ladder jack scaffolds
17.01.06 identify types of staging and their use	- identify the general requirements for construction of staging - identify the application of common stages - identify the application of a swing stage
17.01.07 identify safety procedures employed in checking scaffolding and stages	- identify type of work area to be inspected - check grade and condition of material - check correct footing or mounting and tie-in to other members - check for correct spacing of members - determine if material sizes meet specifications

MODULE 17.02 MATERIAL HANDLING EQUIPMENT

Goal Statement

The learning experiences in this module are designed to familiarize the student with safe methods of using materials handling equipment.

Learning Outcomes	Student Activities
The student should be able to:	
17.02.01 identify types of material handling equipment	- define the term "material handling equipment" - identify methods of material handling - identify methods of handling and storing wire ropes - identify limitations of human model in material handling - identify limitations of fork lifts - identify limitations of hydraulic hoists - identify limitations of overhead cranes
17.02.02 given a shop model, the learner will be able to demonstrate the safe methods of operating material handling equipment	- identify shop model used for material handling - identify relevant section in Workers Compensation Board Industrial Health and Safety Regulations Section 26.24 - 26.50 all - identify operating instructions of model - observe shop rules on operation of material handling equipment - demonstrate correct use of model

Section Four
Resource Materials

CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM
CAREER PREPARATION PROGRAM

MACHINIST TRAINING GRADE 12 RESOURCE MATERIALS

TEXTS

Krar, Oswald, St. Amand Technology of Machine Tools McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd. Toronto, Ontario

Lascoe, Nelson, Porter Machine Shop Operations and Setups American Technical Society, Chicago

Moltrecht, K.H. Machine Shop Practice Volume 1 and Volume 2 Industrial Press Inc. New York, N.Y.

Delmar Publishers Milling Machine Work Delmar Publishers Canada Ltd. Toronto, Ontario

Krar, S.F. and Oswald, J.W. Turning Technology Delmar Publishers Canada Ltd. Toronto, Ontario

Krar, S.F. and Oswald, J.W. Grinding Technology Delmar Publishers Canada Ltd. Toronto, Ontario

Krar, S.F. and Oswald, J.W. Drilling Technology Delmar Publishers Canada Ltd. Toronto, Ontario

Johnson, Carl G. and Weeks, William R. Metallurgy American Technical Publishers, Alsip, Illinois

Olivo, Thomas C. Basic Machine Technology Bobbs-Merrill Educational Publishing Indianapolis, Ind.

Machine Shop Mathematics Delmar Publishers Canada Ltd. Toronto, Ontario

Oberg, Erik Jones, F.D. and Horton, Holbrook L. Machinery's Handbook Industrial Press, New York, N.Y.

PROGRAMMED TEXT

Basic Machining Series American Machinists/Beckworth Training Systems

AUDIO-VISUAL Film Strip

Machine Tool Course Hoffman Occupational Learning Systems El Monte, California

INTRODUCTION

The field Boilermaker relies upon a variety of lifting and support mechanisms to transfer and secure material and equipment on the jobsite. At one extreme, immense, sophisticated cranes perform massive lifting and moving operations while at the other, simple systems of ropes and pulleys having sufficient mechanical advantage manage smaller operations to enable "man-power" to provide the required energy. In both cases, the fundamental unit of the system is the line or rope, and the Boilermaker must have a complete understanding of the composition, characteristics, capabilities and uses of all types of line and rope. This chapter describes natural fibre, synthetic fibre and wire rope.

KNOTS AND HITCHES

Both natural and synthetic fibre lines can be tied in various ways to produce knots and hitches to serve specific functions in rigging and erection operations.

In making knots and hitches, the rope (Figure 7-1) is described as having three parts:

1. The **running end** or free end used when making a knot or hitch.
2. The **standing part** is the main line or inactive length of rope.
3. The **bight** is the part, usually a loop, between the running end and the standing part.

SECURING LINE ENDS

When a rope is cut, the raw end(s) tends to unravel or untwist and should be secured to prevent losing functional cord. Knotting the raw end is simple, but whipping has several advantages:

1. It does not significantly increase the rope's circumference and thus will still thread through openings.
2. It is a more durable and secure fastening.
3. It can be applied before a rope is cut to prevent any untwisting.

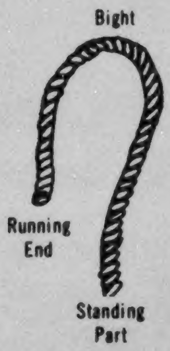


Figure 7-1. Parts of the Rope

321

WHIPPING A LINE END

Figure 7-2 illustrates the steps involved in whipping a line end:

Step 1. Using a small cord, make a bight near the end and lay the doubled cord along a groove in the rope between two strands. The bight should project about 1/2" beyond the end of the rope.

Step 2. Begin wrapping the standing part of the cord tightly around the line and cord.

Step 3. Continue to wrap toward the end of the rope, ending about 1/2" from the cut. The wrapped portion should be as long as the equivalent of 1-1 1/2 times the rope diameter.

Step 4. At the end of the wrap, slip the cord end through the bight. Then pull the free end of the cord until the bight is drawn under the whipping and the cord is tightened.

Step 5. Cut off ends at the edge of the wrapping leaving a finished termination.

KNOTS AT THE END OF A LINE

1. The **overhand knot** (Figure 7-3) is the simplest knot to make, but should be used only with small cord or twine on parcels. On a larger rope used in handlines and rope blocks this knot jams when pulled tight and damages the fibres of the rope.
2. The **figure eight knot** (Figure 7-4) does not injure the rope fibres and is larger than an overhand knot for tying on the end of a rope to prevent it from slipping through a fastening or a loop in another line.

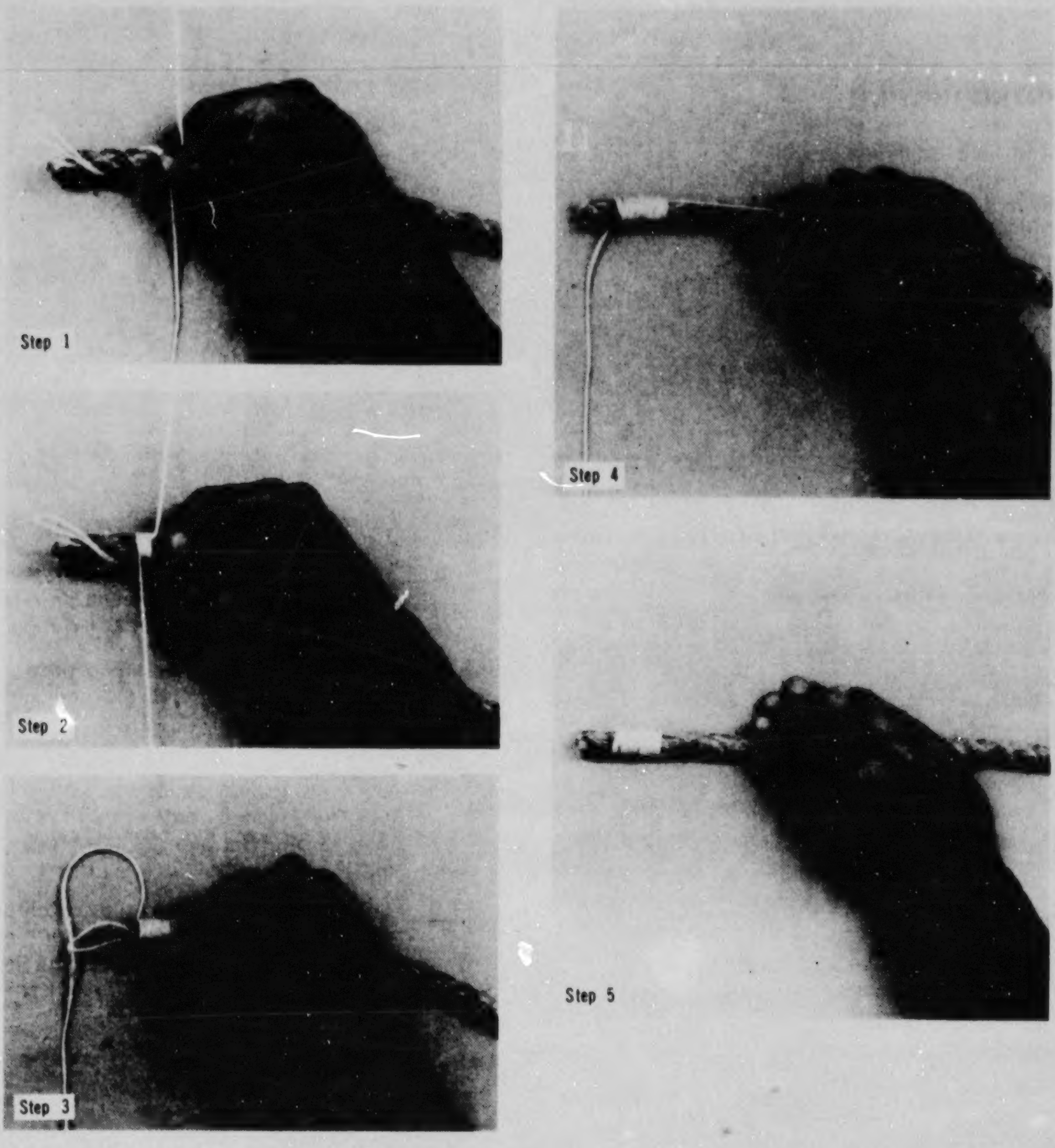


Figure 7-2. Whipping a Line End

KNOTS FOR JOINING TWO LINES

1. The **square or reef knot** (Figure 7-5) is used for tying together two ropes of the same size, or for tying together the ends of a short rope to make a temporary endless sling. Properly tied, a square knot will not slip when the rope is dry and has 50% of the rope strength.

   When tying a square knot, the standing part and the running end of each rope must pass through the bight of the other rope in the same direction. A square knot is easily untied by grasping the ends of the two bights and pulling the knot apart.

2. The **granny knot** or the **thief knot** (Figure 7-6) looks like a square knot, but will slip and jam under a load.

3. A **single sheet bend** (sometimes called a **weaver's knot**) is used to tie together two dry ropes of unequal size. Figure 7-7

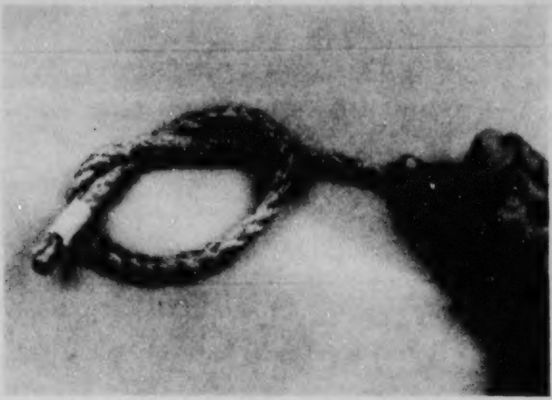


Figure 7-3. Overhand Knot

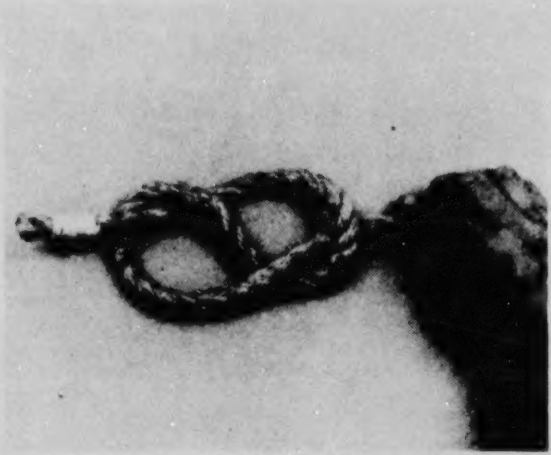


Figure 7-4. Figure Eight Knot

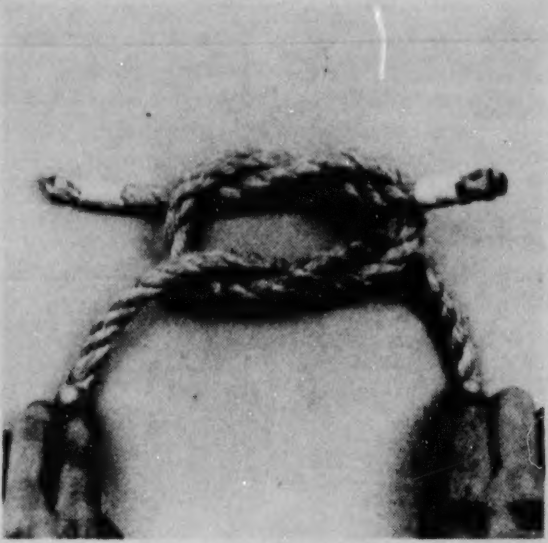


Figure 7-6. Granny Knot

illustrates the method of tying a single sheet bend. The knot will draw tight under light loads but will loosen or slip when the lines are slackened.

4. A **double sheet bend** (Figure 7-8) is used to join wet or dry lines of equal or unequal size. It will not slip or draw tight under heavy loads.

   First tie a single sheet bend (do not pull it tight), then take one extra turn around the bight, passing the running end under the

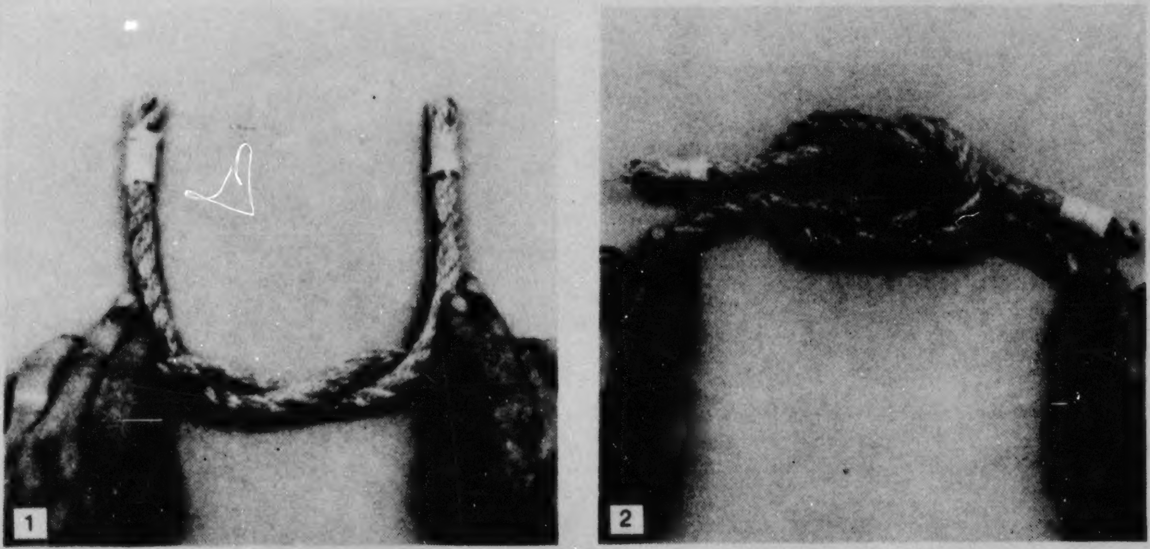


Figure 7-5. Tying a Square Knot

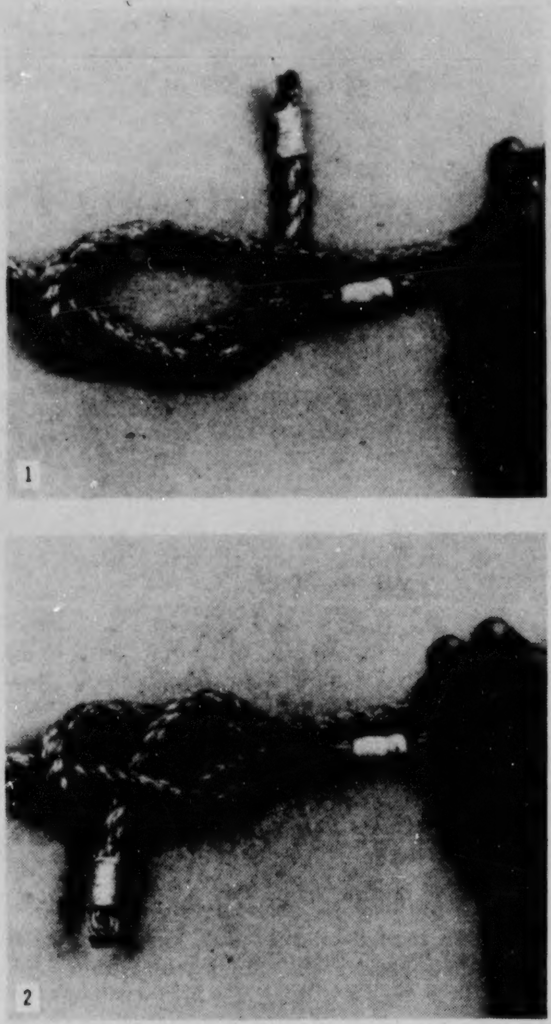


Figure 7-7. Tying a Single Sheet Bend

Figure 7-8. Double Sheet Bend

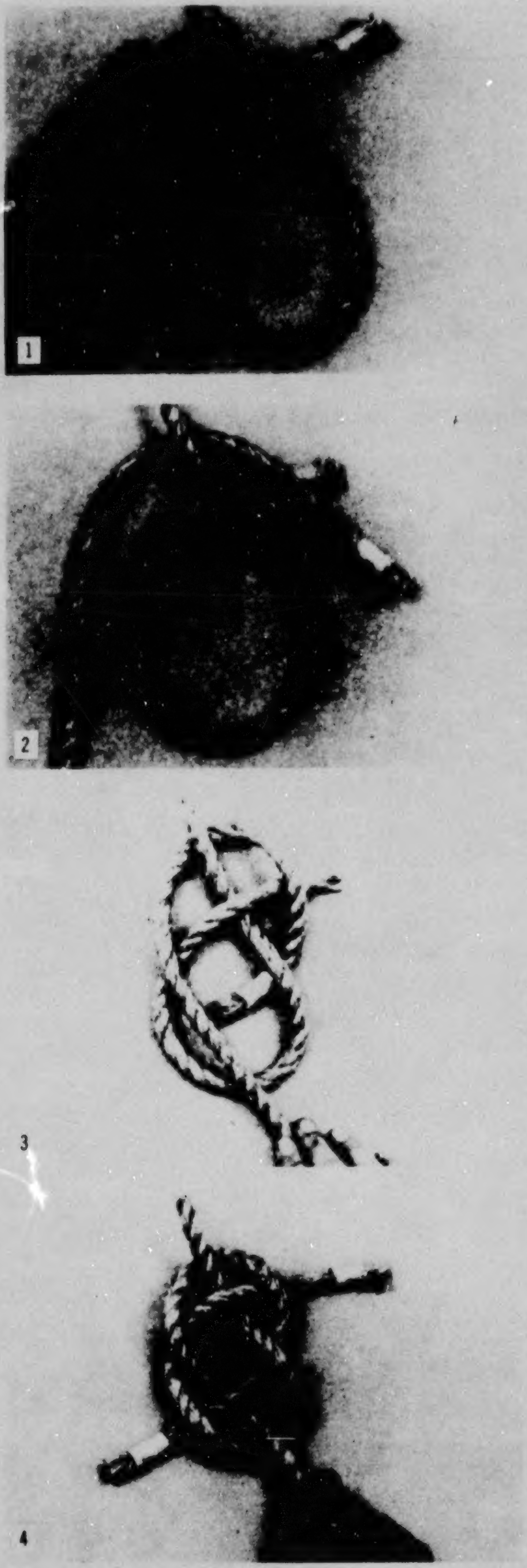


Figure 7-9. Tying a Carrick Bend

smaller line and over the larger line as for the single short bend.

5. The **carrick bend** is used for heavy loads and for joining heavy line. It will not draw tight under a heavy load. Figure 7-9 illustrates the steps in tying a carrick bend.

KNOTS FOR MAKING LOOPS

1. The **bowline knot** makes a non-slip loop that will not tighten under straining and can be untied easily when the tope is slack. Figure 7-10 illustrates the steps in tying a bowline knot.
2. The **double bowline knot** (or **French bowline**) provides a secure, two-loop sling that can serve as a seat for an operator (by passing a small, notched board through the loops) or as spreaders to sling a load. Figure 7-11 illustrates the steps in tying a double bowline.
3. The **running bowline knot** is the basic knot used in rigging for raising or lifting loads as it produces a choker type sling at the end of

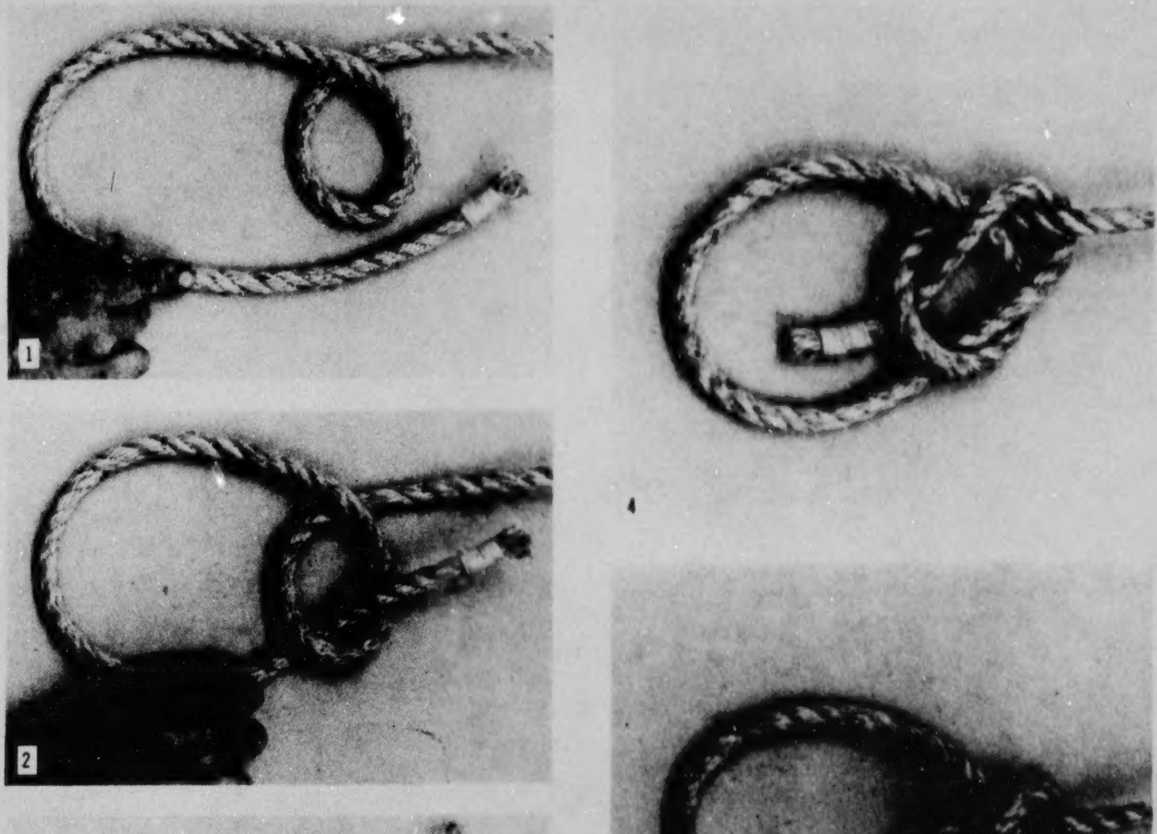


Figure 7-10. Tying a Bowline Knot

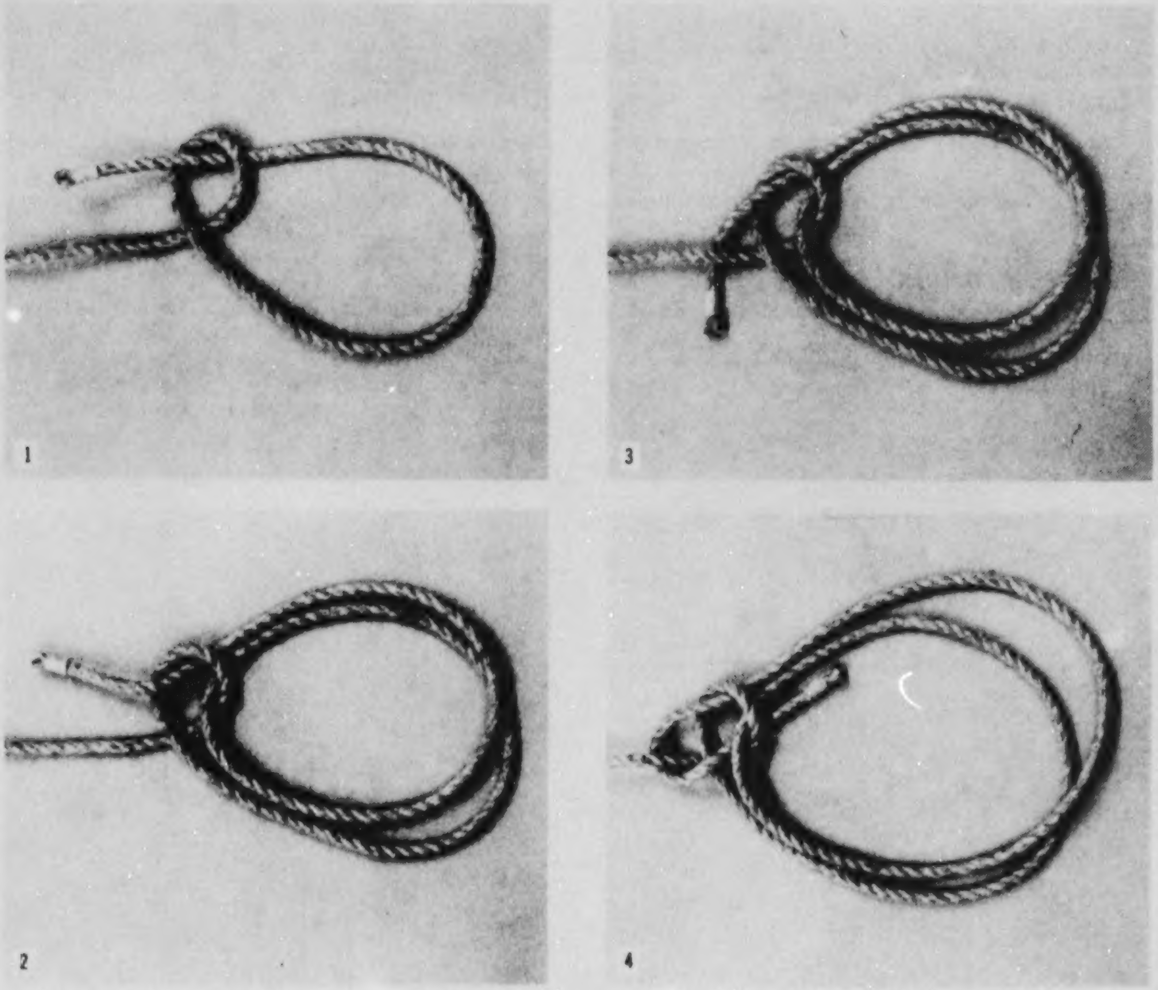


Figure 7-11. Tying a Double Bowline Knot

a single line. Figure 7-12 illustrates the steps in tying a running bowline knot.

4. A **bowline on the bight** is tied to form a double loop in the middle of a line that can be used as a seat or as a spreader to sling a load. Figure 7-13 illustrates the steps in tying a bowline on the bight.
5. A **Spanish bowline** forms two loops or "rabbit ears" providing a double sling for lifting round objects or for rescue work. Figure 7-14 illustrates the steps in tying a Spanish bowline.
6. The **harness hitch** produces a loop in a line which will not slip. Figure 7-15 illustrates the steps in tying the harness hitch.

HITCHES

1. The **half hitch** is used to secure the free end of a line to a timber or to another larger line. Figure 7-16 shows unsafe and safe half hitches.

   Two half hitches (Figure 7-17) provide a more secure fastening to a pole or timber. It is important that the second half hitch is made by passing the running end around the standing part and back under itself again as shown in Figure 7-17.
2. A **round turn and two half hitches** is an alternative method of fastening a line to a timber or pole, and involves passing the running end of the line in two complete

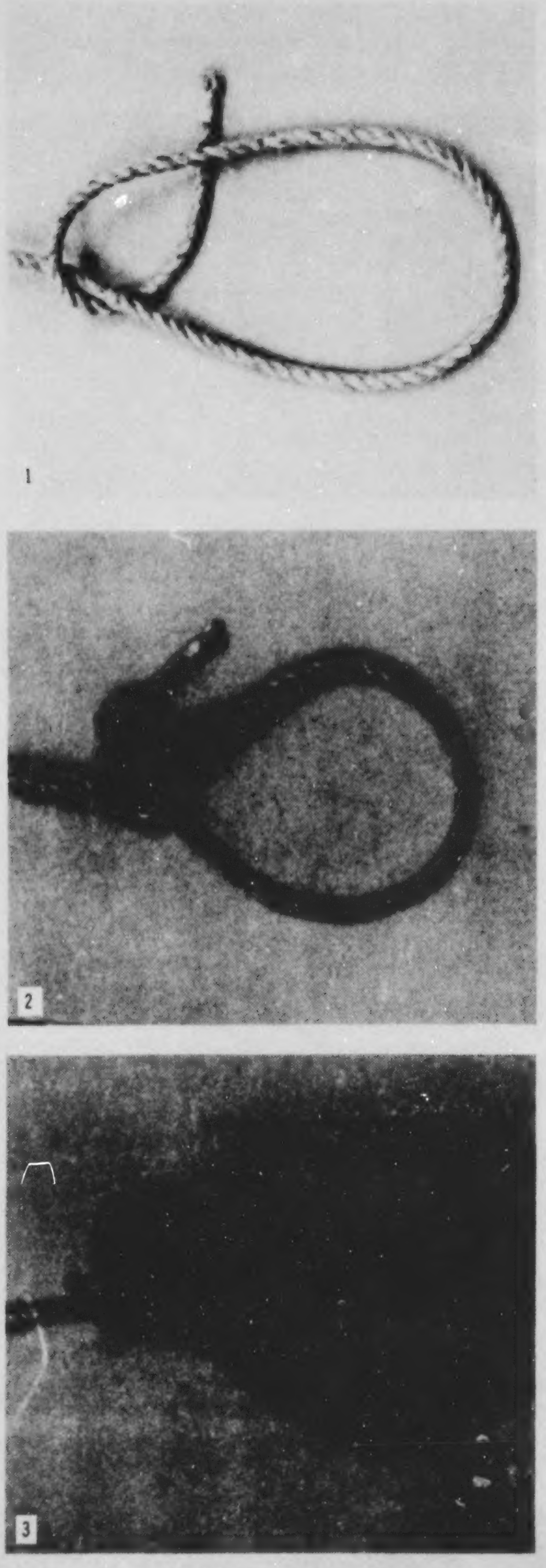


Figure 7-12. Tying a Running Bowline Knot

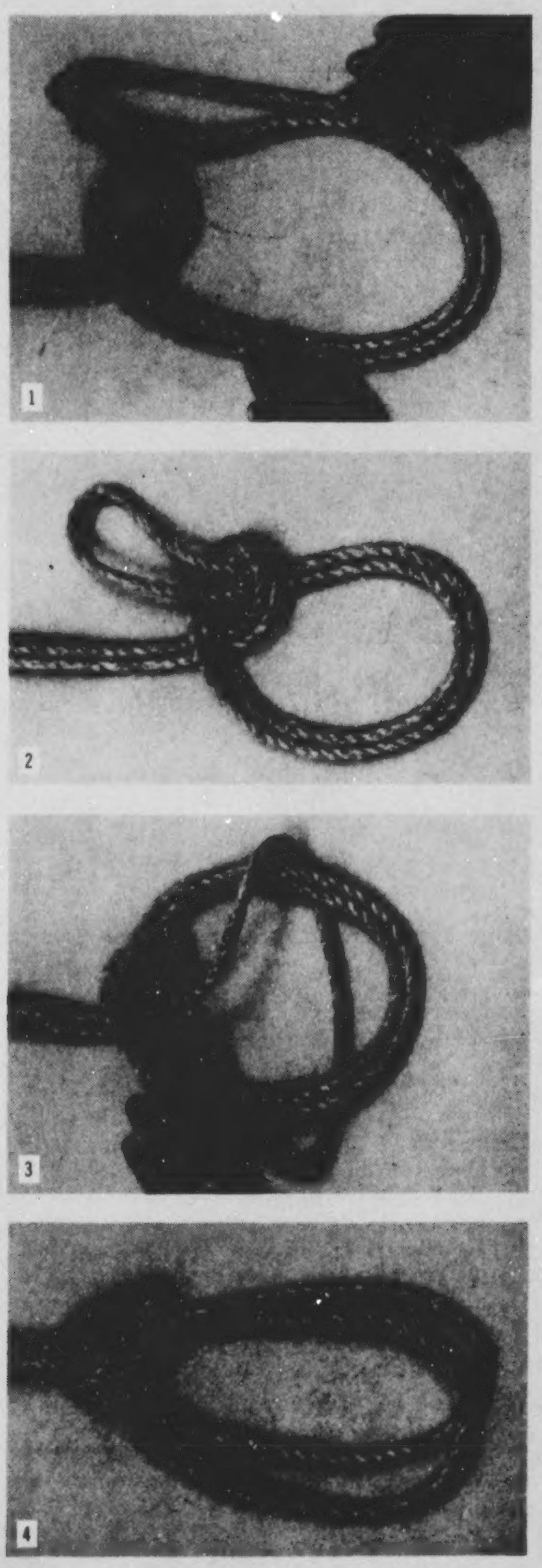


Figure 7-13. Tying a Bowline on the Bight

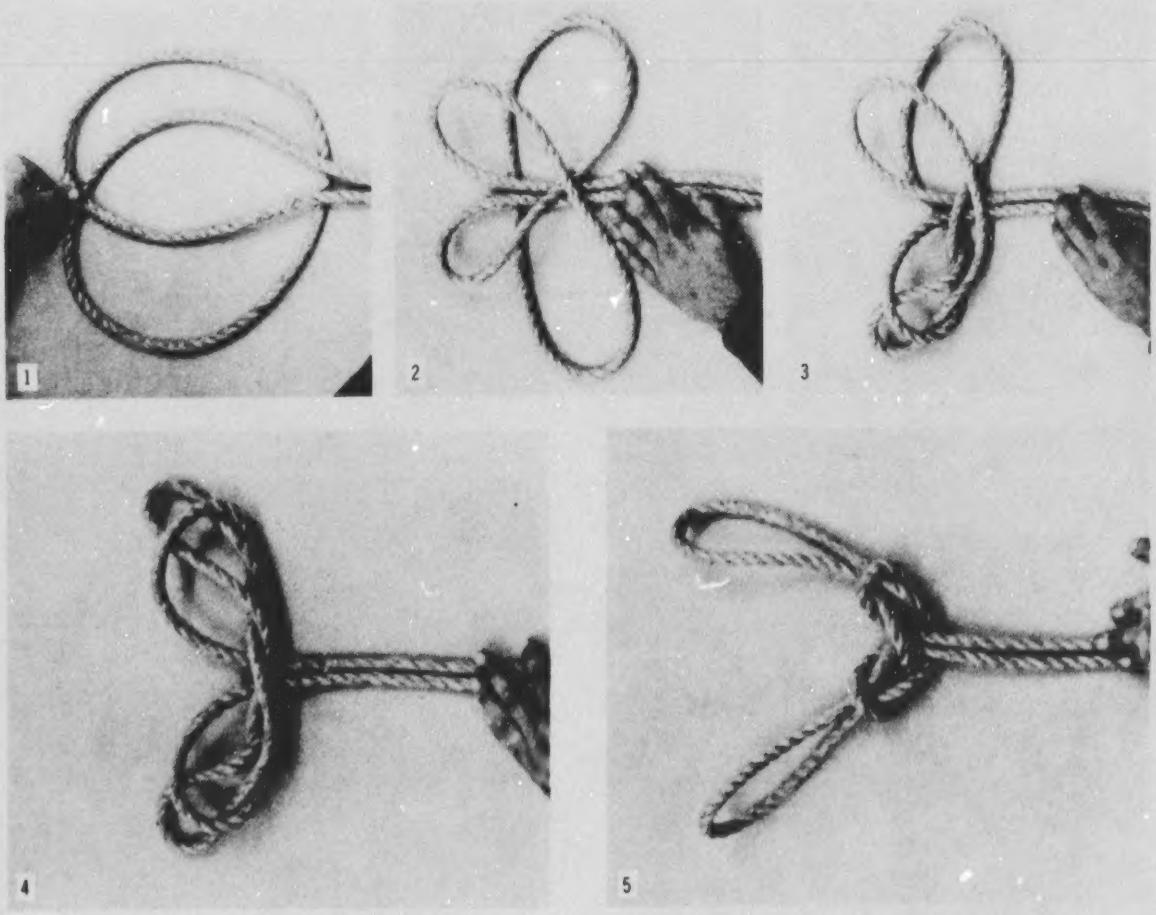


Figure 7-14. Tying a Spanish Bowline

turns around the pole before making the two half hitches as shown in Figure 7-18.

3. The **clove hitch** offers a fast, simple way of fastening a line to a post, timber or pipe and can be tied at any point in the line. To tie a clove hitch in the middle of the line, make two turns close together in the line and twist them to bring them back to back as shown in Figure 7-19. Slip the loops over the post. To tie a clove hitch at the end of the line, two underhand loops are tied around the post as shown in Figure 7-20.
4. The **rolling** or **Magnus hitch** is used to fasten a line to another line, cable, timber or post and it will remain tight under tension or pull. This hitch is also known as the **mooring hitch**. Figure 7-21 illustrates the steps in tying the rolling hitch.
5. A **sheepshank** is used to shorten a rope as a temporary measure. This may be necessary to take the load off a weak or damaged part of the line before replacement can be accomplished. Figure 7-22 illustrates the steps in tying the sheepshank.
6. The **timber hitch** is used to fasten rope to steady loads of posts, planks, timbers and pipes. The knot will loosen when the tension or pull is relieved. The hitch begins with a half hitch and is completed by turning or twisting the running end around itself two or three times following the lay of the rope (Figure 7-23).
7. A **timber hitch and half hitch** provides a more secure hold on heavy poles or timbers for lifting or hauling. This involves tying one or two half hitches around the load, and further along tying a timber hitch with the running end of the line (Figure 7-24).
8. A **catspaw** (Figure 7-25) is a particularly useful method of attaching the middle of a

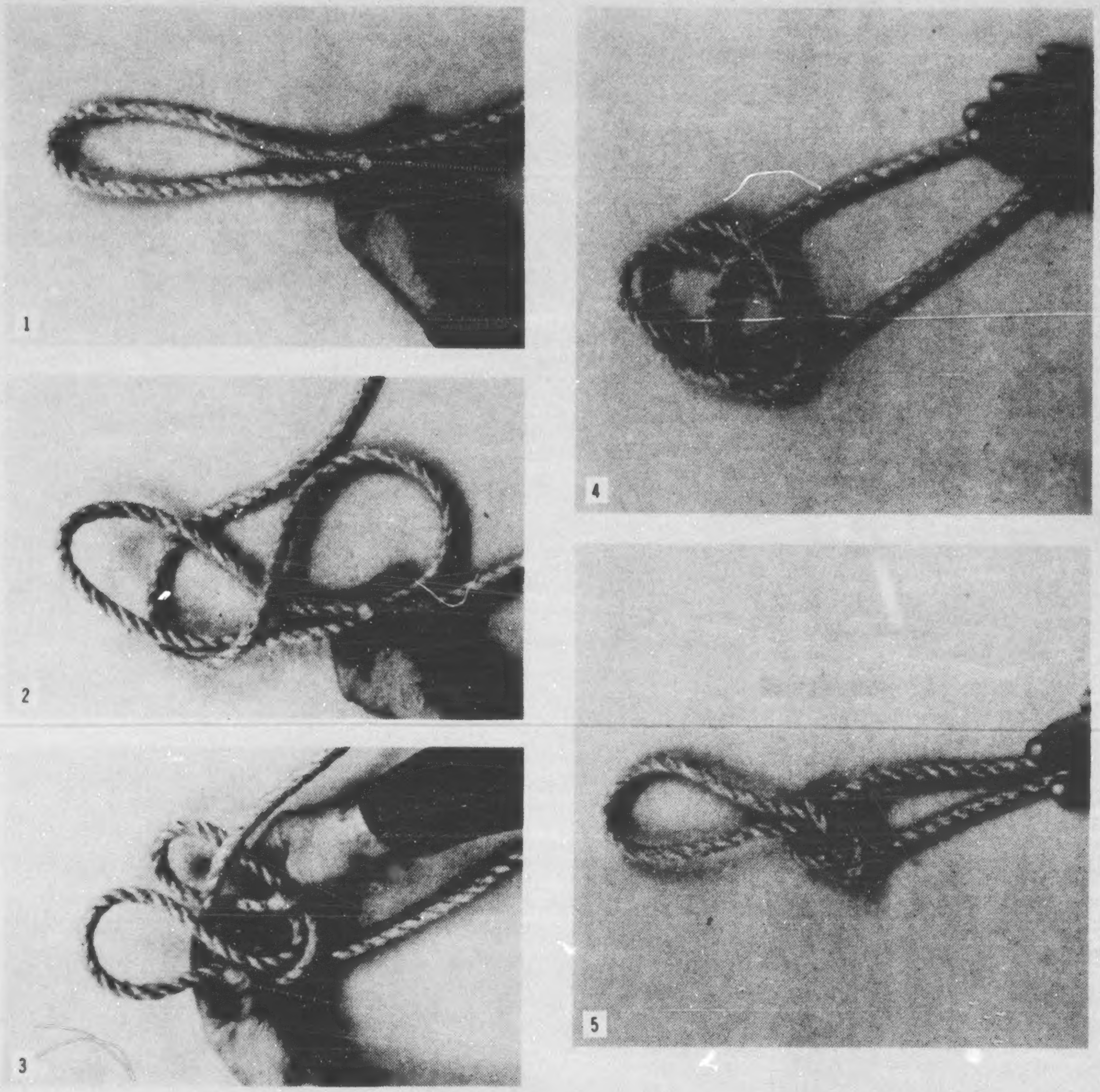


Figure 7-15. Tying a Harness Hitch

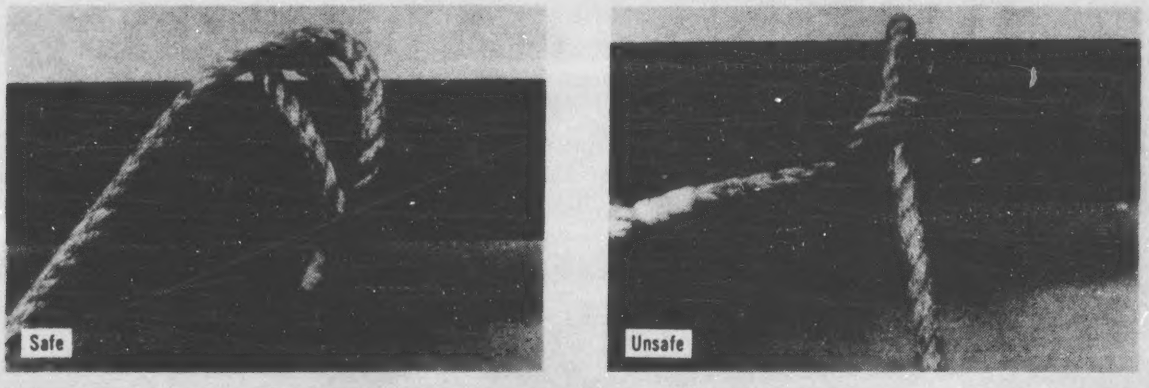

Safe
Unsafe

Figure 7-16. Safe and Unsafe Half Hitches

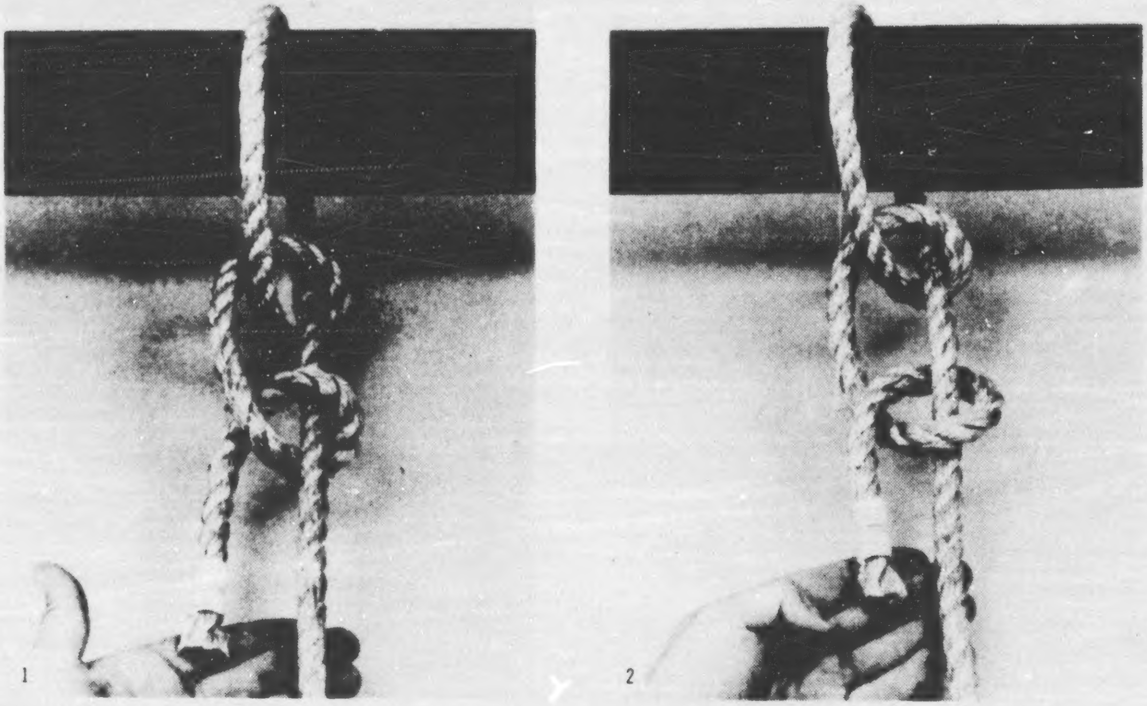


Figure 7-17. Two Half Hitches

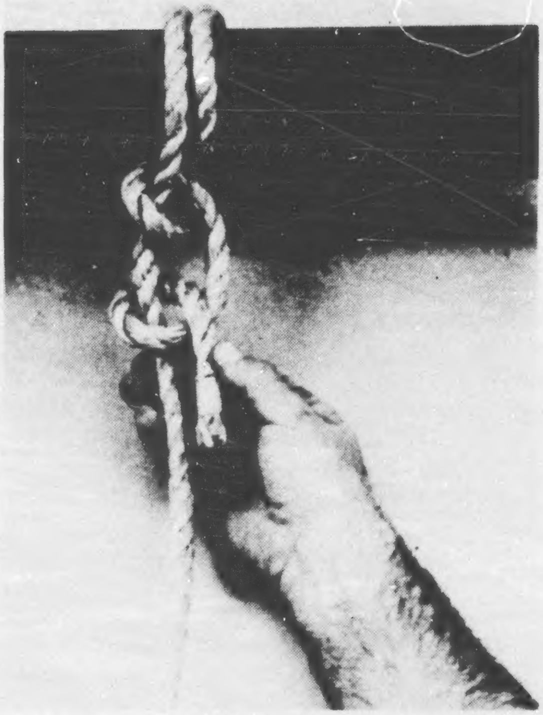


Figure 7-18. Round Turn and Two Half Hitches

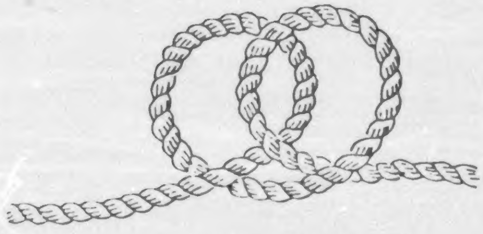


Figure 7-19. Tying a Clove Hitch in the Middle of a Line

line to a hook. When removed from the hook, it unties itself.

9. The **fisherman's bend** provides a secure fastening for a line or cable to an anchor or other situations where alternate tightening and slackening in the line occurs. Figure 7-26 illustrates a fisherman's bend. With the running end, take two turns through or around the object to be fastened, then around the standing part and through the loop formed by the turns. Finally, make a half hitch around the standing part and seize the running end to the standing part.

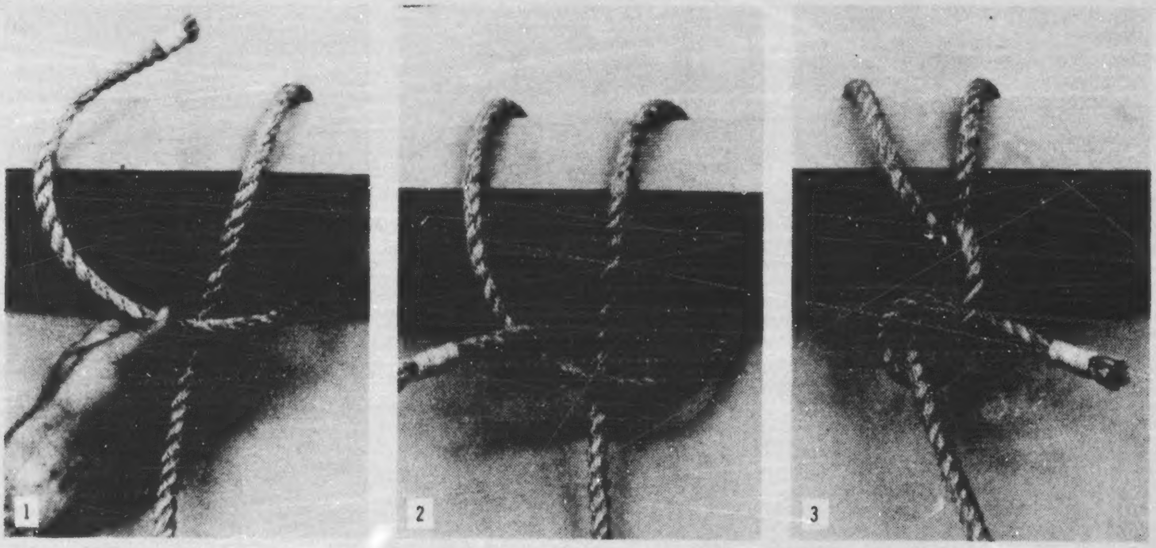


Figure 7-20. Tying a Clove Hitch at the End of Line

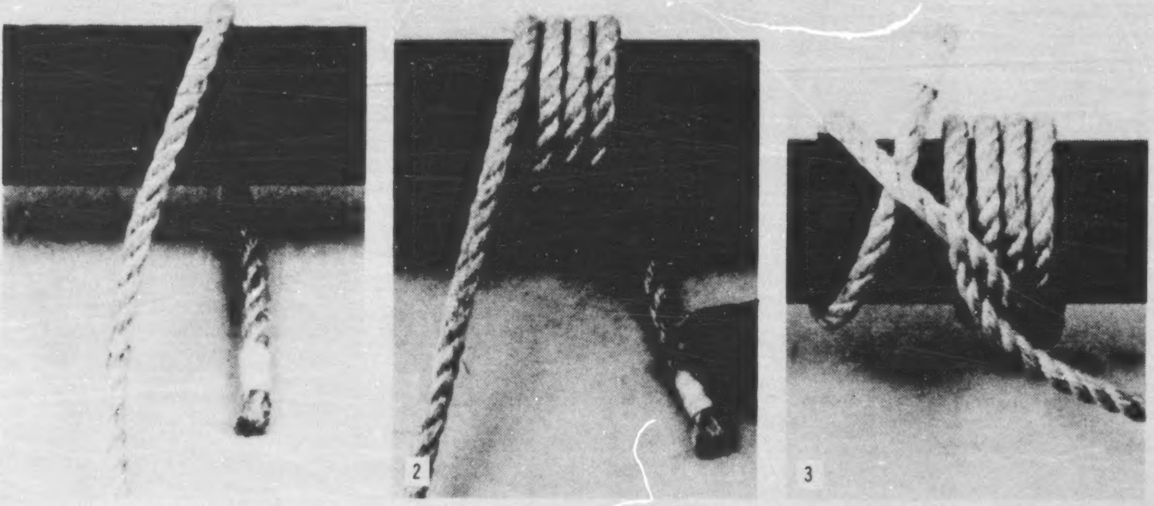


Figure 7-21. Tying a Rolling Hitch

10. The **scaffold hitch** is used to support single scaffold planks so they will hang level and be unable to tilt. Figure 7-27 illustrates the steps in tying a scaffold hitch.
11. The **Speir knot** provides a constant loop with a non-slipping knot and can be released easily by a pull on the running end. Figure 7-28 illustrates the steps in tying a Speir knot.
12. The **becket hitch** provides a secure means of fastening a line to a ring such as the becket of a block. Figure 7-29 illustrates the steps in tying a becket hitch. Pass the running end of the line through the eye of the ring, back around the standing part of the line, then over both sides of the loop and up through the bottom half of the loop as shown. Pull tight.
13. **Barrel slings** can be tied to hold barrels horizontally or vertically. The **horizontal sling** (Figure 7-30) is made by tying a bowline with a long loop. Make two "ears" by bringing the line at the bottom of the loop up over the sides of the loop and slide

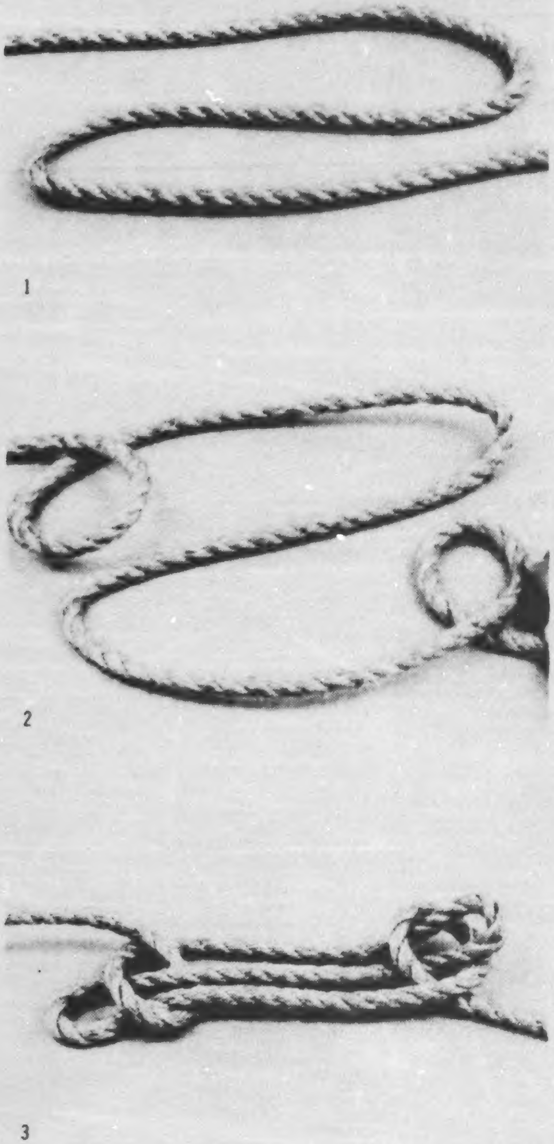


Figure 7-22. Tying a Sheepshank

the "ears" over the ends of the barrel. The **vertical sling** is made as illustrated in Figure 7-31.

Note: Rope strength is reduced to 50% when a knot or bend is tied anywhere along its length.

Rope strength is reduced to 75% when a hitch is tied anywhere along its length.

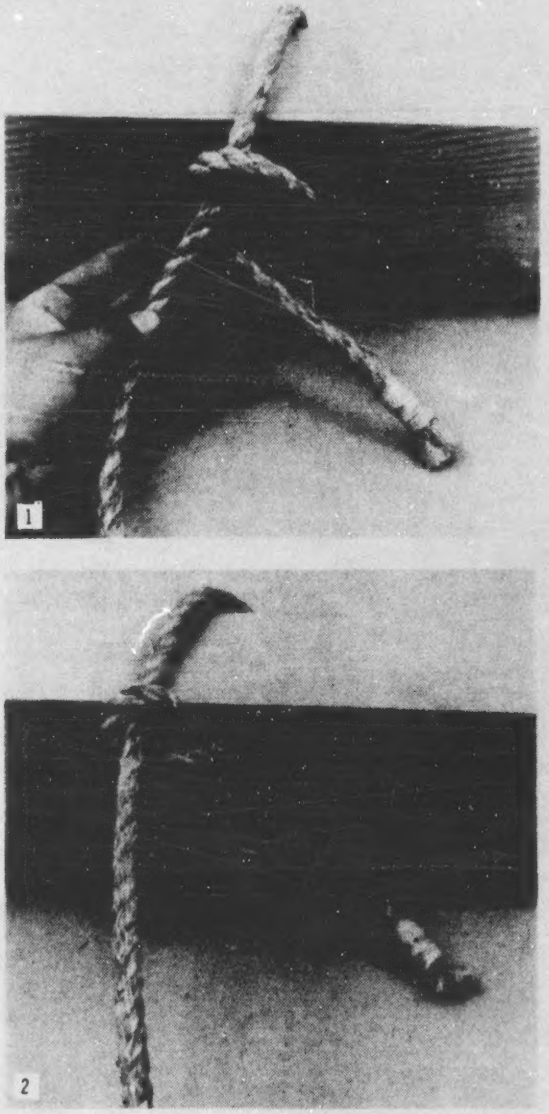


Figure 7-23. Tying a Timber Hitch

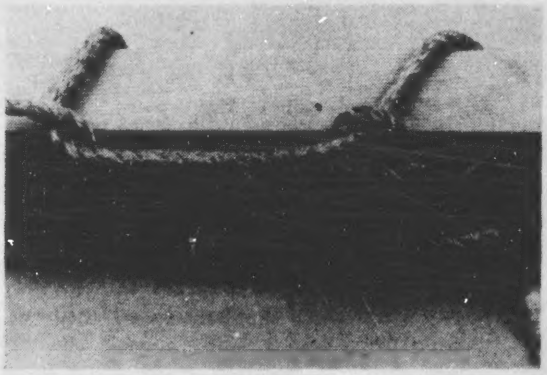


Figure 7-24. Tying a Timber Hitch and Half Hitch

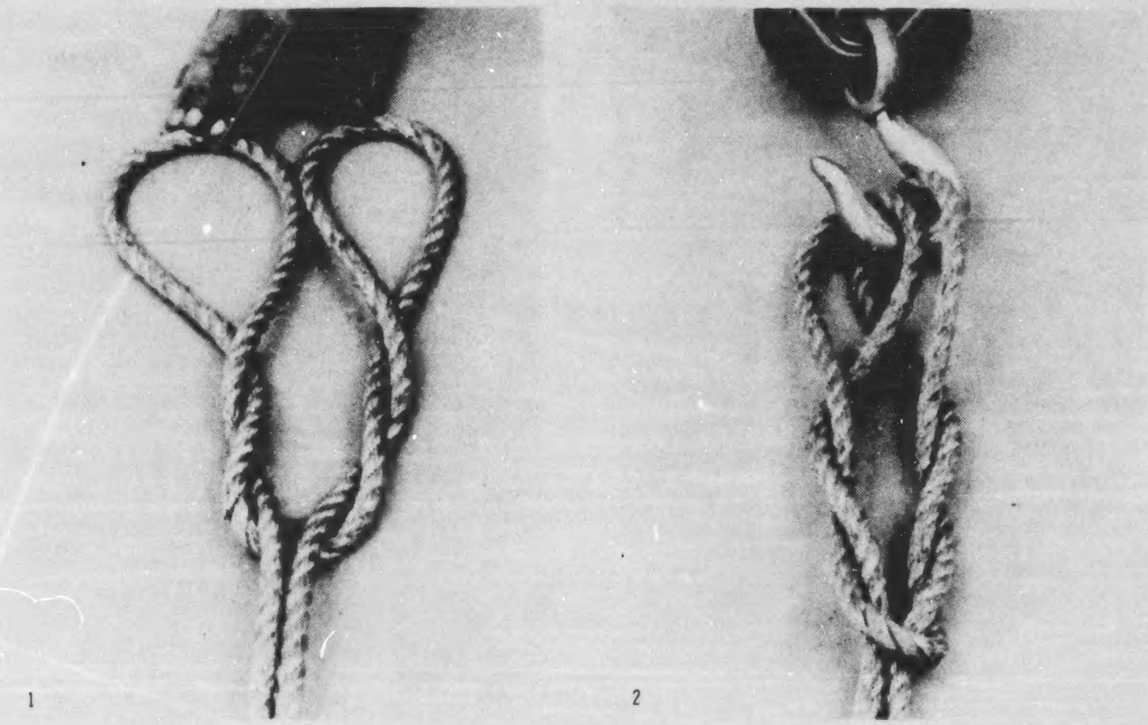


Figure 7-25. Catspaw Hitch

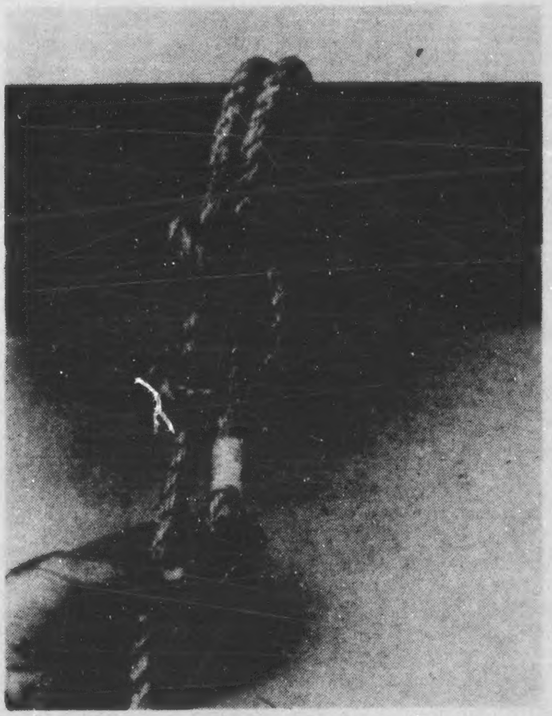


Figure 7-26. Fisherman's Bend

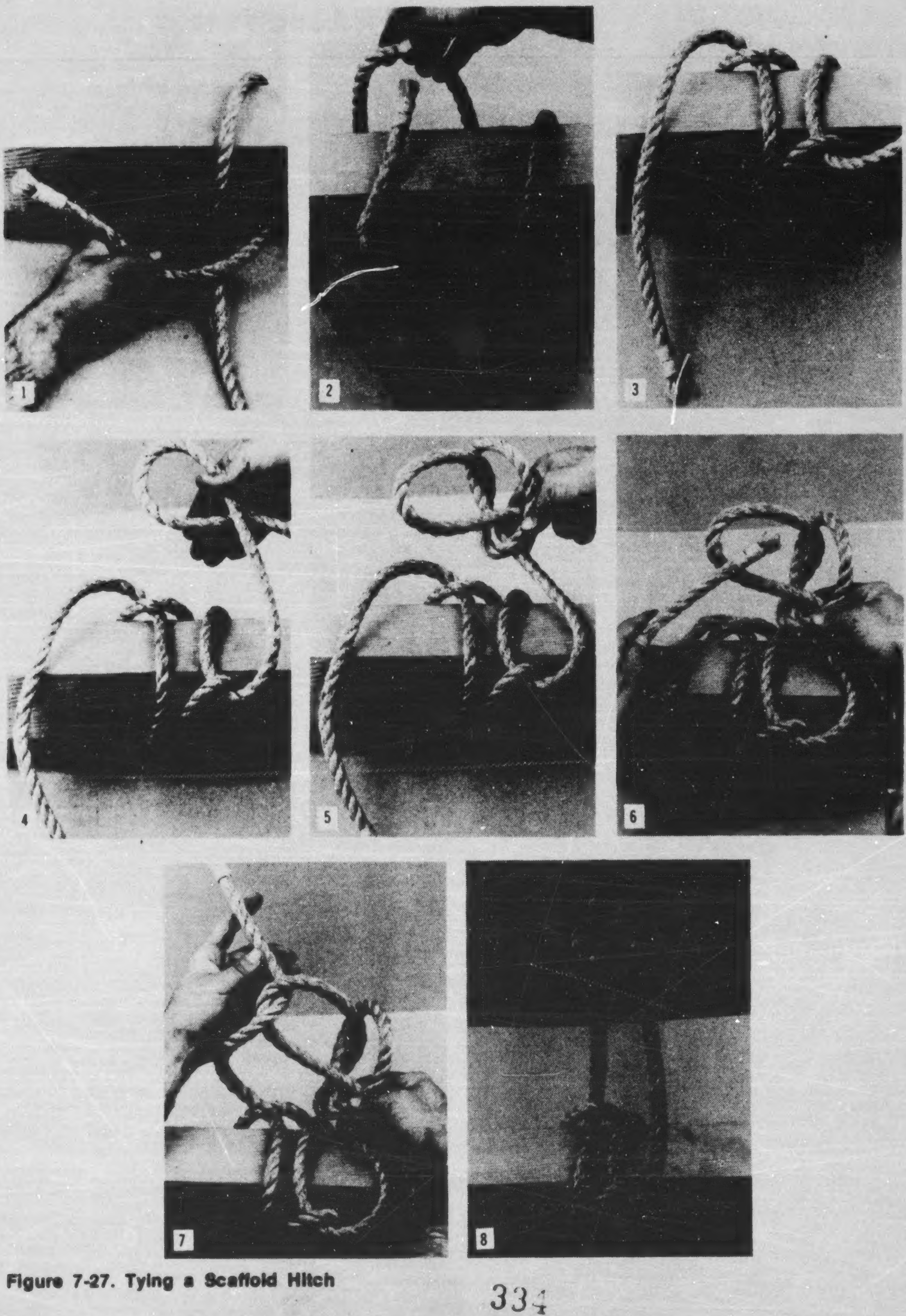


Figure 7-27. Tying a Scaffold Hitch

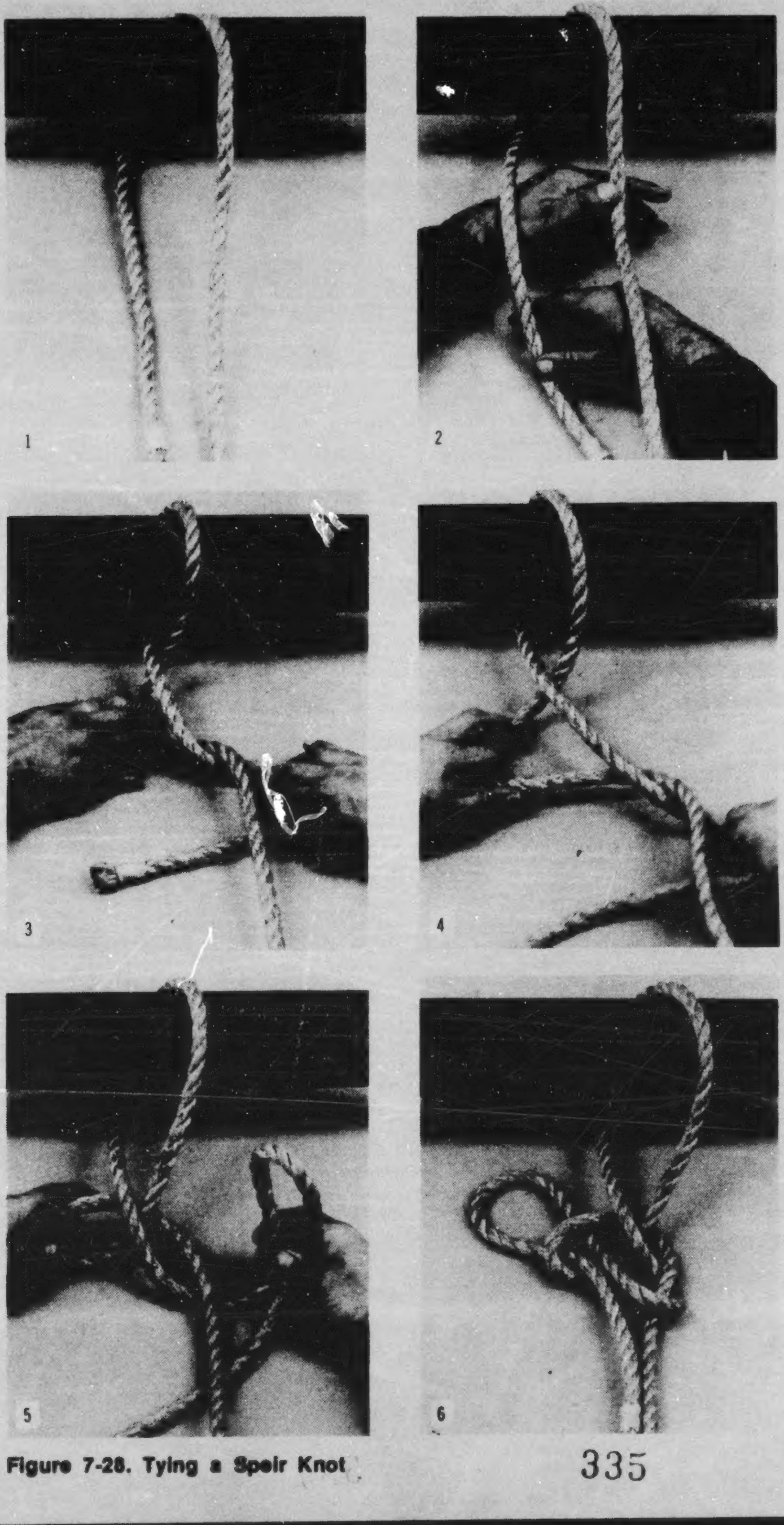


Figure 7-28. Tying a Speir Knot

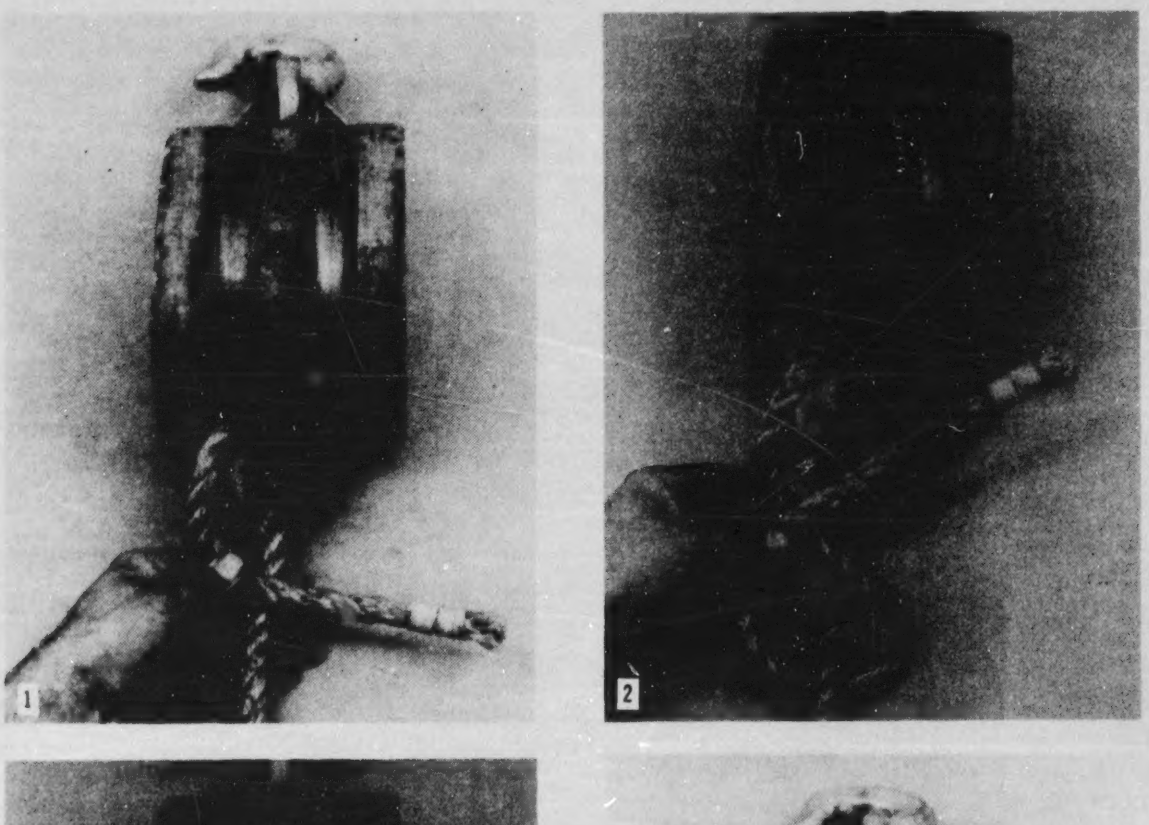


Figure 7-29. Tying a Becket Hitch

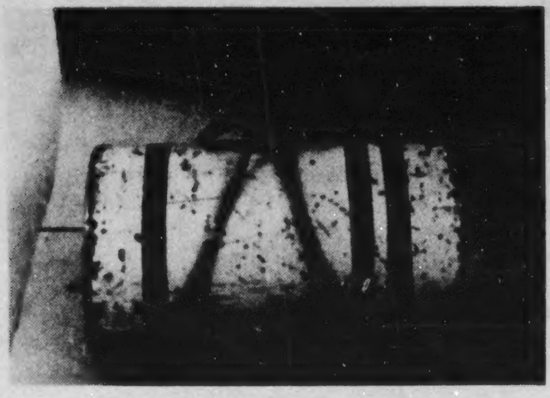


Figure 7-30. Horizontal Barrel Sling

SPLICES

Splicing is a process of joining two ropes together, or joining the end of a rope to a point on the standing part. Splicing reduces the rated strength of the rope by 10-15%. Both natural and synthetic fibre ropes can be spliced, but for all types of splices, two or more extra tucks are required for synthetic fibre rope. An important consideration in making splices is the care that must be taken in unlaying the rope and reweaving the strands so that the form and lay of the rope are not disrupted.

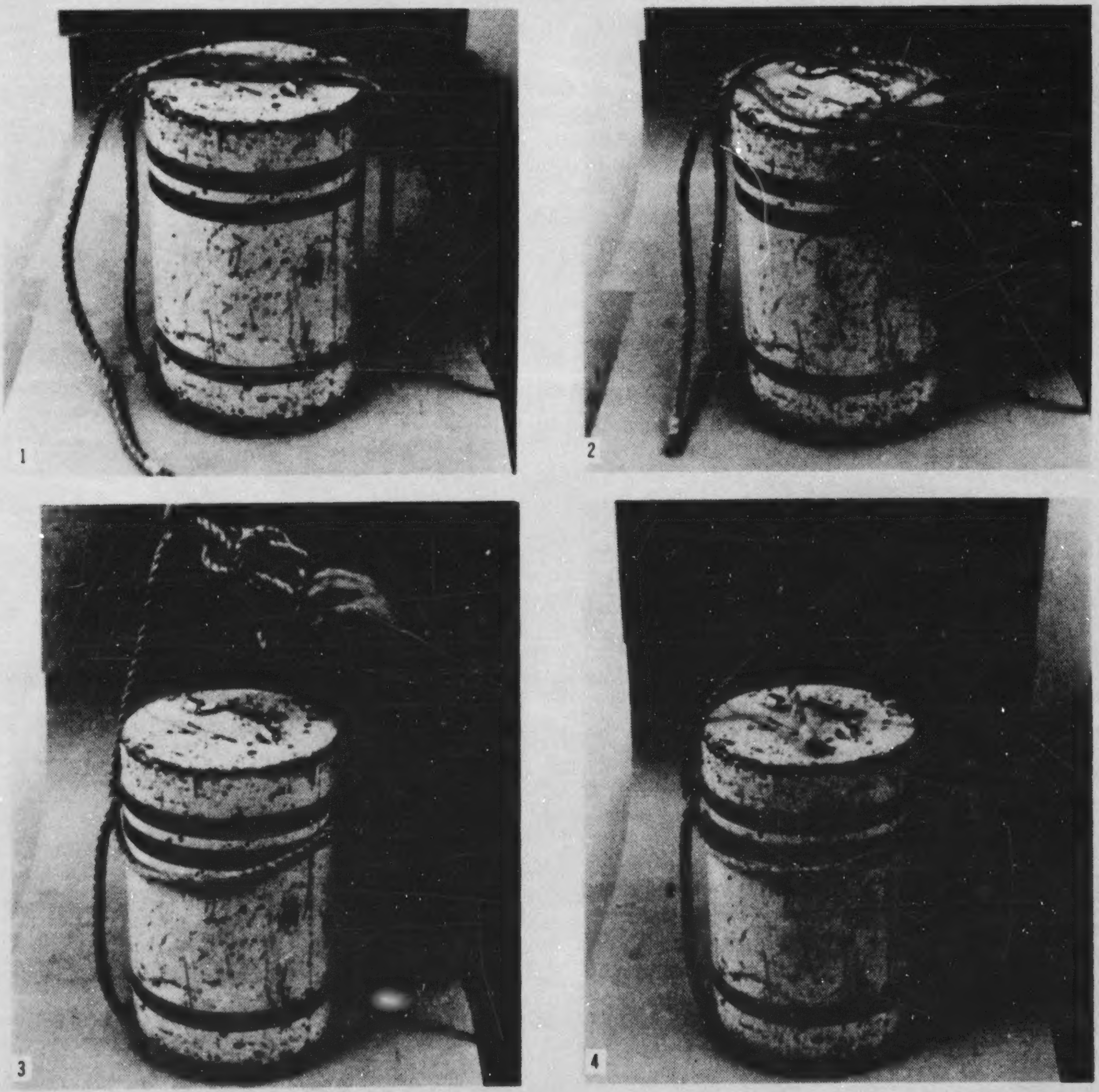


Figure 7-31. Making a Vertical Barrel Sling

SHORT SPLICE

The Short Splice is the strongest type of splice; however, it has the disadvantage of increasing the diameter of the rope to such an extent that it is unsuitable for some uses such as running through blocks or sheaves.

Procedure

Step 1. Unlay the strands at end of each rope for six or eight turns. Whip the ends of the strands to prevent their untwisting, and bring together so that each strand of one rope alternates with a strand of the other (Figure 7-32, Step 1).

Step 2. Bring the ends tightly together and apply a temporary seizing where they join (Figure 7-32, Step 2).

Step 3. Take any one strand and begin tucking, the sequence being over one and under one. Figure 7-32, Step 3, shows how Strand A is passed over the strand nearest to it, which is Strand D, and then under the next strand, Strand E.

Step 4. Rotate the splice away from you one-third of a turn and make the second tuck; Strand B is passed over Strand E and then under Strand F (Figure 7-32, Step 4).

Step 5. Before making the third tuck, rotate the splice again one-third of a turn away from you. Strand C is then passed over Strand F, and under the next one, Strand D. The splice now appears as in Figure 7-32, Step 5.

Step 6. This completes the first round of tucks in the left hand half of the splice. Each strand should now be tucked at least twice more, always over one and under one as before, making sure that each strand lies snug and is without kinks.

Step 7. To finish the splice, reverse the rope end for end so that Strands D, E and F are now at the left instead of the right (in the same position of Strands A, B and C in the illustrations) and repeat the tucking operation on their side of the rope. Each of the six strands will now have had at least three tucks. A tapered splice is made by taking two more tucks with each strand, cutting away some of the threads from each strand before each extra tuck.

Step 8. When tucking is finished, remove the centre seizing and cut off the ends of all strands, leaving at least 3/4" on each end. To give a smooth appearance, roll the splice back and forth, either under your foot or between two boards. The completed Short Splice should look something like the illustration in Figure 7-32, Step 8.

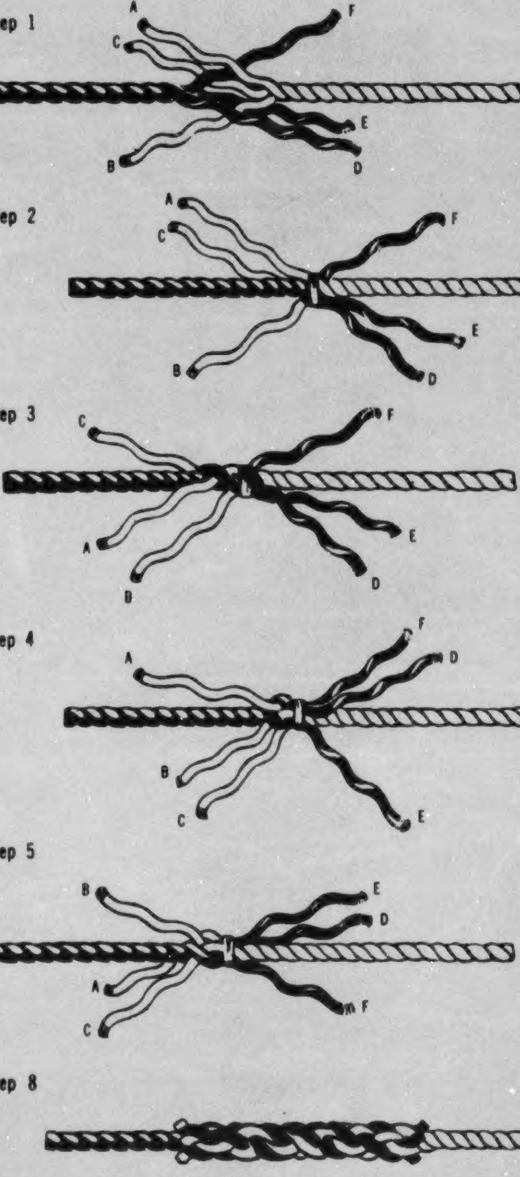


Figure 7-32. Making a Short Splice

LONG SPLICE

The Long Splice is used for pulley work since it permits ropes that have been spliced to be run through sheave blocks without jamming or chafing. Unlike the short splice, the diameter of the spliced rope is increased very slightly.

Procedure

Step 1. To make this splice, begin by unlaying one strand of each rope for 10 or 15 turns, and whip the ends of each strand to prevent untwisting. Then lock the two ropes together by alternating the strands from each end as illustrated in Figure 7-33, Step 1.

Step 2. Starting at one end, take an opposite pair of strands, A and B, and unlay Strand A. Follow it with Strand B, turn by turn, continuing until only 1' or less of Strand B remains. Keep Strand B tight during this step and pull it down firmly into Strand A's former place. Repeat this operation with Strands C and D. Strand D is unlaid and Strand C is laid in its place. The splice at this stage is illustrated in Figure 7-33, Step 2.

Step 3. Now each pair of strands is tied loosely together with a simple overhand knot, as indicated by Strands A and B in Figure 7-33, Step 3. Each knot is then pulled down into the rope like Strands C and D.

Step 4. Each strand is now tucked twice, over and under, as done in making the Short Splice. Figure 7-33, Step 4 shows Strands C and D after tucking. If a smaller diameter splice is desired, tapering can be done by tucking each strand twice more, cutting away some of the threads for each additional tuck.

Step 5. When tucking is finished, cut all strands off close to the rope and roll the splice on the floor under your foot to smooth it out. The completed Long Splice is illustrated in Figure 7-33, Step 5.

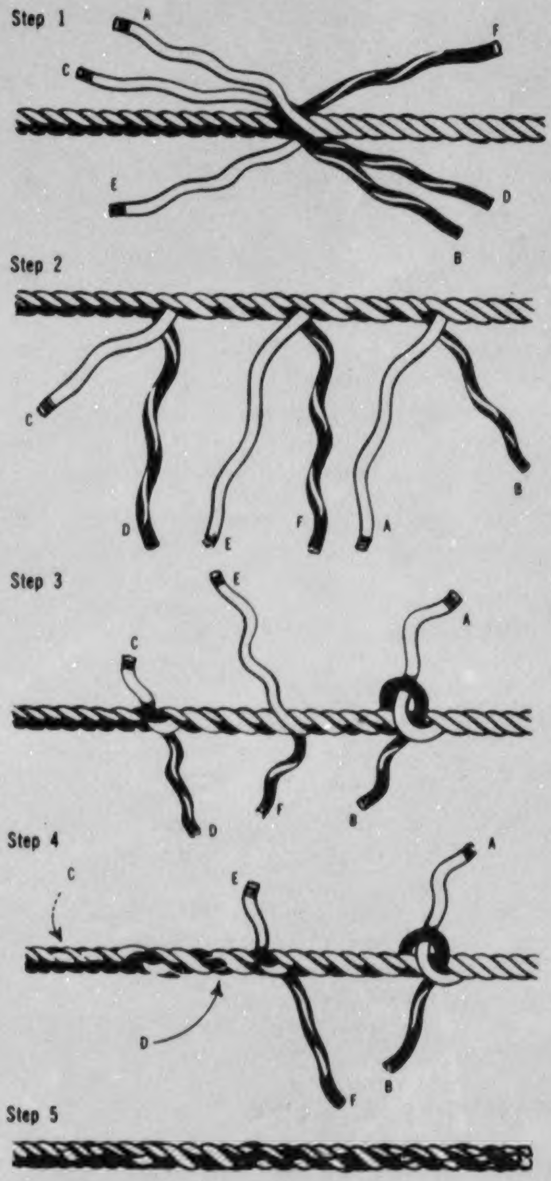


Figure 7-33. Making a Long Splice

SIDE SPLICE

The Side Splice is also called the Eye Splice because it is used to form an eye or loop in the end of a rope by splicing the end back into its own side. This splice is made like the Short Splice except that only one rope is used.

Procedure

Step 1. Start by seizing the working end of the rope. Unlay Strands A, B and C, to the seizing and whip the end of each strand. Then twist the rope slightly to open up Strands D, E and F of the standing part of the rope, as indicated in Figure 7-34, Step 1.

Step 2. The first tuck is shown in Figure 7-34, Step 2. The middle strand is always tucked first, so Strand B is tucked under Strand E, the middle strand of the standing part.

Step 3. The second tuck is now made as illustrated in Figure 7-34, Step 3. Left Strand A of the working end is tucked under Strand D, passing over Strand E.

Step 4. Figure 7-34, Step 4 illustrates how the third tuck is made. To make Strand F easy to get at, the rope is turned over. Strand C now appears on the left side.

Step 5. Strand C is then passed to the right of and tucked under Strand F, as illustrated in Figure 7-34, Step 5. This completes the first round of tucks.

Step 6. Figure 7-34, Step 6 illustrates the second round of tucks started, with the rope reversed again for ease in handling. Strand B is passed over Strand D and tucked under the next strand to the left. Continue with Strands A and C, tucking over one strand and then under one to the left. To complete the splice, tuck each strand once more.

Step 7. Remove the temporary seizing and cut off the strand ends, leaving at least 1/2" on each end. Roll the splice back and forth under your foot to even up and smooth out the strands. The completed Eye Splice is illustrated in Figure 7-34, Step 7.

NATURAL FIBRE LINE

MANUFACTURE OF NATURAL FIBRE LINE

Natural fibre line is constructed by a process of twisting vegetable fibres together. Individual fibres are grouped and twisted to form yarns, and yarns are grouped and twisted together to form strands (Figure 7-35). Finally, a number of strands are twisted to form a line. The line twist is balanced by reversing the direction of twist for each set of components: fibres and strands are twisted opposite to yarns.

TYPES OF NATURAL FIBRE LINE

Fibre line is classified on the basis of the kind of vegetable fibres used to manufacture it;

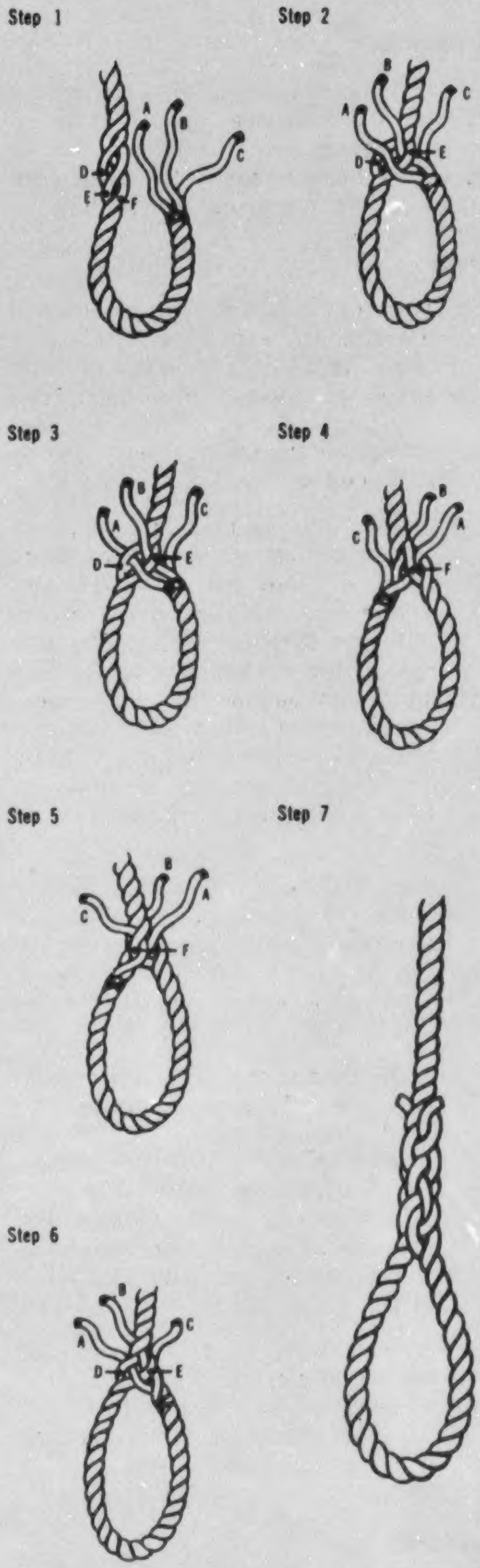


Figure 7-34. Making a Side Splice

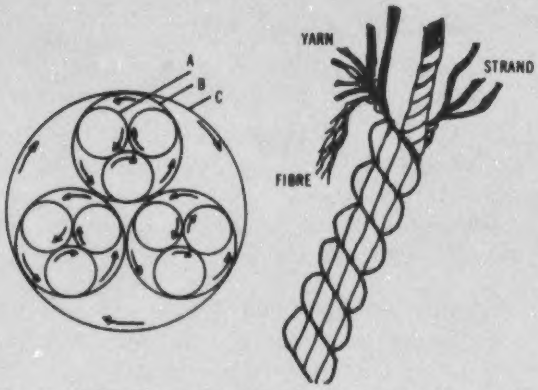


Figure 7-35. Construction of Natural Fibre Line

Manila fibres are made from plantain leaves. Superior quality manila line is made from long fibres of light colour, as it is softer, more elastic, stronger, durable and water resistant. Its smoothness makes it preferable for running over blocks and sheaves.

Sisal line has a harsher feel than manila and is about 80% as strong. It has the advantage of tolerating exposure to sea water very well.

Hemp fibres are short and soft, but it produces a strong, rough line. Tar soaking, although reducing the line's strength and flexibility, is necessary to reduce deterioration from dampness.

Coir and Cotton Coir line is rough and elastic and floats on water. It is only 25% as strong as hemp. Cotton can tolerate a great deal of bending and running, but is too light for most uses.

Forms of Natural Fibre Line

The arrangement of strands in a line is an important feature of its construction. The three principal forms are: hawser laid, shroud laid and cable laid line.

Hawser laid line is composed of three strands in a right hand lay (Figure 7-36).

Shroud laid line is composed of four strands in a right hand lay around a centre core (Figure 7-36).

Cable laid line is composed of thee lines (right hand Hawser) arranged in a left hand lay (Figure 7-36).

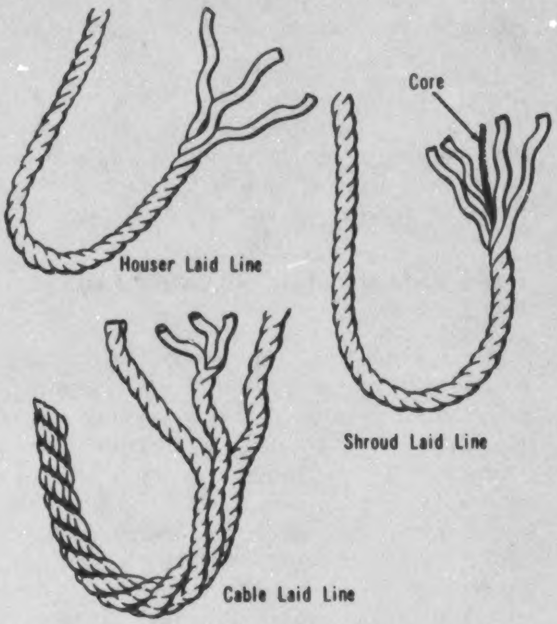


Figure 7-36. Forms of Natural Fibre Line

CHARACTERISTICS OF NATURAL FIBRE LINE

Size Fibre line is designated by diameter and circumference (in inches).

Weight The number of feet per pound of line can be estimated with the following formula within 12% accuracy:

$$\frac{3.4}{(\text{diameter})^2}$$

Example: for 5/8 inch line

$$\frac{3.4}{(5/8)^2}$$

$$= 8.7 \text{ feet per pound}$$

Strength Line strength is described in terms of: 1) breaking strength and 2) safe working capacity. The breaking strength divided by the factor of safety gives the safe working capacity which should **never** be exceeded. Excess loads damage the fibres and reduce the strength and life of the line. The condition of the line, in terms of exposure, wear, use and bending, must be considered in estimating its strength as these factors over time will greatly reduce the line's capability.

Rated capacities for safe loads are listed in tables **for new line only.** (See, for example, Table 7-1.)

A rule of thumb for estimating the safe working capacity (in tons) of manila line is to square the diameter (in inches), for example, a 1 1/8" manila line would have a safe working capacity of 1 17/64, or approximately 1 1/4 tons.

CARE AND MAINTENANCE OF NATURAL FIBRE LINE

The functional life of natural fibre line can be extended with proper care in handling and maintenance. Knowledge of the characteristics and limitations of each kind of line will provide guidelines for good handling practices.

Inspect lines frequently to determine the actual condition of the inner fibres, which is not evident on the surface. Grasping the line firmly with two hands, untwist it slightly to expose the inner portion, and look for the following:

1. Mildew — inner fibres are dark and stained and have a musty odour
2. Broken strands or yarns
3. Chafing residue — dirt and sawdust-like material inside the line
4. Fragmentation of the core — core breaks away in small pieces, indicating overstrain.

Examine the line in this way in a number of places and finally pull out and stretch a few random fibres to test for breakage resistance. Any line found to be deficient should be destroyed or cut into pieces too short for hoisting.

Protection of Line Ends Raw or cut ends of line should be secured to prevent unlaying. Tying a knot at the end of a line, or whipping will secure the lay.

Storage Deterioration of natural fibre line can be prevented by good storage practices. These include the following conditions:

1. Storage areas should be dry.
2. Lines should be dried before storing.
3. Circulation of air around coiled line should be provided such as gratings to support the coils.
4. Fibre line should not be covered unless absolutely required.

TABLE 7-1. PROPERTIES OF MANILA AND SISAL LINE

Nominal diameter (inches)	Circumference (inches)	Weight per 100' (pounds)	No. 1 Manila			Sisal
			Breaking Strength (pounds)	Safe Load (pounds) F.S. -4	Breaking Strength (pounds)	Safe Load (pounds) F.S. -4
1/4	3/4	1.71	550	150	440	120
2/3	1 1/8	3.45	1,275	325	1,020	260
1/2	1 1/2	7.36	2,650	660	2,120	520
3/5	2	13.1	4,400	1,100	3,520	880
3/4	2 1/4	16.4	5,400	1,350	4,320	1,080
7/8	2 2/4	22.0	7,700	1,920	6,160	1,540
1	3	26.5	9,000	2,250	7,200	1,800
1 1/8	3 1/2	35.2	12,000	3,000	9,600	2,400
1 1/4	3 3/4	40.8	13,500	3,380	10,800	2,700
1 1/2	4 1/2	58.8	18,500	4,620	14,800	3,700
1 3/4	5 1/2	87.7	26,500	6,625	21,200	5,300
2	6	105.0	31,000	7,750	24,800	6,200
2 1/2	7 1/2	163.0	46,500	11,620	37,200	9,300
3	9	237.0	64,000	16,000	51,200	12,800

NOTE: Breaking strength and safe loads given are for new line used under favorable conditions. As line ages or deteriorates, progressively reduce safe loads to one-half of values given.

Prevention of Moisture Damage Since fibre line will contract when wet, it should be slackened before exposure to rain or dampness.

Prevention of Damage to Strands Although continued use will result in some fibre damage, this can be minimized by:

1. Washing line that is muddy or sandy
2. Using softeners to pad sharp corners over which the line must be pulled
3. Keeping line out of sand and dirt as much as possible
4. Using knots that are easy to untie
5. Repairing broken strands in the line as soon as possible.

Coiling and Uncoiling New natural fibre line is delivered in coils of 600′-1200′ and lashed or bound. Generally an instruction tag will accompany the coil. After cutting the bindings or lashings, grasp the line end inside the coil at the bottom and pull it up through the middle to prevent kinks from forming (Figure 7-37).

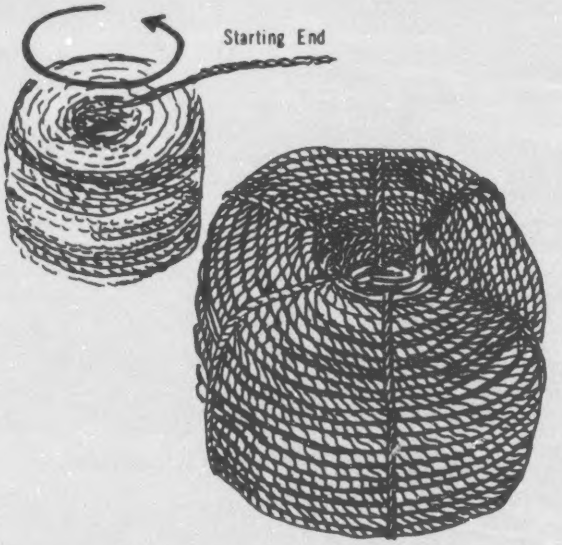


Figure 7-37. Uncoiling a Coil of Fibre Line

SYNTHETIC FIBRE ROPE

CHARACTERISTICS OF SYNTHETIC FIBRE ROPE

Synthetic fibre ropes, particularly nylon and polypropylene, are becoming more widely used, replacing manila rope in many instances. These ropes have individual fibres running the entire length of the line rather than short, overlapping fibres as in natural fibre rope. This accounts for the greater strength of synthetic fibre line (See Table 7-2).

TABLE 7-2. RELATIVE STRENGTH OF FIBRE ROPES (DRY)

Type of Rope	Relative Capacity (Related to Nylon)
Nylon	100%
Polyester	94%
Polypropylene	81%
Polyethylene	73%
Manila	67%

Synthetic fibre ropes are generally impervious to rot, mildew and fungus and have good resistance to chemicals. They are lighter and easier to handle, and have excellent impact, fatigue and wear resistance, outwearing manila ropes by four or five times. They are liable to melt at high temperatures, however, and should not be used where heat is excessive or friction is high enough to melt the fibres. They should not be used near welding operations. Generally, synthetic fibre rope is abrasion resistant and can tolerate long exposure to water without any noticeable loss of strength or change in appearance.

TYPES OF SYNTHETIC FIBRE ROPES USED IN RIGGING

Nylon Rope Nylon rope is two and one half times stronger than manila and is the most widely used of the synthetic rope family. It is chalky white in colour, has a smooth surface, is soft and pliant and has a feeling of elasticity.

Some properties of nylon ropes are:

1. High breaking strength (wet or dry)
2. Light weight per unit of strength
3. Excellent elasticity and tensile recovery
4. Superior absorption of impact and shock loads
5. Excellent flex and abrasion resistance
6. Good flexibility
7. Excellent resistance to rot
8. Good sunlight and weather resistance
9. High melting point.

Due to its continuous fibre construction, nylon rope is strong and resistant to creep under sustained load. Its elasticity recommends its use where high energy absorption is needed or where shock loading is a factor. The high degree of stretch can be a serious disadvantage if headroom for lifting is restricted and slings must be as short as possible. Under actual service conditions, nylon rope will stretch to about 16% under working loads and over 40% under breaking loads. The initial loading of a nylon rope produces a permanent elongation of approximately 8%, but recovery is complete from subsequent stretching under load. Therefore, nylon ropes should be broken in prior to field use.

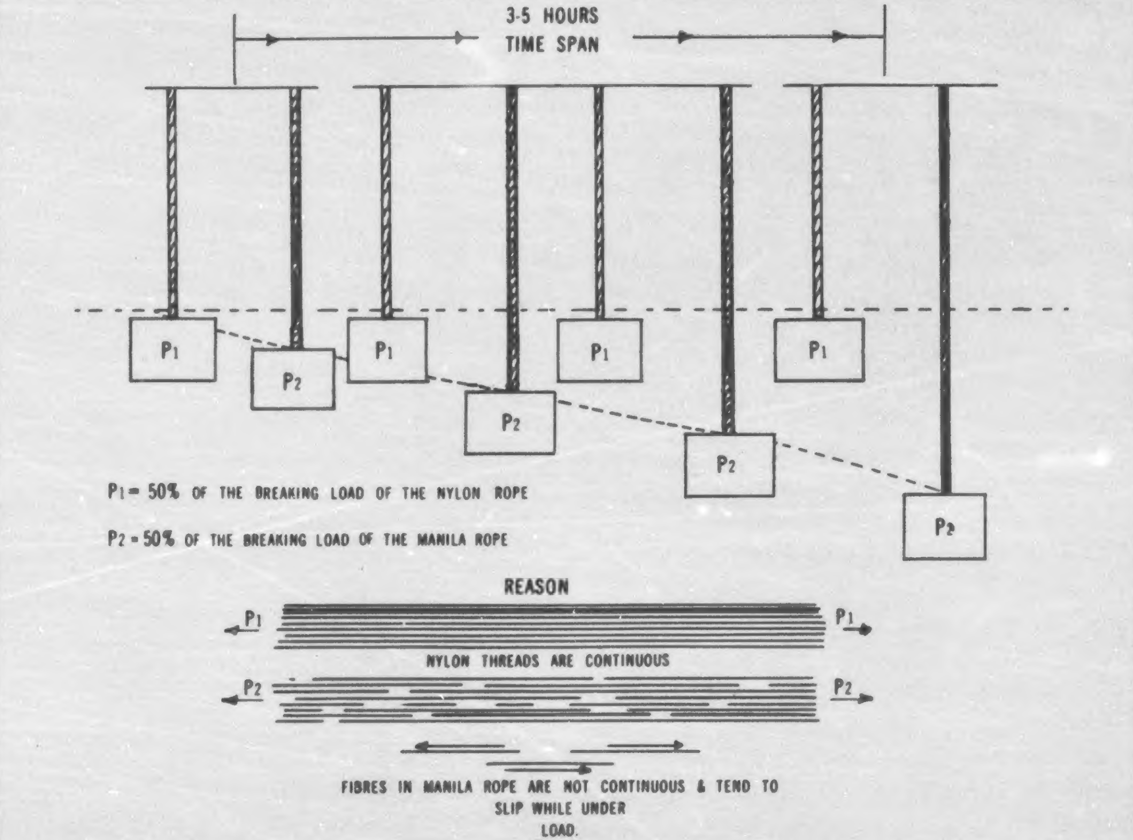
Nylon rope tolerates heat without loss of strength or physical properties up to 300°F (melting point 482°F.). Nylon ropes absorb moisture and lose approximately 10% of their strength when wet as well as becoming very slippery. Full recovery occurs when the rope dries out. Table 7-3 compares nylon and manila ropes under a heavy sustained load.

Store nylon rope away from heat and exposure to sunlight. Nylon is highly resistant to alkalies, but can be degraded by most acids, paints and linseed oil, and all contact with chemicals should be avoided. If contact is suspected, wash the rope thoroughly in cold water and then carefully examine the fibres for evidence of weakening.

Braided Nylon Rope Braided nylon rope provides the highest possible strength since the load is divided equally between a braided sheath and a braided core. The rope is soft and flexible and does not twist or kink. Twisted three strand rope transmits a turning, twisting motion under load while braided nylon does not.

Braided nylon presents approximately 50% more surface area for wear and grip, is stronger for size and more stable, exhibits less stretch when

TABLE 7-3. COMPARISON OF NYLON AND MANILA ROPES UNDER HEAVY SUSTAINED LOAD


3-5 HOURS
TIME SPAN
P1
P2
P1
P2
P1
P2
P1
P2
P1 = 50% OF THE BREAKING LOAD OF THE NYLON ROPE
P2 = 50% OF THE BREAKING LOAD OF THE MANILA ROPE
REASON
P1
P1
NYLON THREADS ARE CONTINUOUS
P2
P2
FIBRES IN MANILA ROPE ARE NOT CONTINUOUS & TEND TO SLIP WHILE UNDER LOAD.

working, has less permanent stretch and greater flexibility than three strand nylon ropes.

The braided sheath and core construction is available in synthetic combinations in addition to nylon:

1. Nylon core/nylon cover — high strength, more stretch, good wearing qualities
2. Polypropylene core/nylon cover — lower strength, lower stretch
3. Polypropylene core/polyester cover — very low stretch, high strength and good abrasion resistance.

For example, a nylon core/nylon cover rope with a nominal diameter of 7/8 inch carries a safe working load of 4,800 pounds, while a polypropylene core/nylon cover rope will carry a safe working load of 4,150 pounds. A polypropylene core/polyester cover rope will support a safe working load of 3,800 pounds. The safety factor for braided synthetic combinations is 5.

Polyester Rope Polyester rope (Trade names: Dacron, Terylene) is nearly identical to nylon in appearance but has little or no elastic feeling. Size for size, it is heavier and not as strong as nylon rope, although similar in construction. This is a continuous filament rope and resists creep under sustained loads. The low stretch properties of polyester rope represent a considerable advantage where headroom is limited since, after the initial permanent stretch of approximately 6%, subsequent loads produce a temporary lengthening of approximately 5.9% (compared to 16% for nylon). Polyester ropes should be broken in before field use.

Abrasion resistance is similar to nylon rope. Like nylon, polyester rope is unaffected by temperatures up to 300°F. It absorbs much less water than nylon and thus does not lose strength when wet. Polyester rope resists sun and weather damage as well as attack by rot and mildew, however, precautionary storage practices are recommended. Polyester is more resistant to chemicals than nylon, but exposure and contact should be avoided. Slings should be washed frequently in cold water.

Polypropylene Rope Polypropylene and polyester ropes are almost identical in appearance; they are available in various colours and are smooth and pliant and somewhat slippery, particularly polypropylene.

A singular advantage of polypropylene rope is its ability to float on water; however, it is not as strong as nylon or polyester and ranks between natural fibre ropes and the more sophisticated nylon and polyester.

Stretch properties of polypropylene ropes vary with the type of construction; however, they generally exceed those of polyester. Energy absorption is approximately half that of nylon.

Polypropylene ropes have a heat tolerating capacity comparable to nylon and polyester; however, some deterioration occurs in sunlight. Chemical resistance is generally good as is resistance to rot and mildew. An important feature is polypropylene rope's safety around electricity as it is a non-conductor because it absorbs no water.

Polyethylene Rope Polyethylene ropes are low in strength compared with the other synthetic fibre ropes. They tolerate heat only up to 250°F and undergo some deterioration in sunlight. They are, however, resistant to chemicals except sulphuric acid.

WIRE ROPE

CHARACTERISTICS OF WIRE ROPE

Wire rope is used for so many purposes today that it is not practical to enumerate them all. Because of this widespread use it cannot be expected that one type or construction of rope, varying only in size and strength, will meet all requirements.

Listed below are some common terms and their abbreviations used to designate types of construction of wire rope:

R.L.	Regular Lay
L.L.	Lang Lay
F.C.	Fibre Core
I.W.R.C.	Independent Wire Rope Core
6-19	6 strands 19 threads
6-24	6 strands 24 threads
6-37	6 strands 37 threads
M.S.	Mild Steel
C.C.	Cast Crucible
I.P.	Improved Plow
S.I.P.	Special Improved Plow
Gal	Galvanized

To determine the breaking strengths and safe working loads for the various types of wire rope used in the Boilermaking trade it is essential to know the construction of the rope. The most commonly used wire rope is 6-19 and 6-24 Plow Steel in Ordinary Lay. Galvanized wire rope is used under certain unusual environmental conditions such as near salt water or chemical plants and pulp mills. Lang Lay wire rope is mostly used on shovels and drag lines. Under ordinary conditions Fibre Core is used, but where additional strength or resistance to compression is required Independent Wire Rope Core is chosen.

A process called Preforming of wire rope permanently shapes the fibres into the position they will occupy in the finished rope. This makes the rope more stable and more resistant to unstranding by reducing internal stresses.

GRADES OF WIRE ROPE

Grade 120/130 Special Improved Plow Type II is used in the manufacture of wire ropes for special installations where maximum rope strength is required and conditions permit use of this heavy grade rope with existing hoisting equipment.

Grade 115/125 Special Improved Plow Type I is also used for special applications when breaking strengths in excess of those obtained with Grade 110/120 are required and existing equipment can handle the rope size.

Grade 110/120 Improved Plow has high tensile strength, tough wearing qualities and fatigue resistant properties. This is the most frequently used wire rope.

Three further grades of wire rope are in less frequent use. Their capabilities make them suitable only in situations where strength is secondary to fatigue resistance. These grades are: Grade 100/110 Plow, Grade 90/100 Mild Plow and Grade 80/90 Cast Crucible.

Galvanized wires are coated with zinc at finished size either by the "hot dip" or "electro" process.

Drawn Galvanized wires (sometimes called Drawn After Galvanized or DAG) are coated with zinc at an intermediate size and the zinc-coated wire cold-drawn to the final or required finished size.

Bryanized wire is zinc-coated by a special process employed by a British company, whereby the zinc becomes an integral part of the wire itself. Note that galvanized finishes can be applied to any grade of rope wire except phosphor bronze and copper wires.

Corrosion Resisting wire is usually a chromium-nickel steel alloy with high resistance to corrosion. It is used under conditions where galvanized wire will rust and fail.

Phosphor Bronze and Copper wires are used only where corrosion resistance and non-sparking qualities are required as in marine and hazardous industrial applications.

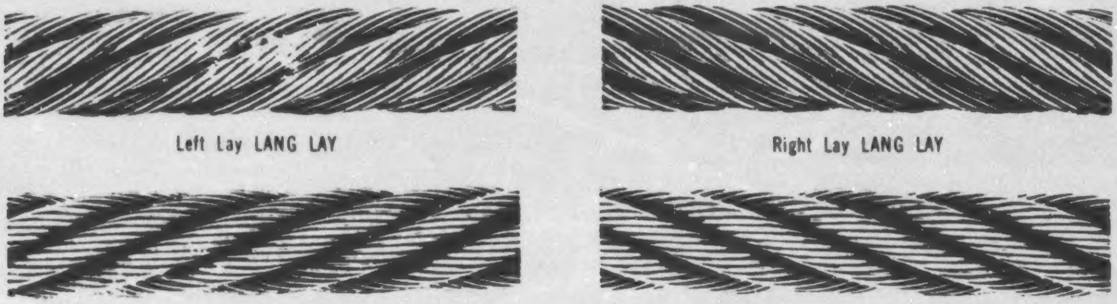
WIRE ROPE LAYS

Regular Lay (Ordinary Lay) ropes have the wires in the strands laid in one direction while the strands in the rope are laid in the opposite direction. This results in the wire crowns running approximately parallel to the longitudinal axis of the rope. These ropes resist kinking and twisting and can withstand considerable crushing and distortion due to the short length of exposed wires.

Lang Lay ropes have the wires in the strands and the strands in the ropes laid in the same direction. Thus the outer wires run diagonally across the rope and are exposed for longer length than in Regular Lay ropes, providing greater wearing surface and greater resistance to abrasion. Lang Lay ropes are more flexible than Regular Lay and resist fatigue better. Lang Lay ropes are more liable to kink and untwist and will not tolerate the same degree of distortion and crushing. The ends of Lang Lay Ropes should be permanently fastened to prevent untwisting.

Right Lay or Left Lay ropes have strands "rotating" to the right, while a Left Lay rope is the opposite. Most ropes in use are Right Lay ropes. (See Figure 7-38).

Preformed wire rope is constructed of strands and fibres shaped permanently into the contour they will take up in the completed rope. In Non-Preformed rope the wires are forcibly held in position throughout the life of the rope, as can be seen by cutting such a rope at any point, when strands and wires will immediately fly apart. Preforming the wires and strands prevents this as they all lie naturally in their true



Left Lay LANG LAY

Right Lay LANG LAY

Left Lay REGULAR LAY

Right Lay REGULAR LAY

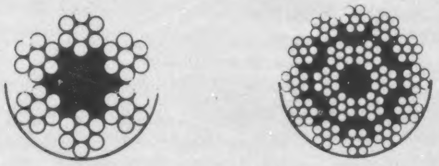
Figure 7-38. Types of Wire Rope Lays

positions free of internal stress. The advantages of Preformed wire rope are:

1. It is flexible, limber and easy to handle.
2. It runs smoothly and evenly over sheaves.
3. It makes Lang Lay construction practical for many applications. Preformed rope in Lang Lay or Regular Lay is completely inert.
4. It gives considerably longer life than Regular Lay rope of equivalent size due to reduction and uniform distribution of internal stresses.
5. It is the only wire rope that evenly balances the load on individual strands and wires. The load distribution on the single wires is remarkably uniform.
6. It is safer to use as broken wires do not wicker out to tear at hands and clothing.
7. It is more easily spliced, since there is no need to seize the strands as they fall into correct position more easily.
8. It resists kinking better than other ropes.
9. It tolerates many of the abuses to which wire rope is often unavoidably subjected.

TYPES OF WIRE ROPE

Round Strand ropes are the simplest of the true rope types and are almost universal in their use. They consist of from 3 to 36 strands laid in various arrangements concentrically around a core. The use of round wires laid in geometric patterns results in a round strand. Figures 7-39 illustrates only two of many round strand wire arrangements available.



6 x 7 Round Strand
Fibre Core

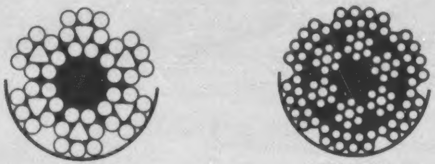
18 x 7 Round Strand
Fibre Core

Figure 7-39. Round Strand Rope

Where strands are made up of two or more layers of wires around a centre wire the wires in these layers may be cross-laid. That is the pitch or length of lay will be longer for the outer layers as related to the next inner layer. This construction is limited to small ropes and cords, to some ship ropes and to standing ropes in larger sizes.

For all other purposes ropes of equal-laid construction are preferable. By this method all layers of wires have the same pitch or length of lay. Each wire in each layer therefore lies either in a bed formed by the valleys between the wires of an underlayer or alternatively along the crown of an underlying wire. Because no layer of wires ever crosses over another an equal-laid rope maintains its diameter in service, has more solid cross section and improved fatigue life as compared to cross-laid ropes.

Flattened Strand ropes are built up of triangular shaped strands or strands of oval shape. Certain types, specifically non-rotating ropes, are built of a combination of oval around triangular, or sometimes oval around round. In the case of triangular shaped strands the wires forming the strand are laid on a triangular shaped core formed of a single triangular shaped wire or of three or more round wires. The wires forming an oval strand are laid on an oval shaped centre ribbon or around a group of usually four round wires laid parallel. Because of the triangular shape of the strands, flattened strand ropes have smaller fibre cores than do round strand ropes. Hence, size for size, flattened strand ropes have approximately 10% greater metallic area with comparable increased breaking strength. Figure 7-40 illustrates two of the various flattened strand wire arrangements available.


6x7/Δ
Flattened Strand
Fibre Core

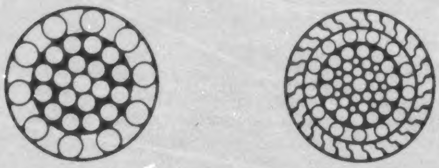
6x9/6x7
Flattened Strand
Fibre Core

Figure 7-40. Flattened Strand Rope

With ropes of this type frictional wear is spread over a greater number of outer wires of the rope as compared with a round strand rope. In the flattened strand construction, with the friction distributed over a greater external surface, wear is more even and the loss of sectional area of the vital outside wires much reduced. Because of the smooth surface and circular cross section obtained with flattened strand rope the wear on sheaves and pulleys is materially reduced and in the case of ropes used for endless haulage systems the increased external bearing surface enables grips and clips to be more securely employed. Also, owing to its more solid construction, this type of rope is less likely to be forced out of shape by such clips.

Locked Coil rope differs completely from both round strand and flattened strand rope. Instead of a group of individual strands closed around a central core member it is a single strand built up of layer upon layer of wires. The centre or core of the locked coil rope consists of a concentric laid strand of round wires. Around this core are laid one or more layers of shaped wires, the outer layer always being interlocking. The shape or shapes of all shaped wires in a locked coil rope depend on the rope diameter and its end use. Typical locked coil wire arrangements are illustrated in Figures 7-41.

Locked coil ropes have a higher breaking strength than stranded ropes for equal diameter and the same nominal strength grade. Because of their smooth external surface depreciation in strength caused by frictional wear on drums or pulleys is greatly reduced. Because of their design locked coil ropes are less subject to rotation and stretch than stranded ropes.

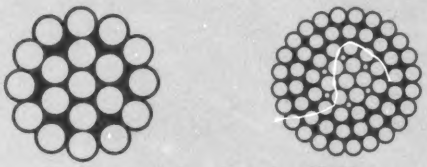

Locked Coil
Track Rope

Locked Coil
Winding Rope

Figure 7-41. Locked Coil Rope

Concentric Strand rope as its name implies consists of round wires laid layer upon layer around a centre wire. This simple strand construction is used exclusively for static purposes such as bridge suspension ropes, standing rigging and similar purposes. (See Figure 7-42).

Two general arrangements of wires are used. The first consists of concentric layers of wires of one size around a somewhat larger centre wire. The second consists of one or more concentric layers of wires of one size around a core group made up of an equal laid strand.


19 Wire
Concentric Strand

67 Wire
Concentric Strand

Figure 7-42. Concentric Strand Rope

WIRE ROPE CORES

The core forms the heart of the rope and is the component about which the main rope strands are laid. The core supports the strands and is intended to keep them from jamming against or contacting each other under normal loads and flexings. The core may take one of several forms depending on the conditions under which the rope will be used.

Fibre Core (Figure 7-43) is adequate for many types of service providing maximum flexibility and elasticity to the wire rope. Generally made of hard fibres, usually sisal and occasionally manila, it may also be manufactured from man-

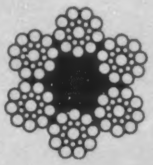


Figure 7-43. Fibre Core

made fibres such as polypropylene or nylon. These latter cores are useful where conditions surrounding the rope's use could result in premature failure of vegetable fibre cores. Sisal and manila fibre cores are impregnated during the cordage process with a suitable lubricant having preservative properties. Cotton and jute fibres are frequently used in cores for small cords such as sash cords, etc.

Independent Wire Rope Core (IWRC) (Figure 7-44) consists of a 6 x 7 stranded steel wire rope with a 7 wire centre strand. Its greatest use is where ropes are subjected to severe pressure while running over sheaves or winding on to drums. This core should be used when rope operates in temperatures damaging to natural or man-made fibres. It provides additional strength and less stretch with less resilience.

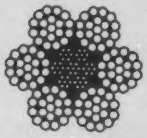


Figure 7-44. Independent Wire Rope Core

Strand Core (Figure 7-45) consists of a strand of steel wires, nominally 7, 19 or 37. It is occasionally used in running rope of smaller diameters rather than IWRC. It may also be used in standing ropes, guys, suspender ropes, etc. where extra strength reduced stretch and maximum resistance to weathering are required.

Armoured Core (Figure 7-46) is made of a layer of steel wires laid around a fibre centre. It provides superior wire-to-wire contact with the main rope strands as compared to IWRC's. The armoured core provides greater strength and resistance to crushing than fibre core.

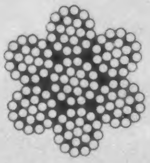


Figure 7-45. Steel Strand Core

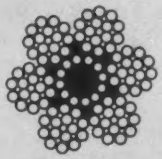


Figure 7-46. Armoured Core

WIRE ROPE CLASSIFICATIONS

6 x 19 Classification This classification covers ropes with 6 strands closed around a fibre or steel core and includes ropes having 17 to 26 wires per strand; an example is shown in Figure 7-47. Rope of 6 x 19 classification is used on a greater variety of applications than any other. Such ropes will be found on bridge cranes and gantrys, shop cranes and mobile cranes, hoists and derricks, dredges and clam shells, drag lines and scrapers, power shovels and trench hoes, blast-holes drills and in industry generally.

Ropes in this class are available in regular lay or lang lay, with fibre core or with independent wire rope core. While usually right lay, left lay is made for special purposes as, for instance, blast-hole drilling. The use of lang lay rope, where possible, also improves flexibility, and provides additional resistance to abrasive wear.

A wide choice of wire arrangements in the strands is available, giving varying combinations of flexibility and resistance to abrasive wear. This adaptability is primarily achieved through the number of outer wires in each strand, ranging from 8 to 12.

The diameter of wire rope is the main factor in the size of load that the rope can safely take. Table 7-4 gives the breaking strains and safe working loads for 6 x 19 plowsteel F.C. wire rope.

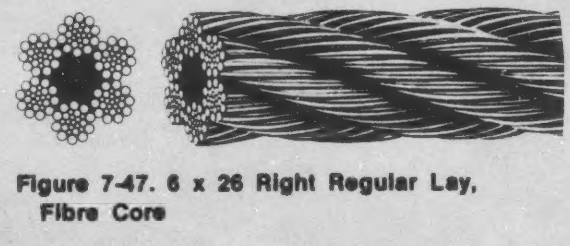


Figure 7-47. 6 x 26 Right Regular Lay, Fibre Core

TABLE 7-4. BREAKING STRAINS AND SAFE WORKING LOADS

6 x 19 Plowsteel F.C. Wire Rope

Diameter	Breaking Strain in Tons	S.W.L, Tons
3/8	6.0	1.1
1/2	10.7	2.4
5[8	16.5	3.3
3/4	23.8	4.7
7/8	32.0	6.2
1	41.7	8.3
1-1/8	53.0	10.6
1-1/4	65.5	13.2
1-1/2	96.0	19.1
2	169.0	53.8

6 x 37 Classification This classification covers ropes with 6 strands closed around a fibre or steel core and includes ropes having 27 to 49 wires per strand. This rope is designed for maximum flexibility with a reasonable degree of resistance to crushing and is in general use on applications such as overhead shop cranes where high rope speeds and multiple reeving are encountered and where layer-on-layer winding is normally involved. Such ropes also find wide-spread use in their larger sizes on power shovels, dredges, drag lines, etc. where, for considerations of mobility and weight, winch drums and main rope sheaves must be limited in size.

Ropes in this class are available in regular lay (Figure 7-48) or lang lay, with fibre core or independent wire rope core. While usually made right lay, left lay is made for special purposes, as, for instance, where ropes operating in pairs may consist of one right lay and one left lay to cancel out torque.

A wide choice of wire arrangements in the strands is available, thus giving varying degrees of flexibility and resistance to abrasive wear. All rope sizes are not necessarily manufactured in every strand construction? Adaptability is primarily achieved through the number of outer wires, ranging from 12 to 18 per strand. The use of lang lay rope, where possible, also improves flexibility and provides additional resistance to wear.

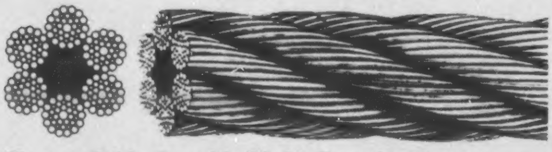


Figure 7-48. 6 x 36 Right Regular Lay, Fibre Core

6 x 7 Galvanized Rigging and Guy Rope This group includes ropes with 6 strands closed around a fibre core and having 6 or 7 wires per strand. These ropes are used as standing ships' rigging and for guying of towers, derricks, smoke stacks, etc. on shore. Individual wires are galvanized before being fabricated into ropes in accordance with Canadian Standards Association Standard G-4 requirements for Galvanized Wire (Figure 7-49).

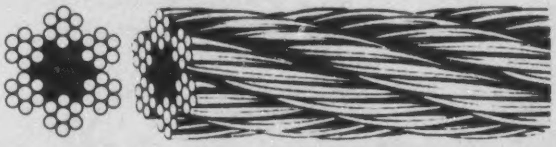


Figure 7-49. 6 x 7 Galvanized Right Regular Lay, Fibre Core

SPLICING WIRE ROPE

The length of a long splice in wire rope is governed by the size of the rope. The length of splice for 6-strand ropes of various diameters is calculated as follows:

Multiply the diameter of the rope by 80 (gives length of splice in feet)

Example:

For 3/4 " rope: 3/4 x 80 = 60′

PROCEDURE FOR SPLICING WIRE ROPE

Step 1. Mark off 1/2 the total splice length from each of the two rope ends. These marks represent the point of marriage (Figure 7-50).

Step 2. Unlay two strands from each piece to the marks and interlay the pairs as shown in Figure 7-51. Pull the ropes together snuggly at the marry.

Step 3. Unlay Strands 1 and 2 back to the 15′ mark and lay Strands A and B in their

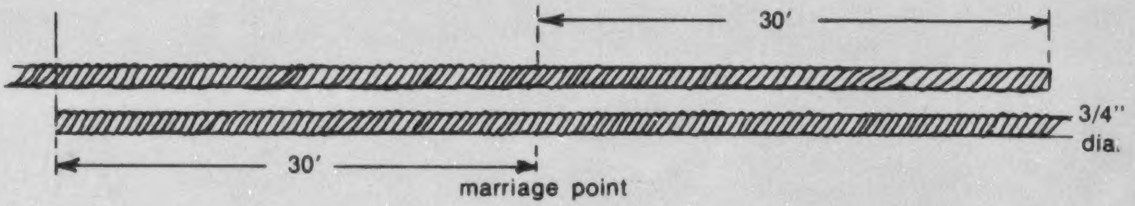

30′
3/4" dia.
30′
marriage point

Figure 7-50. Marriage Point of Two Ropes

place. Then take Strand 1 and unlay it further, back to the 25′ mark and lay Strand A in its place (Figure 7-51).

Step 4. Unlay Strands C and D back to the 15′ mark (in the opposite rope) and lay Strands 3 and 4 in their place. Then take Strand C and unlay it further, back to the 25′ mark and lay Strand 3 in its place (Figure 7-51).

Step 5. Unlay Strand 5 back to the 5′ mark and lay Strand E in its place. Then unlay Strand F back to the 5′ mark (in the opposite rope) and lay Strand 6 in its place. The splice should now be laid out as in Figure 7-52.

Step 6. Cut all ends, leaving 5′ on each end for tucking; the ends are laid into the rope replacing the core. To open the rope for cutting the core and tucking, divide the rope in half with a marlin spike which enters the rope from the opposite side to the position of the strand to be tucked. With a smaller marlin or pliers, pull out the core and cut, pulling the end out slightly in the direction in which the tuck will be made. With the end of the tucking strand underneath the large marlin, rotate the marlin in the direction of the tuck to force the tucking end into the centre of the rope as the core is being pulled out at the end of the tuck, cut off the core so it does not abut the end of the tucked strand.

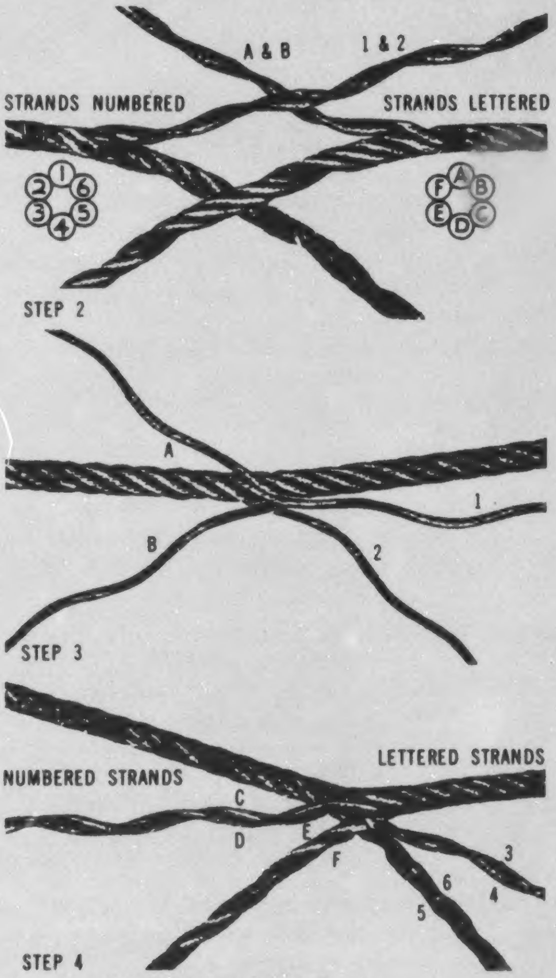

A & B
1 & 2
STRANDS NUMBERED
STRANDS LETTERED
1
2
3
4
5
6
A
B
C
D
E
F
STEP 2
A
1
B
2
STEP 3
LETTERED STRANDS
NUMBERED STRANDS
C
D
E
F
3
6
4
5
STEP 4

Figure 7-51. Splicing Wire Rope

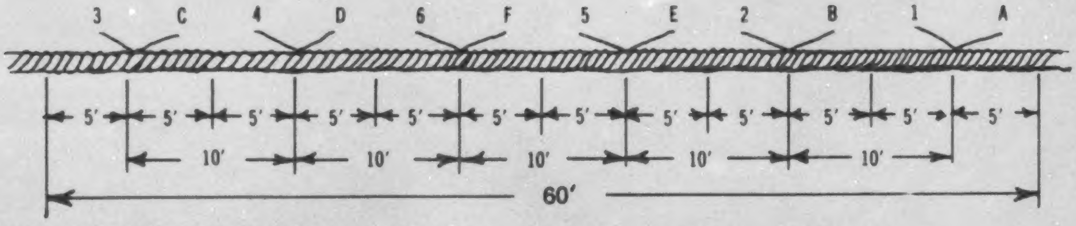

3
C
4
D
6
F
5
E
2
B
1
A
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
5′
10′
10′
10′
10′
10′
60′

Figure 7-52. Splicing Wire Rope — Step 5

Step 7. Repeat this procedure for all tucks. A slight bulge will be noticeable where each tuck begins but this can be tapped down with a wooden mallet and will disappear entirely as soon as the rope is used.

A competent long splice in wire rope produces 95% of the rope's rated capacity.

EYE SPLICE IN WIRE ROPE

A number of acceptable variations of the wire rope eye splice are in common use. The method set out here represents a logical step by step procedure resulting in a smooth splice of maximum strength.

In Figure 7-53 the cross-sectional illustrations with lines indicate the direction and placement of strands entering the main rope. The solid arrow illustrates the point of entry and direction of the marlin spike.

Procedure:

Step 1. Secure the rope in the vise with the desired eye below and the required length of dead rope alongside the main rope above (Figure 7-53, step 1).

Step 2. If an upper suspension vise can be secured to the main rope, and the lower vise can rotate, take one complete turn against the lay of the rope to loosen the tension of the strands in the lay. At this time unlay the strands of the dead end of the rope as illustrated in Figure 7-53 step 2.

Step 3. Drive marlin **from front to back** at the point of entry passing under two strands to the left of the entry point (keep the main core to the right of the spike). Rotate the spike upward with the lay for a half turn around the rope (Figure 7-53, step 3).

Step 4. Enter Strand 1 under the marlin, pull through, and rotate the spike back down toward the vise (in a direction against the lay) forcing the strand down with the left hand at the same time to nest the strand well down.

Step 5. Determine Strand 2 on the dead end (next strand up the lay); unlay and separate.

Step 6. Drive the marlin **from front to back** entering over the top of Strand 1 but coming out behind the next strand to the right at the back (keep the main core to the right of the spike). Rotate the spike upward as before (Figure 7-53, step 8).

Step 7. Enter Strand 2 under the marlin and nest it well down as with Strand 1.

Step 8. Select and unlay Strand 3.

Step 9. Drive marlin **from the back** passing under two strands to the right of the initial entry point. (Keep main core on opposite side of marlin from previous paths.) Rotate upward as before. (See Figure 7-53, step 9.)

Step 10. Enter Strand 3 from front under marlin and nest it well down.

Step 11. Select and unlay Strand 4.

Step 12. Drive marlin **from the back** passing under one strand to the right of the initial entry point. Rotate upward. (See Figure 7-53, step 12.)

Step 13. Enter Strand 4 from front under marlin and nest.

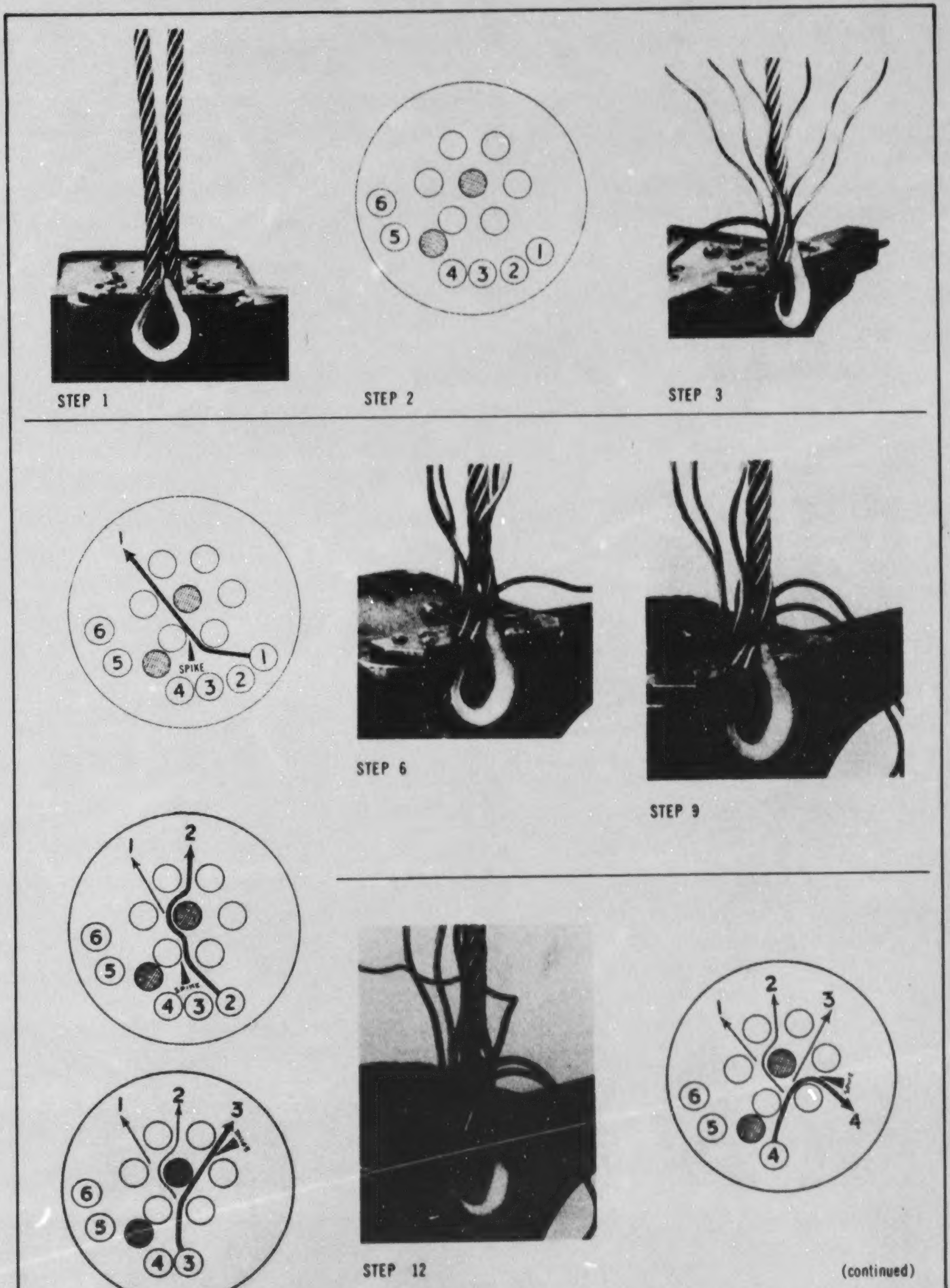
Note: Four strands are now tucked and note that all four enter at the same place but come out between four consecutive strands from left to right at the back of the main rope.

Step 14. Drive marlin **from the front** at the entry point passing under one strand to the left of the spike. Do not drive the spike in too far.

Step 15. Force the spike hard to the left and at the same time force the core of the dead end of rope under the back of the spike. Rotate the spike upward for the usual half turn to run the dead core up alongside the main core (Figure 7-53, step 15).

Step 16. Select and unlay Strand 5.

Step 17. Enter Strand 5 under marlin and nest as before but do not withdraw spike. Continue upward for three more tucks with Strand 5 in the same manner,


6
5
4
3
2
1
SPIKE

STEP 1

STEP 2

STEP 3

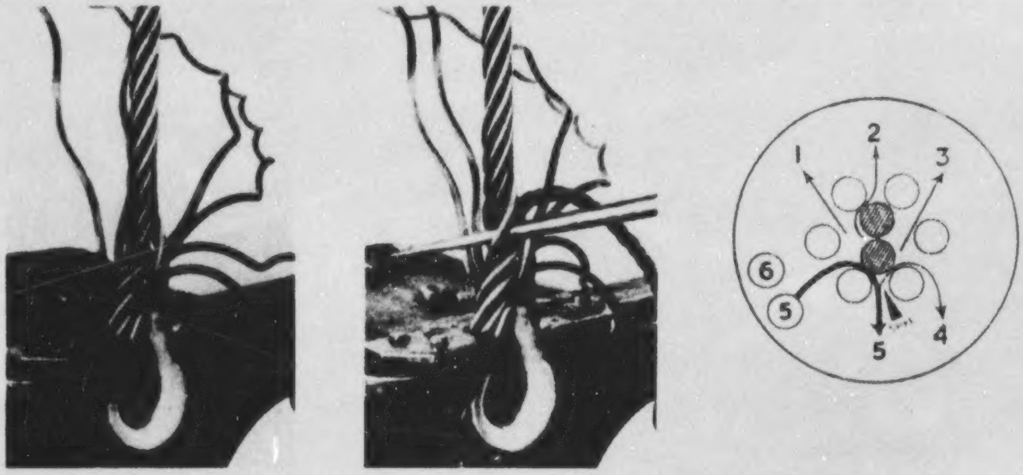
STEP 6

STEP 9

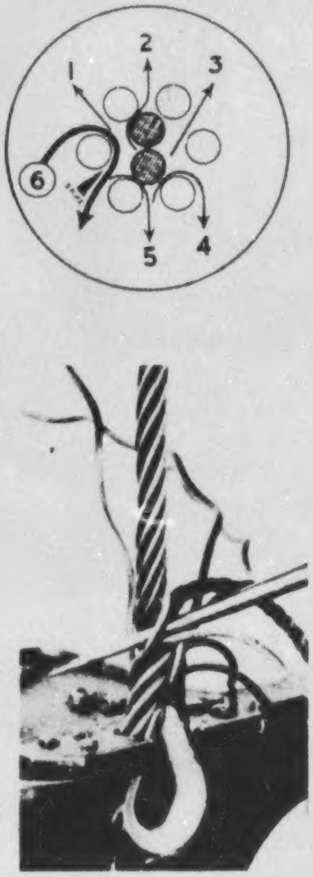
STEP 12

(continued)

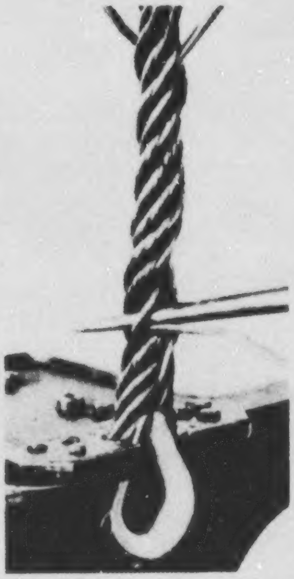
Figure 7-53. Making an Eye Splice



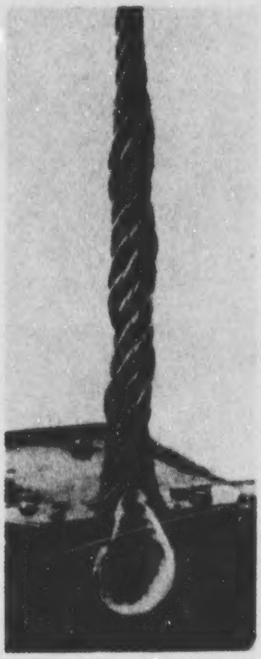
STEP 15



STEP 19



STEP 21



STEP 24

Figure 7-53. Making an Eye Splice (continued)

keeping the core ahead of the spike, forcing it into the centre.

Step 18. Cut core short at this point and lay the end into the centre of the main rope.

Step 19. Drive marlin **from the front** under the second strand to the left of the initial entry point (keep cores to the right) rotate upward as before (Figure 7-53, step 19).

Step 20. Enter Strand 6 under marlin and nest as before, without withdrawing the spike. Continue upward for three more tucks, nesting each tuck in turn.

Step 21. Complete three additional tucks for Strands 4, 3, 2 and 1 in the same manner (Figure 7-53, step 21).

Step 22. Check the splice for uniformity of tucks around the main rope. If any strands are buried, drive the marlin under the strands at the top of the splice and rotate the spike downward to ease them into position.

Step 23. Remove the eye splice from the vise and lay it on a flat wooden surface and shape it by pounding it on all sides with a wooden or soft faced metal mallet.

Step 24. Cut off excess from tucked strands (Figure 7-53, step 24).

FLEMISH EYE LOOP IN WIRE ROPE

The Flemish Eye Loop is a quick method of creating a temporary eye at the end of a wire rope.

Procedure:

Step 1. Unlay the rope into two sections for a distance equal to the length of the loop plus ten times the diameter of the rope (Figure 7-54, step 1).

Step 2. Tie an overhand knot with the two parts at the top of the eye (Figure 7-54, step 2).

Step 3. Take Part 2 and lay it into the grooves of Part 1 down to the throat of the eye (Figure 7-54, step 3).

Step 4. Take Part 1 and lay it into the grooves of Part 2 down to the throat of the eye.

Step 5. Bring Parts 1 and 2 together and recombine them as in the original lay (Figure 7-54, step 5).

Step 6. Apply a U-bolt and Saddle clip to secure the dead end to the main rope at a point approximately eight times the rope diameter below the throat of the eye (Figure 7-54, step 6).

END ATTACHMENTS FOR WIRE ROPE

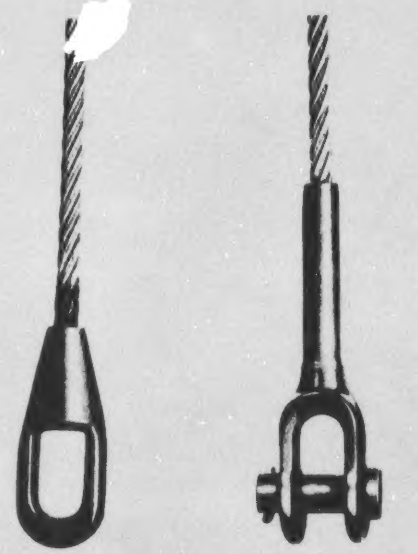
Steel wire ropes may be terminated for convenient attachment to hooks, pulley blocks, equipment, etc. by several satisfactory methods.

Zinc (Spelter) Socket A properly attached zinc-type socket will develop 100% catalogue rope strength. This socket is available in both open and closed types (Figure 7-55).

Swaged Socket Swaged sockets are applied by pressure to the rope end and will develop 100% of catalogue rope breaking strength. These are available in both open and closed types (Figure 7-55).

Mechanically Spliced Eye These are generally of two types: the Flemish Rolled Eye and the Fold Back Eye.

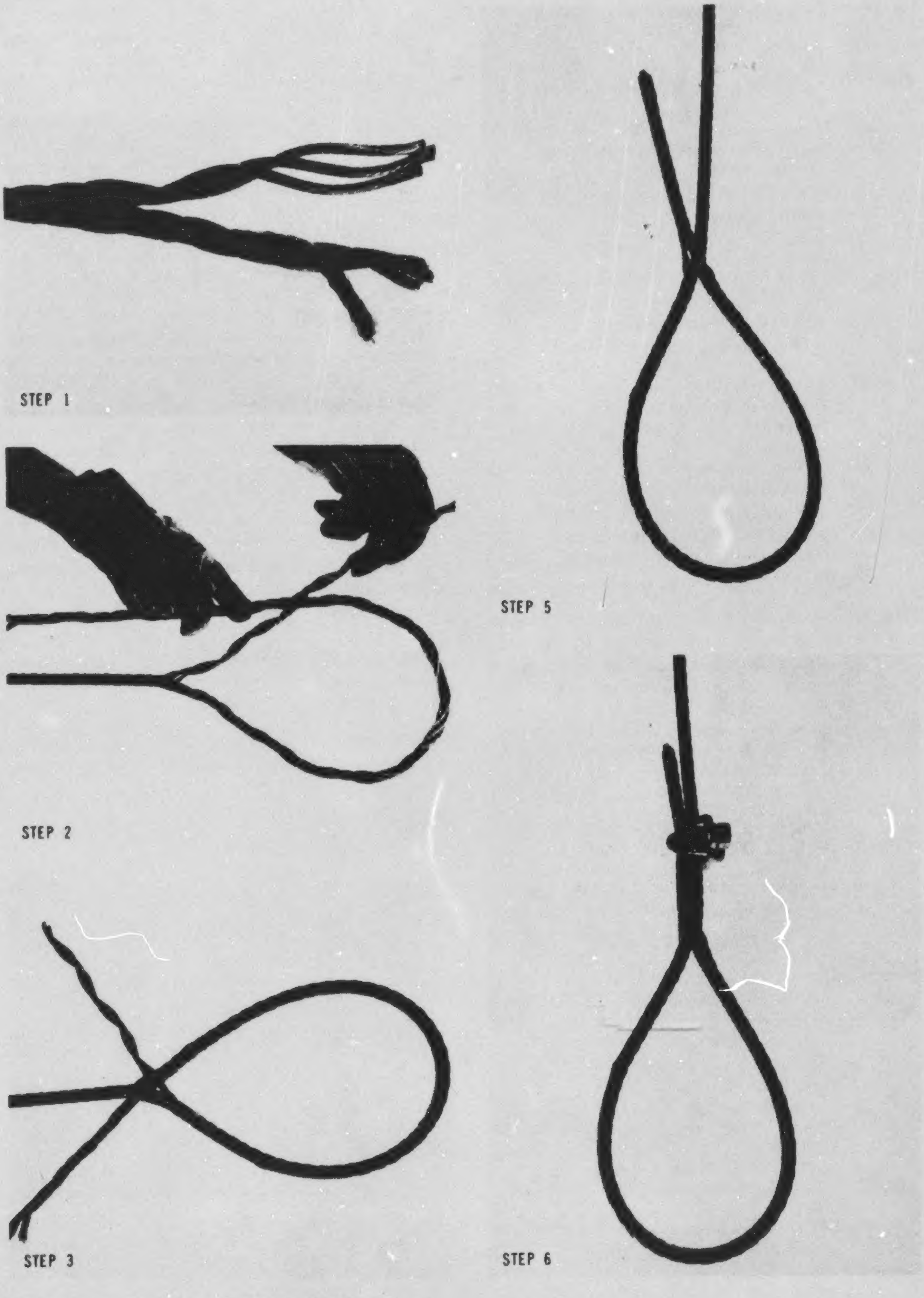
For satisfactory life the eye should be protected by a wrought steel or a cast steel thimble. Either



SPELTER SOCKET (closed type)

SWAGED SOCKET (open type)

Figure 7-55. Socket End Attachments



STEP 1

STEP 2

STEP 3

STEP 5

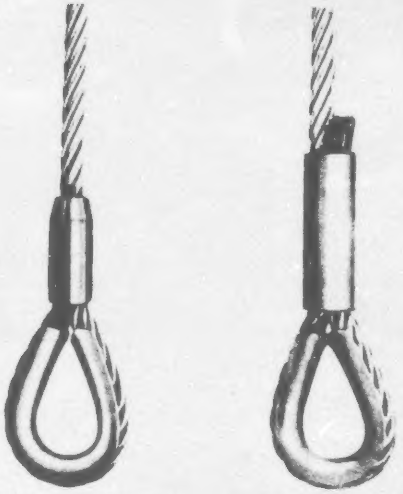
STEP 6

Figure 7-54. Making a Flemish Eye Loop

of these splices will develop strengths better than 95% of catalogue rope strength.

Flemish Rolled Eye
A flemish rolled eye (Figure 7-56) is made and the strand ends secured against the live portion of the rope by means of a steel or aluminum sleeve set in place with an hydraulic press under specified pressures.

Fold Back Eye
A fold back eye (Figure 7-56) is made simply by bending the rope to the eye dimension required and securing the free or dead end of the rope against the live portion of the rope by means of a steel or aluminum sleeve set in place with an hydraulic press under specified pressures.



FLEMISH ROLLED EYE

FOLD-BACK EYE

Figure 7-56. Mechanically Spliced Eye End Attachments

Swaged or Zinced Ferrule The swaged or zinced ferrule (Figure 7-57) is used mainly in the logging industry to provide a fast means of securing chokers to logs or tag lines. These end fittings are used in conjunction with "Bardon" type choker hooks, butt hooks, arch hooks, etc. Such ferrules are also used to anchor hoisting ropes to drums on small overhead electric- and air-powered hoists.

Figure 7-57. Swaged or Zinced Ferrule End Attachment

HANDLING AND CARE OF WIRE ROPE

UNLOADING

Ropes should be unloaded from trucks, trailers, railway cars, etc. with care (Figure 7-58). The reel should never be dropped because the impact could fracture or separate the reel drum from the reel flanges. The best way to lift a reel of rope is to place a bar or heavy pipe through the central hole of the reel and connect by slings to a suitable hoist. If a hoist is not available, improvise a ramp of heavy planks and trestles and roll the reel down under control at all times.

UNREELING AND UNCOILING

When removing wire rope from the shipping reel or from the coil in which it is received it is essential that the reel or the coil rotate as the rope unwinds. Any attempt to remove a rope from a stationary reel or coil will almost inevitably result in a kinked rope and the rope will be ruined beyond repair at that point.

Unreeling To unwind a rope from a reel one of three methods may be used.

Method 1. Pass a shaft through the reel, mounting the shaft on two jacks, one on either side. Grasp the free end of the

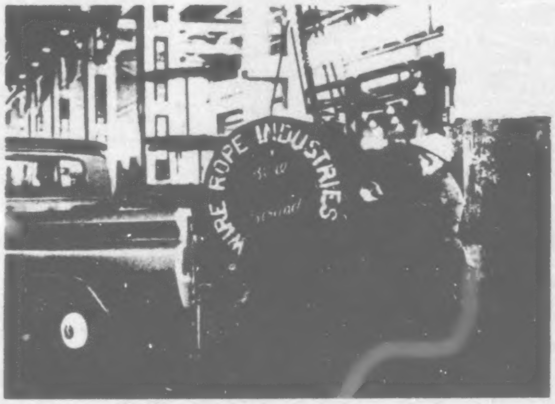


Figure 7-58. Unloading Wire Rope

rope and walk away from the reel which rotates as the rope unwinds. Apply a piece of planking as a lever to one of the flanges to act as a brake to keep the rope tight and the reel from overwinding (Figure 7-59).

Method 2. Hold the free end of the rope while the reel is rolled along the ground or floor (Figure 7-60).

Method 3. Upend the reel with one flange on a turntable. Unwind the rope in a similar manner to Method 1. Extra braking must be maintained to keep the rope under sufficient tension so that slack will not accumulate resulting in the rope's dropping below the lower reel-flange or turntable (Figure 7-61).

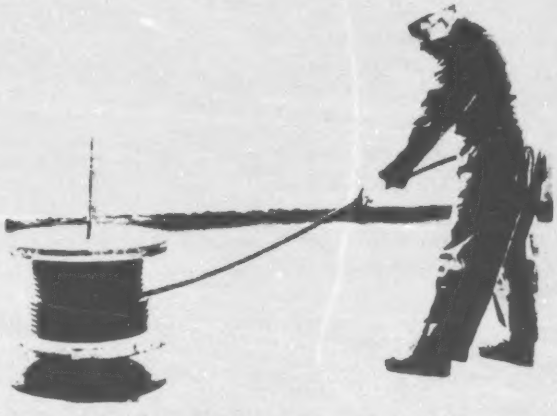


Figure 7-61. Unwinding Wire Rope-Method 3

When re-reeling rope from the rope reel as in Method 1 to a drum on a piece of equipment, the rope should travel from the top of the reel to the top of the drum or from the bottom of the reel to the bottom of the drum (Figure 7-62). This avoids putting a reverse bend into the rope as it is being installed. A reverse bend would make the rope livelier and harder to handle.

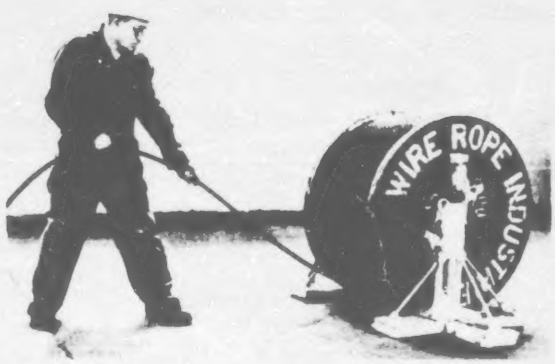


Figure 7-59. Unwinding Wire Rope-Method 1

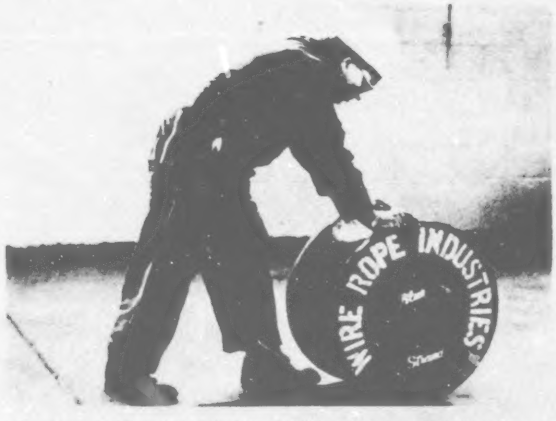


Figure 7-60. Unwinding Wire Rope-Method 2

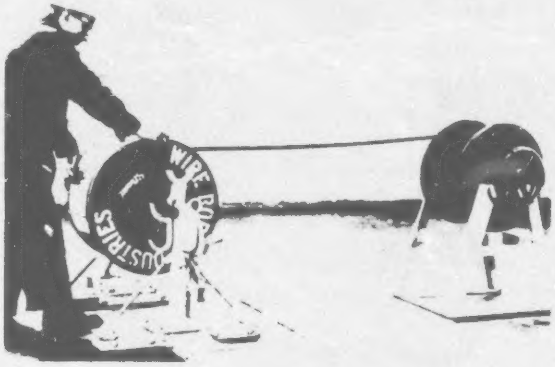


Figure 7-62. Re-Reeling Wire Rope

Uncoiling To unwind a rope from a coil, either of two methods may be used.

Method 1. The preferred method is to secure the free end of the rope and then roll the coil of rope along the ground like a hoop (Figure 7-63). Exercise care at all times to ensure that all rope remaining in the coil is held together so that no tight coils or kinks will occur.

Method 2. The coil of rope may be laid on a turntable and the free end pulled out as the turntable and coil revolve (Figure 7-64). The turntable should

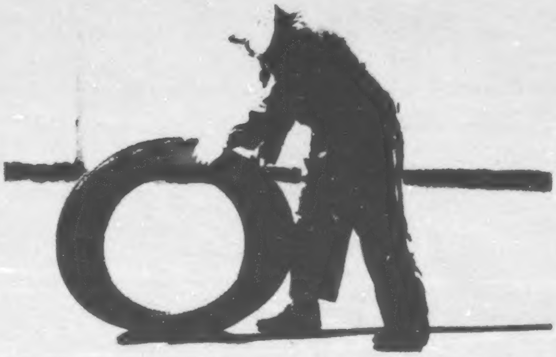


Figure 7-63. Uncoiling Rope-Method 1

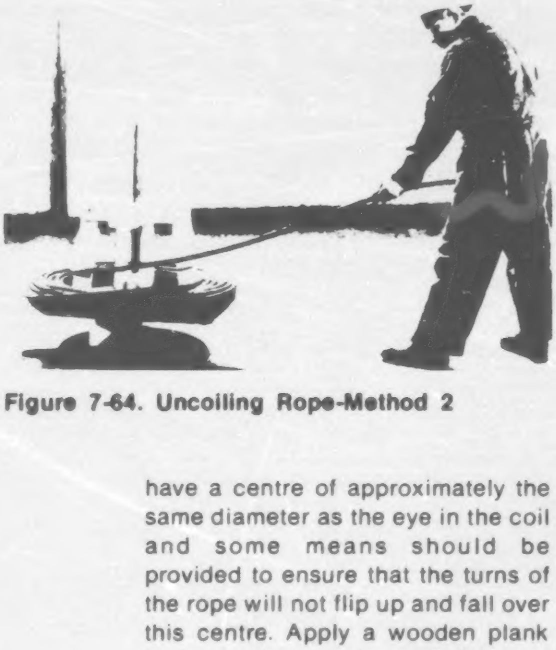


Figure 7-64. Uncoiling Rope-Method 2

have a centre of approximately the same diameter as the eye in the coil and some means should be provided to ensure that the turns of the rope will not flip up and fall over this centre. Apply a wooden plank brake to the periphery of the turntable to prevent overwinding.

STORAGE

Unwrap and examine new rope immediately after delivery. Apply a fresh coating of rope dressing if necessary. Rewrap rope and store under cover in a clean, dry area, keeping the reel off the ground by steel or timber cribbing (Figure 7-65). Examine rope periodically and renew dressing as required.

SEIZING THE ENDS OF WIRE ROPE

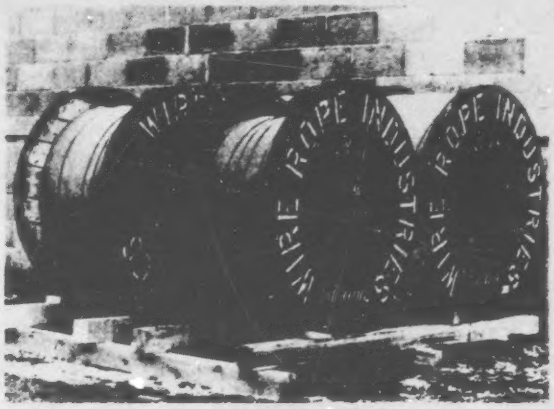


Figure 7-65. Wire Rope Stored on Cribbing

It is most important that tight seizings of annealed iron wire or strand be maintained on the ends of ropes, whether Preformed or not. If ropes are not properly seized prior to cutting, wires and strands are apt to become slack with consequent upsetting of uniformity of tensions in the rope. This could result in overloading of some wires and strands and underloading of others, leading to high strands, birdcaging of wires or breakage of wires and strands. Non-rotating ropes, regardless of construction, depend on retention of built-in torsional balance to resist rotation under load.

There are two approved methods of seizing.

Method 1. This method is generally used on ropes larger than 1" diameter. Place one end of the seizing wire in the valley between two strands (Figure 7-66); then turn its long end at right angles to the rope and wind back over itself and the rope in a close, tight winding, in a direction opposite to the lay of the rope, until a length of seizing not less than a rope diameter has been wound. Twist the two ends together and by alternately tightening and twisting these ends, draw the seizing tight. Best results are obtained when the seizing is applied with a serving bar.

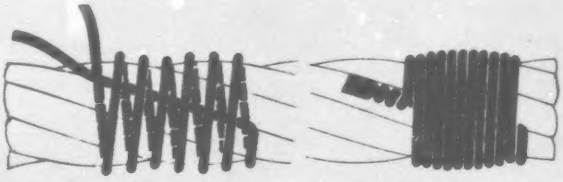


Figure 7-66. Stranding Rope-Method 1

Method 2. This method is usually used on ropes and strands of 1" diameter and smaller. Wrap the seizing wire around the rope in a close, tight winding in a direction opposite to the lay of the rope (Figure 7-67). Each seizing should consist of from 8-10 closely wound wraps of seizing wire. Twist the two ends together by hand in a counter-clockwise direction approximately at the centre of the seizing and about 1/2 from the rope. Using cutters, alternately twist and take up the slack until the serving is tight on the rope. Twist seizing ends tightly against the serving, wind twisted ends into a knot and cut off the ends of seizing wire.

Seizings on locked coil ropes will range in length from 10-20 rope diameters and their number will vary with rope diameter and construction. Should it be necessary to cut off a piece of rope containing one or more original seizings, apply an equal number further up the rope before making the cut. Seizings on locked coil ropes must be applied with a serving bar or mallet and soldered in place. The seizing wire or strand must hence be either tinned or galvanized. Table 7-5 lists the number of recommended seizings for various types of ropes.

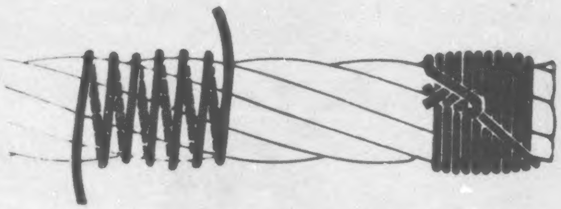


Figure 7-67. Stranding Rope-Method 2

LUBRICATING METHODS

Whether stationary or in motion, steel wire ropes must be protected from corrosion. When in motion they must be lubricated to minimize wear between the metal-to-metal (wire-to-wire) surfaces. During manufacture a lubricant that will satisfy both these requirements at least for a time is built into the strands of wire and the core. Exposure to the elements and normal rope operation over sheaves and on and off drums will gradually deplete and contaminate the lubricant. Most ropes should be lubricated at intervals depending on the type of service to minimize corrosion and wear and extend rope life.

Clean a used rope with wire brushes, scrapers, compressed air or superheated steam. In some

TABLE 7-5. RECOMMENDED NUMBER OF SEIZINGS AND SIZE OF SEIZING WIRE OR STRAND

Rope Diameter Inches	Minimum Number of Seizings				Approx. Diameter of Seizing, Inches		
	6 and 8 Strand Ropes Round and Flattened Strand		Non-Rotating Ropes Round and Flattened Strand		Stranded Ropes		Locked Coil Ropes
			Preformed and Non-Preformed				
	Reg. Lay, Fibre Core Preformed Elevator	Lang Lay, Fibre Core Reg. Lay, Steel Core Lang Lay, Steel Core	Groups	Seizings per Group	Wire	Strand	Wire*
3/32 & smaller	2	2	2	3	.020		
1/8 to 1/4	2	3	2	3	.024		
5/16 to 1/2	3	4	2	3	.032		
9/16 to 7/8	3	4	2	3	.040	1/16	.052
15/16 to 1-1/2	3	4	3	3	.080	3/32	.062
1-9/16 to 2	4	5	3	3	.106	1/8	.072
Larger than 2	4	5	3	3	.128	5/32	.072

* Seizing wire for Locked Coil Ropes must be tinned or galvanized.

instances it may be necessary to soften the old lubricant and accumulated dirt with a penetrating oil or a good grade kerosene.

Then apply a lubricant suited to the conditions under which the rope is operating. Several methods are suggested; choose the one most suited to the installation and the lubricant being used. It is better to lubricate lightly and frequently than heavily and infrequently.

A suitable rope lubricant should have the following properties:

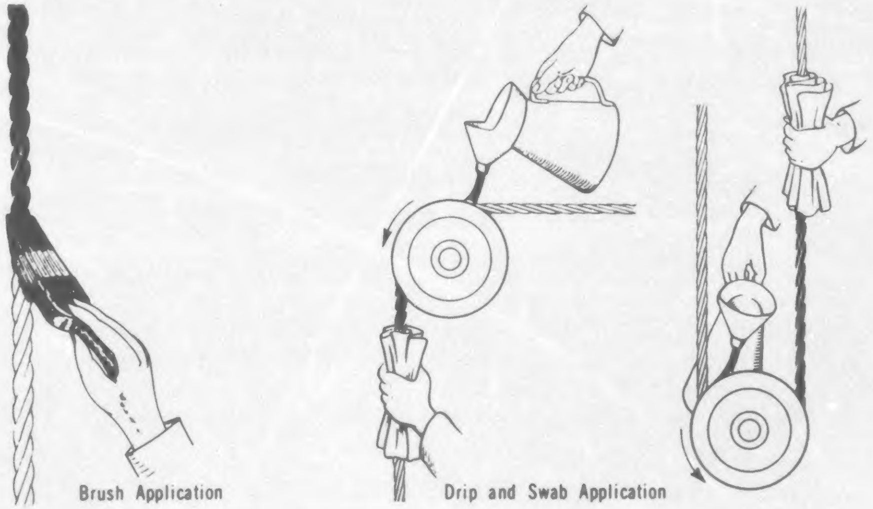
1. Freedom from acids and alkalies
2. Sufficient adhesive strength to stay on the rope without throw-off at maximum rope speed
3. Ability to penetrate between strands and reach the core
4. Non-solubility under conditions of rope use
5. Resistance to oxidation
6. High film strength is an advantage.

When a wire rope is taken out of service for storage against possible future use, first clean and then lubricate it. Then cover and store the rope in a dry location and protect against mechanical damage.

Figure 7-68 illustrates some simple methods of lubricating ropes externally while in use. Other lubricators and cleaning devices are, of course, available commercially or readily fabricated in a plant or local workshop.

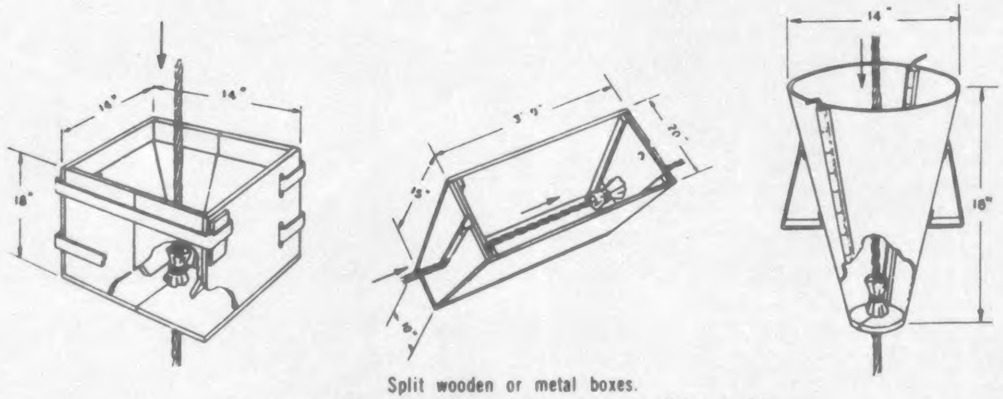
CONDITION OF WINDING DRUMS AND SHEAVES

Flat faced drums with roughly worn surfaces and grooved drums with rough and scored grooving



Brush Application

Drip and Swab Application



Split wooden or metal boxes.
Rope passes through burlap or similar wiper at outlet end of box.

Figure 7-68. Methods of Lubricating Wire Rope In Use

or chipped groove separations can cause excessive rope wear.

Condition and contour of sheave grooves have a major influence on rope life. Grooves should be maintained in a smooth condition and be slightly larger than the rope to avoid pinching and binding of the rope in the groove. Since ropes are usually made slightly larger than their nominal size, new grooves for new rope should just accommodate the full over-size of the rope. Where the rope approaches the sheave at a specific angle of sheet, as for instance 1°-20° maximum for mine shaft hoisting, the head sheave groove diameter should be equal to the nominal rope diameter plus 8%. The bottom of the groove should have an arc of support of from 120°-150°, with the sides of the groove tangent to the ends of the bottom arc.

Note that the more closely the contour of the groove approaches that of the wire rope the greater the area of contact between the two. The greater this area of contact, the less the wear on both the groove and the wire rope. The greater area of contact lessens deformation of the rope in the groove, thus increasing its resistance to fatigue from bending.

Fleet Angle The fleet angle is that angle between the centre line through the first fixed sheave perpendicular to the axis of the drum shaft and the centre line of the rope leading to the drum (Figure 7-69). Excessive fleet angles can cause serious damage to wire rope, sheaves and grooved drums. Severe scuffing results when rope wears against groove walls, grinding them down and causing the rope to become bruised or crushed.

Maximum fleet angles on equipment should be kept small and preferably between 1° and 1°-30′. To ensure the rope crossing back and starting the second layer properly without assistance the fleet angle should not be less than 0°-30′.

The angle should not exceed 1°-30′ for smooth faced drums and 2° for grooved drums, except that in mine shaft hoisting the angle should not exceed 1°-20′. Excessive drum wear and poor spooling or winding will result if these angles are exceeded.

WINCH DRUM CAPACITY

To determine the capacity in feet of steel wire rope of a winch drum or reel:

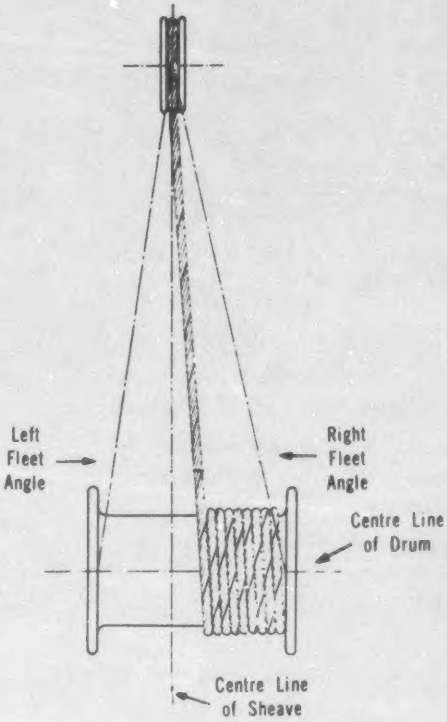


Figure 7-69. Fleet Angles

Refer to Figure 7-70. Add the diameter of the drum (B) to the depth of the flange (A). Multiply the sum by the depth of flange (A). Multiply the result by the length between the flanges (C), all in inches. Multiply the product by the factor in the right hand column opposite the size of rope required. The result will be the amount of rope in feet that the drum will hold.

Table 7-6 gives the factor F for "on-size" rope and level wind. Since new ropes are usually over-size by 1/32" per 1" of rope diameter the result obtained by the formula should be

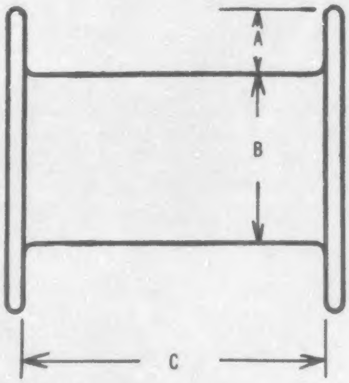


Figure 7-70. Determining Winch Drum Capacity

TABLE 7-6. "F" FACTOR FOR "ON-SIZE" ROPE

Nominal Rope Diameter Inches	F	Nominal Rope Diameter Inches	F
1/4	4.16	1-1/4	.167
5/16	2.67	1-3/8	.138
3/8	1.86	1-1/2	.116
7/16	1.37	1-5/8	.099
1/2	1.05	1-3/4	.085
9/16	.828	1-7/8	.074
5/8	.672	2	.066
3/4	.465	2-1/8	.058
7/6	.342	2-1/4	.052
1	.262	2-3/8	.046
1-1/8	.207	2-1/2	.042

decreased as follows: for rope over-size decrease by from 0% to 6%; for random or uneven winding decrease by from 0% to 8%.

Formula: (B+ A) x A x C x F for required size of rope.

SHEAVE ALIGNMENT

Align sheaves so that the axis of the rope travelling over the sheaves will coincide with a line drawn from centre to centre of sheave grooves. Poor alignment will result in severe wear on both the rope and the sheave flanges. Even the slightest misalignment accelerates rope wear and shortens rope lift. Poor alignment of the first sheave off the drum may result in poor winding. A ready indication of poor alignment will be the rapid wear of one flange of the sheave.

RADIAL PRESSURE ON SHEAVES AND DRUMS

Radial pressure of the rope on the sheave or drum will cause wear in the groove or the drum face. Too great a radial pressure will cause excessively fast wear and result in shortened rope life. Radial pressure can be reduced by decreasing the load on the rope or by increasing the diameter of the sheave or drum. The amount of wear will vary with the material from which these are made. Table 7-7 specifies acceptable radial pressures for different wire rope types.

TABLE 7-7. SUGGESTED MAXIMUM RADIAL PRESSURES (in pounds per square inch)

Rope Construction	Sheave and Drum Materials		
	Cast Iron	Cast Steel	Manganese Steel 11-13% Mn.
6x7 Reg. Lay	300	550	1500
6x7 Lang. Lay	350	625	1700
6x19 Reg. Lay	500	900	2500
6x19 Lang Lay	575	1025	2850
6x37 Reg. Lay	600	1075	3000
6x37 Lang Lay	700	1250	3500
8x19 Reg. Lay	600	1075	3000
6x8 Flat. Strand	500	900	2500
6x25 Flat. Strand	800	1450	4000
6x33 Flat. Strand	975	1800	4900
Locked Coil	on application		

ROPE OPERATION

Overwinding and Crosswinding While the ideal winding condition would be a single layer of rope on the drum, this is not always possible. Where it can not be avoided the succeeding layers should not cross-wind but should wind regularly in the groove formed between successive turns of the preceding layer of rope.

Initial Operation After installing a new rope it is advisable to run through its normal operating cycle for a number of trips under light load and at reduced speed. This permits the new rope to adjust gradually to working conditions and enables the strands to become seated and some stretch to occur. The rope will then be less liable to damage when the full load is applied.

Shock Loading Never lift or stop a load with a jerk; the load so imposed may equal the static working load several times and jerking may break a rope. Jerks that do not break the rope cause rapid deterioration and result in reduced rope life.

Rope Speed Experience indicates that rope wear increases with speed. Rope economy results from moderately increasing the load and reducing rope speed. Some authorities suggest that when ropes are running light, rope speed should not exceed 4,000′ per minute whether hoisting or lowering.

INSPECTING WIRE ROPE FOR WEAR

Inspect the entire length of rope frequently paying particular attention to those sections experience indicates to be areas showing greatest wear. Watch for broken wires, excessive wear and lack of lubrication. Where drum capacity will permit and winding conditions are such that "drum crushing" of the rope is minimal, it may be wise to install a slightly longer length of rope than absolutely necessary. This extra length will permit cutting a few feet of rope at either load end or drum end to change those areas of maximum wear over drums and sheaves.

In installations where rope wear is excessive at one end or the other the life of the rope may be extended by changing the drum end for the load end, that is, by turning the rope "end for end." This must be done before wear becomes too severe.

A rope may have to continue in operation with broken wires, but these wires should be removed as soon as possible. The method often used to get rid of a broken wire — nipping it off with pliers — is not recommended as this leaves a jagged end. It is preferable to bend the broken ends backwards and forwards with the fingers if possible, or if the ends are short or the wire large use a marlin spike or a piece of wood. In this way, the wire breaks inside instead of outside the rope. The ends are left tucked away between the strands where they will do no harm. (See Figure 7-71).

THREATS TO SAFE OPERATION AND MAXIMUM SERVICEABILITY

1. Drums and sheaves of too small diameter
2. Reverse bends in the rope
3. Overloading the rope
4. Incorrect rope construction for the job
5. Overwinding or incorrect winding on drums
6. Lack of lubrication
7. Handling or kinking damage
8. Insufficient or faulty guides or rollers
9. Sheaves out of alignment
10. Deeply worn grooves in drums
11. Broken rims or grooves on sheaves
12. Sheaves that turn hard or wobble
13. Displaced rope guides
14. Stones or other objects lodged in equipment
15. Sticking or grabbing clutches
16. Uneven or jerky pull on the rope from loose bearings
17. Lines whipping
18. Improper line spooling
19. Incorrect installation of clamps, ferrules, sockets or splices

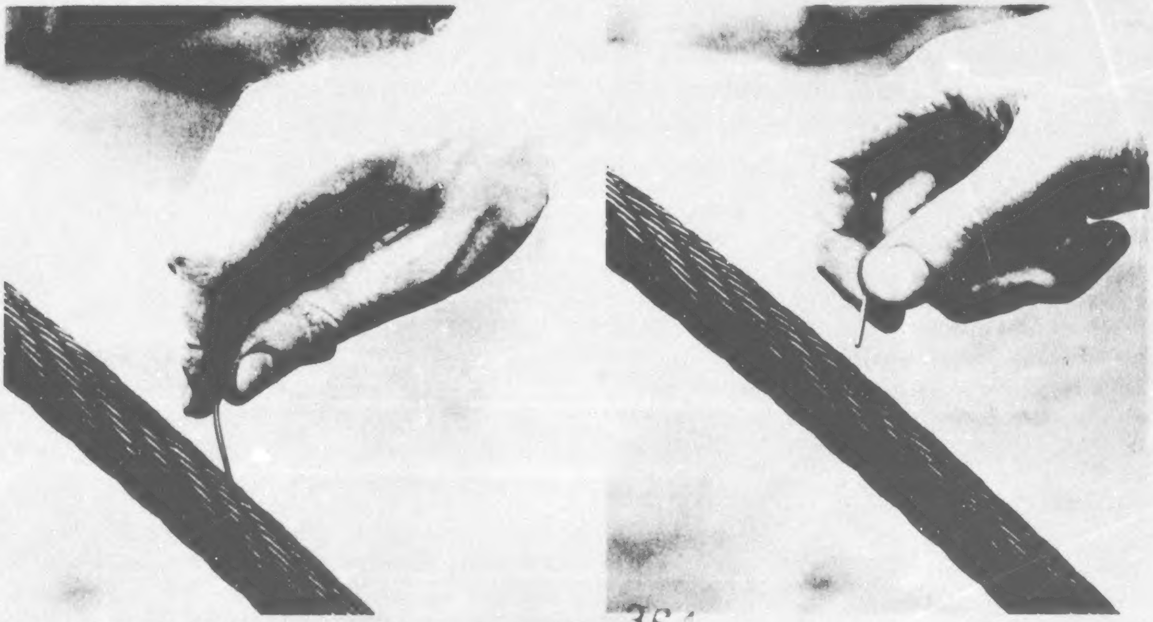


Figure 7-71. Breaking Off a Loose Strand of Wire Rope

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Hand Protection Gloves must be worn by all workmen handling wire rope.

Use of Wire Rope Clips Tighten wire rope clips of the "U" bolt type immediately after the initial load carrying use, and frequently thereafter. Malleable iron clips should not be used for hoisting lines.

Running Line Safety Running lines of hoisting equipment located within 7′ of the ground or working level must be rapid off, or otherwise guarded, or the operating area restricted.

INSPECTION AND ASSESSMENT OF WIRE ROPE

Wire rope or cables should be inspected by a competent person at the time of installation and once each week thereafter when in use. Wire rope or cables must be removed from hoisting or load carrying service when detrimental corrosion is present or when **one** of the following conditions exist:

1. Three broken wires are found in one lay of 6 x 7 wire rope.
2. Six broken wires are found in one lay of 6 x 19 wire rope.
3. Nine broken wires are found in one lay of 6 x 37 wire rope.
4. Eight broken wires are found in one lay of 8 x 19 wire rope.
5. Marked corrosion appears.
6. Four broken wires are found adjacent to each other or when sixteen broken wires are found in one lay.
7. Wire rope of a type not described here should be removed from service when 4% of the total number of wires composing such rope are found broken in one lay.
8. Wire rope should be removed from service when the wires in the crown of the strand are worn to less than 60% their original diameter.
9. Wire rope should be removed from service when there is a marked reduction in the diameter, even though the wires in the crown of the strand show no sign of wear. This condition can result from inner corrosion and indicates a serious weakening in the rope.

CHAIN

A chain consists of a number of interlocking sections of oval metal pieces. Each section or link has one or more visible welds. For rigging jobs, the most common chain metals are wrought iron and steel alloys. Heat-treated carbon steel is used for chain slings because of its high abrasion resistance.

Certain properties of chain in operation make it preferable to wire rope: corrosion resistance, abrasion resistance, sharp bending tolerance. Since rope will stretch to some extent it has a greater shock load tolerance than chain.

Chain will fail abruptly when overloaded or if it has a faulty weld. Wire rope, on the other hand, will evidence failure more gradually as wires and strands break individually with unmistakable sounds.

Hooks are matched to chains by the manufacturer or on the basis of fit between the chain link size and the hook connector. Such a matched hook should fail before the chain fails.

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

Do not leave chains where they will be run over by tractors, trucks or other equipment. Never point load a link of chain with the beak of a hook as this may damage both and cause the load to drop. Never shorten a chain by twisting or knotting or with nuts and bolts.

Store chain in a clean, dry, ventilated area with a light coating of oil on it to prevent rust.

INSPECTION AND ASSESSMENT

Inspect all hoisting chains at frequent intervals for such defects as stretch, deformity, twist, cut, nicks, gouge marks, arc burns, open welds or fractures as indicated by very fine surface cracks. Remove chains from hoisting service when such defects are found.

Discard chains that have stretched more than 5% in any five link sections. Chains that show wear greater than 25% of the thickness of the metal in any individual link should be removed from service.

Alloy chains should be subjected to stricter scrutiny as some degree of damage or defect will weaken the chain more than that of a proof or BBB coil chain.

SLINGS

A sling is a means of connecting a load to a power source for lifting. Different materials used in rigging may be adapted to create slings: fibre and wire rope, chain, synthetic or wire webbing, in conjunction with hooks, shackles, turnbuckles.

SLING MATERIALS

Manila Rope

Advantages:

1. Flexiblity
2. Easy to handle
3. Does not tend to slip from choke position
4. Will not scratch a load
5. Relatively low cost.

Disadvantages:

1. Limited strength
2. Subject to moisture, heat and chemical damage.

Synthetic Fibre Rope

Advantages:

1. Stronger than manila rope
2. High abrasion resistance
3. Provides secure grip to the load
4. Will not scratch a load
5. Resistant to moisture, heat and most chemical damage
6. Stretch increases absorption of impact and shock loads.

Disadvantages:

1. Not as strong as wire rope

Wire Rope

Advantages:

1. Strongest type of lifting material
2. Flexible
3. Abrasion resistant.

Disadvantages:

1. Will slip from choke position on metal loads
2. Will scratch fragile loads
3. Subject to sharp bend damage
4. High cost factor.

Chain

Advantages:

1. Not subject to sharp bend damage
2. Good lifting strength

Disadvantages:

1. Heavy material
2. Lack of stretch produces poor shock loading tolerance
3. Subject to failure if kinked or twisted while under load
4. Will slip from choke position unless softeners are used
5. Becomes brittle in cold temperatures over long periods.

Note: Use only alloy chain slings for overhead lifting. Proof Coil, BBB Coil, and High-Test chain grades are not recommended for overhead lifting.

SLING ARRANGEMENTS

Figures 7-72 illustrate various sling arrangments.

TYPES OF SLINGS

Flat Slings Flat slings are manufactured from synthetic fibre webbing and wire mesh in a variety of constructions. The design of flat slings provides the following advantages:

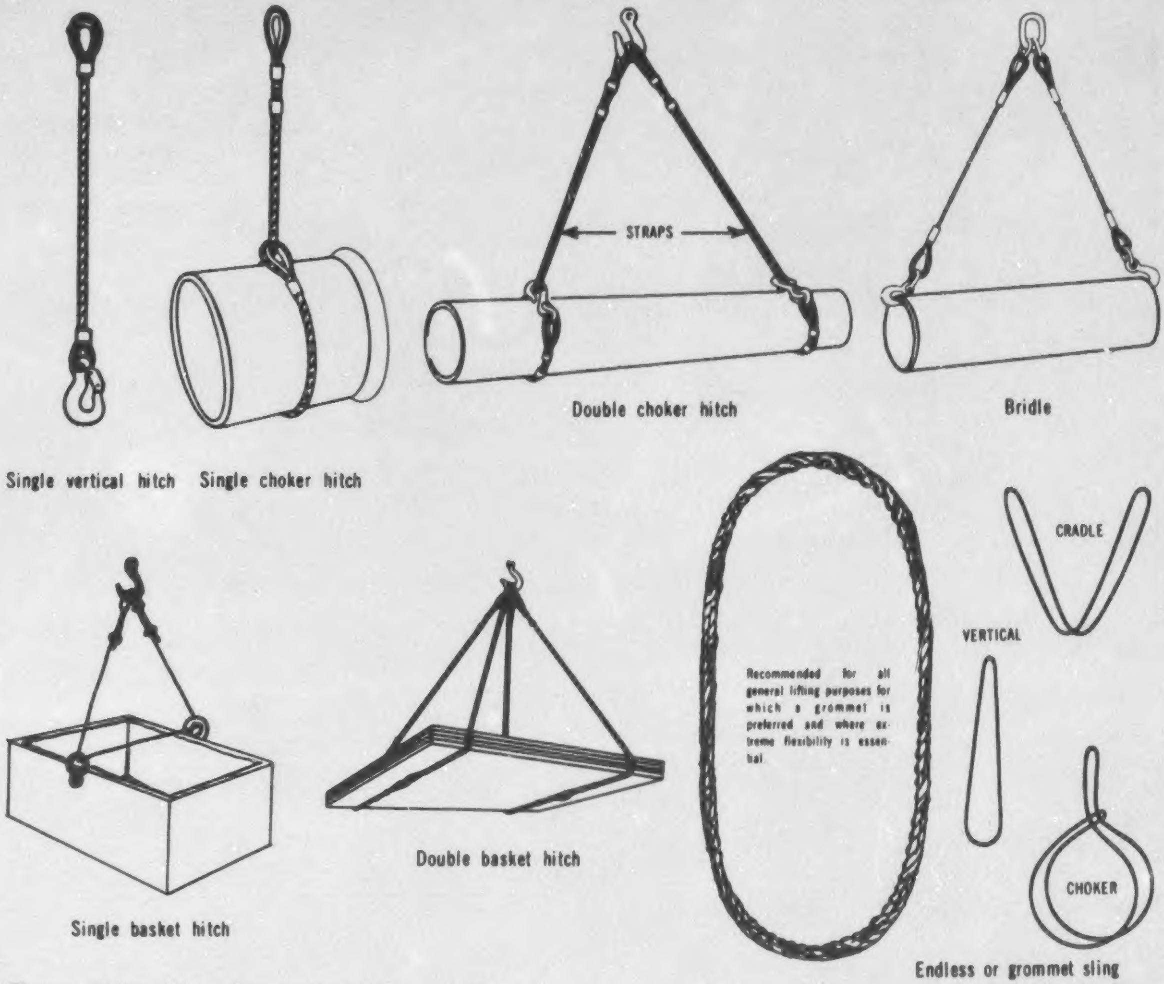
1. Load is protected from damage at the point of contact
2. Wide surface will hug any shape load and reduce slippage
3. Apparatus is light in weight, clean to work with and easy on the hands.

Safe working loads for flat slings should always reflect manufacturer's specifications.

Synthetic Fibre Web Slings Web slings are available in nylon and polyester with various design and treatment features that adapt the slings to specific lifting requirements.

Features of Synthetic Web Slings

1. Resistant to alkalies but do not tolerate acids
2. Can be used in temperatures up to 200°F



Recommended for all general lifting purposes for which a grommet is preferred and where extreme flexibility is essential.

Single vertical hitch

Single choker hitch

Double choker hitch

Bridle

Single basket hitch

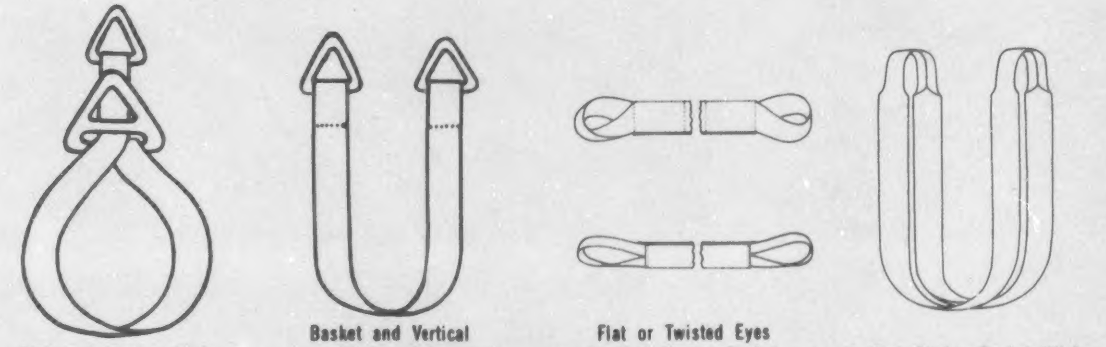
Double basket hitch

Endless or grommet sling

Figure 7-72. Sling Arrangements

3. Will stretch 10% rated capacity
4. Some designs are manufactured with a reinforcing core of inner load bearing yarns which carry 80% of the load and are protected from wear by the outer fibres.

Figures 7-73 illustrate the various constructions of synthetic web slings. The slings are shown in operation in Figure 7-74.



Choker & Basket Hitch
Triangle & Choker Fittings

Basket and Vertical
Hitches Only
Two Triangle Fittings

Flat or Twisted Eyes
Vertical Choker Basket
Hitches

Vertical Choker Basket Hitches
Endless or Grommet Type

Figure 7-73. Synthetic Web Sling Constructions

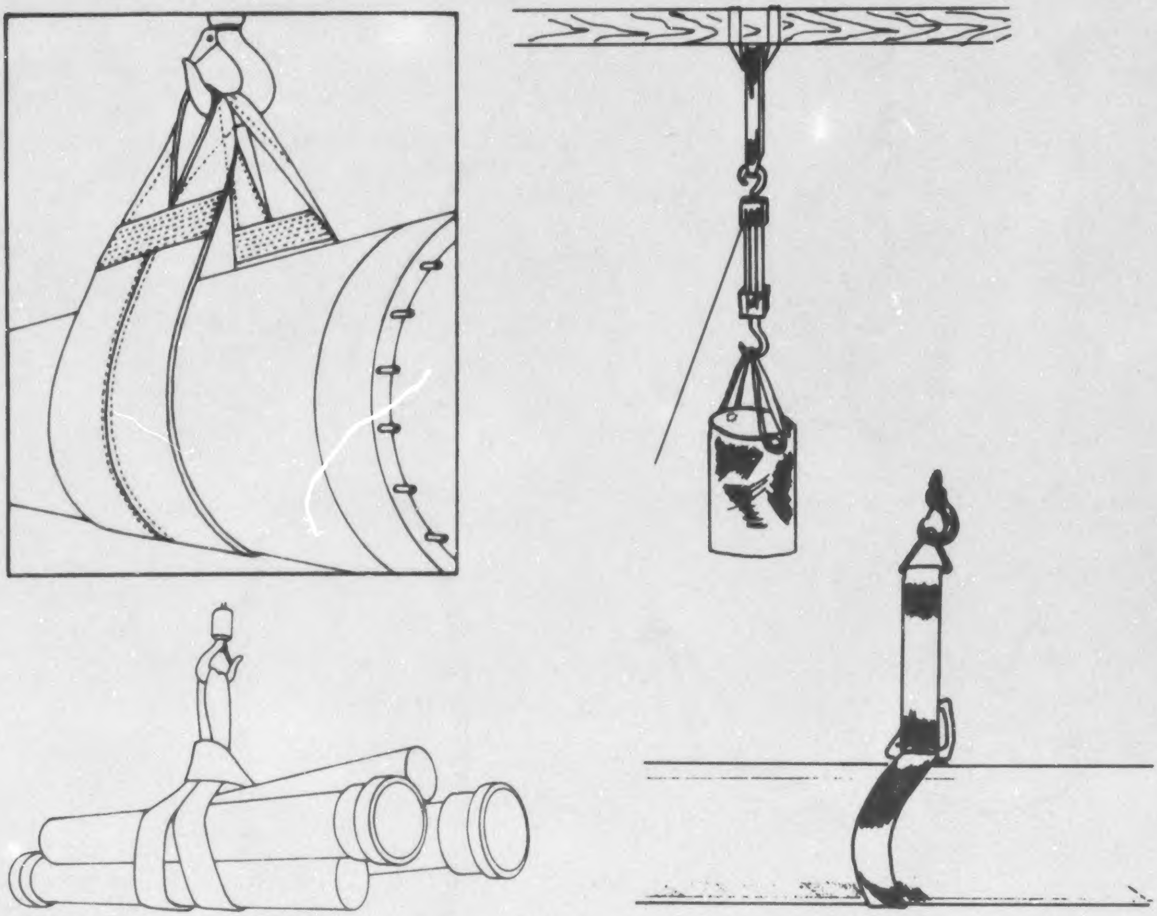


Figure 7-74. Synthetic Web Slings in Operation

Wire Mesh Slings Wire mesh slings are widely used in industries where loads are abrasive, hot or will tend to cut slings.

Features of Wire Mesh Slings

1. Resistant to abrasion and cutting
2. Firm grip maintains balanced load
3. Can withstand temperatures to 550°F
4. For handling materials that would damage wire mesh or for loads with soft finishes, slings can be coated with plastic.

Wire mesh is available in a range of gauges as illustrated in Figure 7-75. Wire mesh sling arrangements are shown in Figure 7-76.

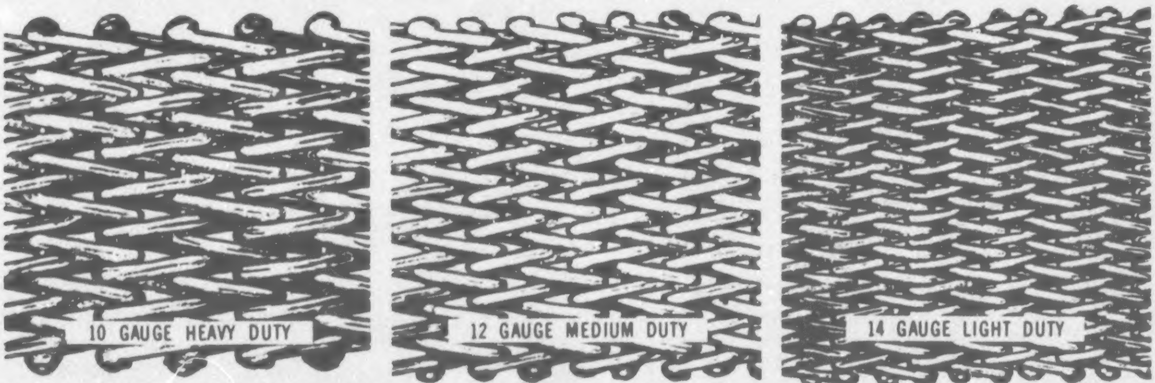


Figure 7-75. Wire Mesh Gauges

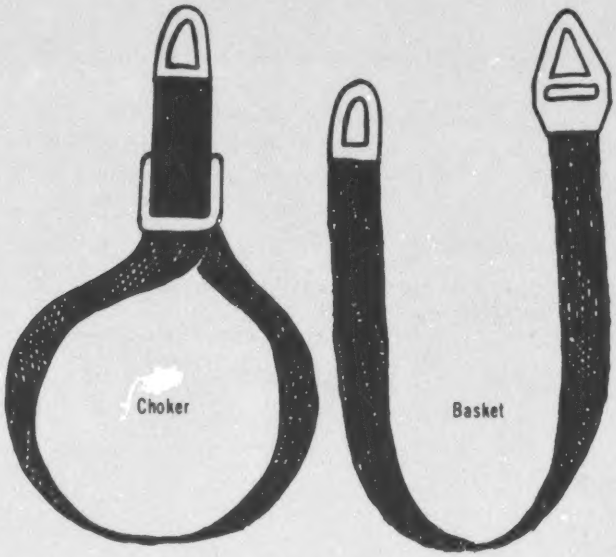


Figure 7-76. Wire Mesh Sling Arrangements

SAFE WORKING LOADS FOR SLINGS AT VARIOUS ANGLES

Different weights of pull are exerted on slings of various angles for the same load. The load on the rope equals the weight of the load **only** with a straight or vertical pull.

Example:

A load of 2,000 lbs. suspended from a single vertical hitch places 2,000 lbs. strain on the line.

Where a sling having two legs is involved, the angle of pull places a significantly greater strain on the sling. If the angle between the load and the sling leg is only 30°, the strain on the sling is nearly **twice** the actual weight of the load.

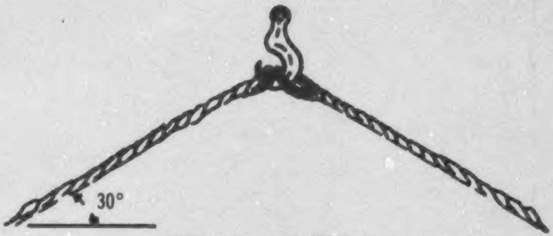
The maximum recommended angle between the load and the sling is 45°. If the angle is less than 45°, the danger of the sling failing is greatly increased.

Figures 7-77 illustrate the principle of sling angles.

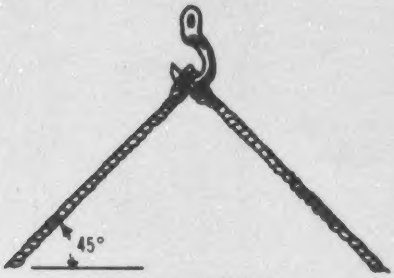
MEASURING AND CUTTING WIRE ROPE FOR CHOKERS

Procedure (See Figure 7-78).

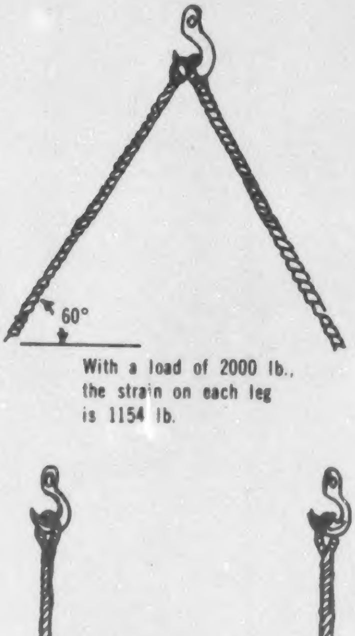
Step 1. Measure and mark splicing end and put on wire stop.



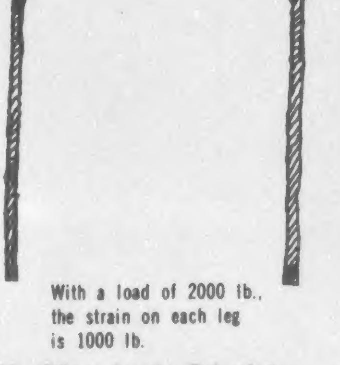
With a load of 2000 lb., the strain on each leg is 2000 lb.



With a load of 2000 lb., the strain on each leg is 1414 lb.



With a load of 2000 lb., the strain on each leg is 1154 lb.



With a load of 2000 lb., the strain on each leg is 1000 lb.

Figure 7-77. Sling Angle Principles

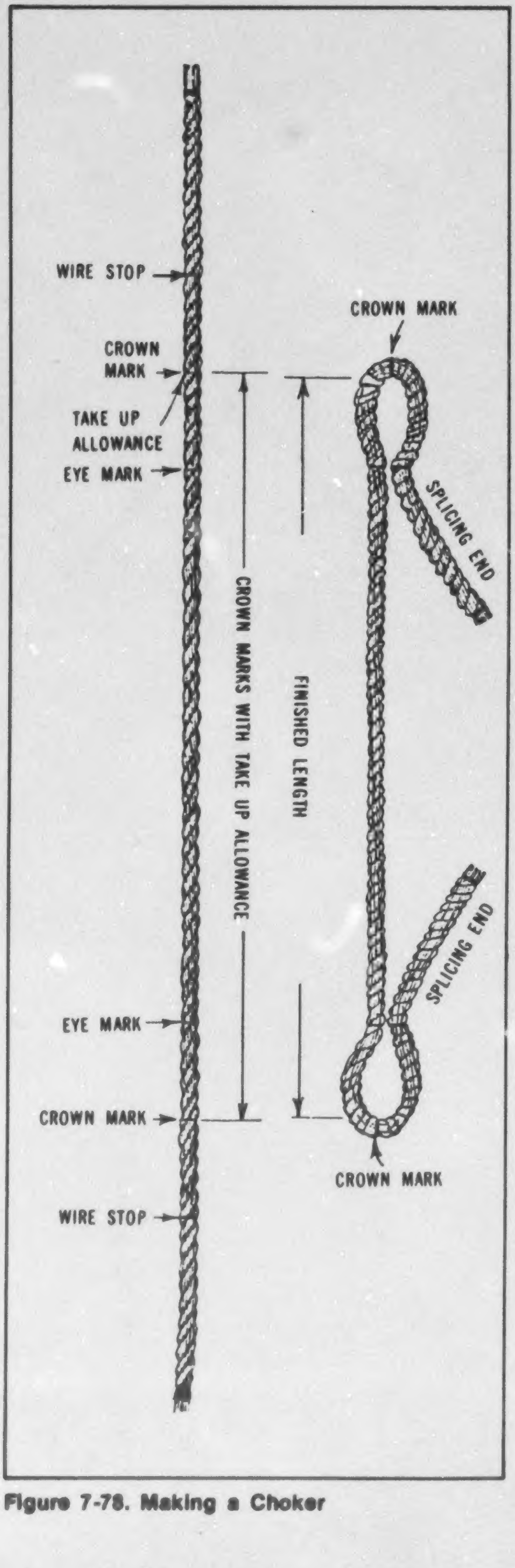

WIRE STOP
CROWN MARK
CROWN MARK
TAKE UP ALLOWANCE
EYE MARK
SPLICING END
CROWN MARKS WITH TAKE UP ALLOWANCE
FINISHED LENGTH
SPLICING END
EYE MARK
CROWN MARK
CROWN MARK
WIRE STOP

Figure 7-78. Making a Choker

Step 2. Measure and mark crown and eye marks.

Step 3. Measure required length between crown marks and add twice the circumference of the wire rope for take up allowance at top as shown in Table 7-8 and then mark off eye, wire stop and splicing end.

TABLE 7-8. MEASUREMENTS FOR CUTTING WIRE ROPE

DIA. OF WIRE ROPE	TAKE UP ALLOWANCE	SPLICING END	EYE
3/8"	2"	12"	8"
1/2"	3"	14"	10"
5/8"	4"	16"	12"
3/4"	5"	18"	14"
7/8"	6"	24"	16"
1	6-1/4"	30"	18"
1-1/8"	6-1/2"	36"	20"
1-1/4"	7-1/4"	44"	22"

SAFE USE OF SLINGS

1. Determine the weight of the load to be lifted.
2. Do not use the sling for any load exceeding its Rated Safe Working Load.
3. When using multi-leg sling Assemblies, remember that the angles between the legs will reduce the Safe Working Load of the Assembly. Consult the Sling Chart and Safe Working Load Tables available.
4. Endless wire rope slings are prone to misuse, and in practice they are often found to be difficult to handle. They should be used only when they have been purposely made for applications requiring a very short effective length, or for heavy lifts where a single sling of the required Safe Working Load is not available.
5. Examine all slings before use, and discard any that are defective.
6. Do not use a sling that contains a severe kink.
7. Slings found to be unfit for use should be destroyed, not put on a refuse dump.
8. When loads are being carried on a crane hook, slings not in use should not be carried on the same hook.
9. "Hooking Back" to the leg of a sling is not recommended.

10. Avoid bending wire rope slings around sharp corners of the load as it could effectively reduce their Safe Working Load.
11. A sling "doubled" around a shackle has a Safe Working Load equivalent only to that of a single part of the rope.
12. When using a halhing sling or reeving sling do not force the bight down on to the load. The included angle formed by the bight should not exceed 120°.
13. Protect Wire Rope Slings by suitable softeners from sharp edges of the load.
14. Do not drag wire rope slings along the floor.
15. Check that the crane hook is positioned over the load's centre of gravity to prevent swinging when the load is being raised.
16. Make sure that the load is free before lifting, and that all sling legs have a direct lead.
17. Take your hands away from slings before the crane takes the load and stand clear.
18. Correct signals, according to the recognized code, should be given the crane driver. The signals must be given by the person responsible for the lift and nobody else.
19. Never allow the load to be carried over the heads of other persons.
20. Do not ride on a load that is being slung, or allow any other person to do so.
21. Steady application of the load at the start of each lift will avoid risk and prolong the life of the sling. Beware of snatch loading.
22. Always lower the load on to adequate dunnage to prevent damage to the sling.
23. After use, riggers should stow slings tidily on a suitable rack off the floor.
24. Keep wire rope slings away from welding and flame cutting operations.
25. Keep wire rope slings in a dry store when not in use, to prevent corrosion.
26. Good practice requires all lifting tackle to be examined by a competent person at regular intervals. This includes the wire rope slings. Riggers should not stow away slings and regard them as their own private property as this could lead to their being overlooked at inspection time.
27. Slings may not be made from Lang Lay wire rope.

RIGGING

Attaching loads to lifting devices is a serious and complex responsibility and therefore, only the supervisor in charge can designate persons competent to do this. The assigned workman is fully responsible for the safety of the procedure:

1) The equipment (slings, chokers, chains, spreader bars, etc.) is of sufficient strength to lift, suspend and support the load.
2) The load must remain in a safe and stable situation while stationary or moving.
3) The total overall weight of the load to be moved must be less than the rated safe load capacity of the hoisting device.

In determining the safe working loads for cordage wire rope, chains and other rigging equipment, the manufacturers' published safe working load ratings must not be exceeded. Remember that these specifications apply to rigging in new or nearly new condition. These items must therefore be examined so that their condition can be considered in selecting the correct size and construction for a given load. Where special considerations of safety factors or special risks are involved, government regulations apply in selecting the correct size and construction to be used.

RIGGING ACCESSORIES

For ropes and lines to be used efficiently in rigging operations, certain auxillary devices can be included in the system.

HOOKS AND SHACKLES

Hooks and shackles are manufactured from forged steel or built up steel plate, however special materials may be used where certain electrical or chemical conditions demand it, e.g. bronze hooks which have anti-spark properties.

1. **A Standard Eye Hook** is illustrated in Figure 7-79. The different dimensions are labelled for reference to the dimension and load charts to follow.
2. **Mousing Hooks** No open hook shall be used in any situation where accidental dislodgement of the load could cause a risk of injury to workers. In these circumstances a safety hook or a shackle must be used, or if permitted by government regulations, mousing as shown in Figure 7-80 could be applied.

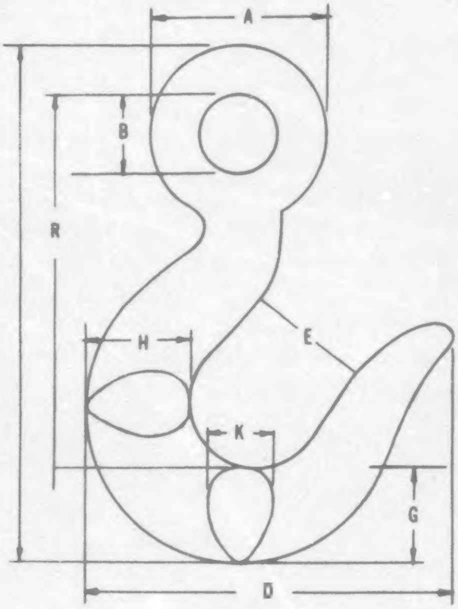


Figure 7-79. Standard Eye Hook

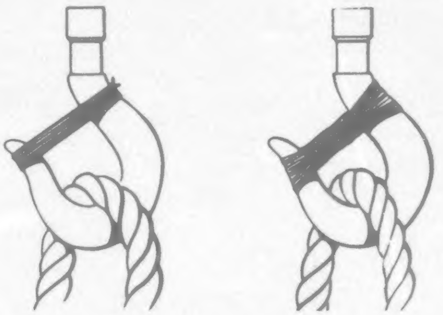


Figure 7-80. Mousing Hooks

3. **A Standard Safety Eye Hook** is illustrated in Figure 7-81.

4. **Shank Hooks** shall be considered to be of equal strength characteristics to eye hooks where the thickness at "G" is the same on both hooks. Open and Safety Shank Hooks are illustrated in Figure 7-82.. Hooks must be inspected regularly with particular attention to load carrying sections (e.g., dimension G) and stress related areas (dimension E). Any hook showing a loss of material of 20% or more of the original thickness at any section must be destroyed and replaced. Similarly **any** increase in the throat opening E beyond stated specification indicates overstress, and the hook must be destroyed. Table 7-9 specifies important dimensions for eye type hooks along with the rated load capacity for each size.

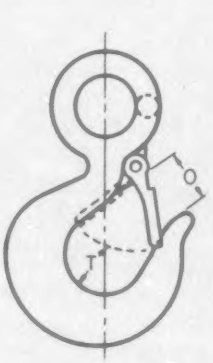
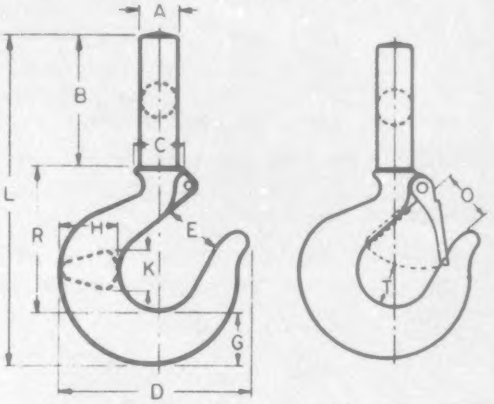


Figure 7-81. Standard Safety Eye Hook



OPEN SHANK HOOK

SAFETY SHANK HOOK

Figure 7-82. Shank Hooks

5. **Shackles** are available in Screw Pin, Round Pin and Safety Type construction, as illustrated in Figure 7-83.

In determining safe working loads, the critical dimensions are the width between the eyes and the pin diameter. For example, the maximum width between eyes for a 3/4" diameter pin is 1 1/16". The rated safe working load for this shackle is 5,600 pounds. A 1¹/₄" diameter pin can span a maximum of 1 7/8" between eyes, with a safe working load of 16,000 pounds.

All shackle pins must be straight, and all pins of screw pin type must be screwed in all the way. The use of rebars, bent or straight, as a substitute for pins is not permitted under any circumstances.

Shackles must be inspected regularly, and if the width between the eyes exceeds the listed

TABLE 7-9. CRITICAL DIMENSIONS FOR LOAD CARRYING HOOKS

Size No	Rated Capacity Tons 2000 Lbs.	HOOK DIMENSIONS IN INCHES											Approx. Weight Each Lbs.
		A	B	D	E	G	H	K	L	O	R	T	
22	.46	1 1/2	3/4	2 7/8	1	25/32	15/16	9/16	4 13/32	7/8	3 1/4	25/32	.54
23	.56	1 3/4	7/8	3 3/16	1 1/16	27/32	1	5/8	4 29/32	31/32	3 5/8	15/16	.75
24	.74	2	1	3 9/16	1 1/8	1	1 1/8	11/16	5 15/32	1 1/32	4	15/16	1.1
25	1.4	2 1/4	1 1/8	4	1 1/4	1 1/8	1 11/32	27/32	7 7/32	1 1/8	4 1/2	1 1/8	1.7
26	1.7	2 1/2	1 1/4	4 9/16	1 3/8	1 5/16	1 9/16	31/32	6 7/8	1 7/32	4 15/16	1 1/8	2.5
27	2.1	2 3/4	1 3/8	5 1/16	1 1/2	1 1/2	1 25/32	1 1/8	7 3/4	1 5/16	5 9/16	1 15/32	3.5
28	2.5	3 1/8	1 1/2	5 7/8	1 3/4	1 11/16	2	1 1/4	8 11/16	1 5/8	6 1/4	1 1/2	4.9
29	3.2	3 3/8	1 5/8	6 1/2	1 7/8	1 7/8	2 3/16	1 3/8	9 5/8	1 3/4	6 15/16	1 5/8	7.3
30	4.2	3 5/8	1 3/4	7 3/16	2 1/16	2 1/32	2 13/32	1 17/32	10 1/2	1 7/8	7 5/8	1 7/8	9.1
31	4.7	4 1/4	2	7 11/16	2 1/4	2 7/32	2 5/8	1 21/32	11 23/32	2 1/16	8 1/2	2 1/8	12.0
32	7.0	4 7/8	2 3/8	8 9/16	2 1/2	2 15/32	2 31/32	1 13/16	13 3/32	2 5/16	9 7/16	2 5/32	17.6
33	8.0	5 1/2	2 3/4	9 9/16	3	2 25/32	3 9/32	1 15/16	14 13/16	2 25/32	10 3/4	2 1/2	23.5
34	9.4	6 3/8	3 1/8	11 7/16	3 3/8	3 7/32	3 13/16	2 7/32	16 29/32	3 5/32	12 5/16	2 13/16	35.1
‡34A	12	6 3/8	3 1/8	11 7/16	3 5/8	3 7/32	3 13/16	2 7/32	16 29/32	3 5/32	12 5/16	2 13/16	35.1
35	16	7	3 1/2	13 7/8	4	4 3/16	4 15/16	2 5/8	19 15/16	3 3/4	14	3 1/16	57.6
‡35A	19	7	3 1/2	13 7/8	4	4 3/16	4 15/16	2 5/8	19 15/16	3 3/4	14	3 1/16	57.6
36	20	8 1/2	4	15 5/8	4 1/2	4 13/16	5 21/32	3 1/16	22 15/16	4 3/16	15 7/8	3 11/16	86.8
‡36A	24	8 1/2	4	15 5/8	4 1/2	4 13/16	5 21/32	3 1/16	22 15/16	4 3/16	15 7/8	3 11/16	86.8

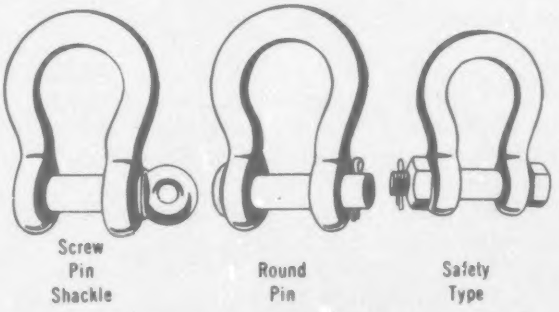

Screw
Pin
Shackle
Round
Pin
Safety
Type

Figure 7-83. Types of Shackles

specification, the shackle has been overstrained and must be destroyed.

Caution: When using any of the above equipment, never under any circumstances exceed the safe working load. When in use all gear should be inspected daily and any parts showing excessive wear or distoriton should be discarded immediately. All hooks should be used with caution and watched closely for excessive wear or any distortion.

WELDED LUGS

Specifications for welded lugs are illustrated in Figure 7-84 and in Tables 7-10 and 7-11.

END ATTACHMENTS FOR WIRE ROPE

Eye Using Wire Rope Clips Wire rope clips may be of the U-Bolt and Saddle type or of the Double Integral Saddle and Bolt type (Safety or Fist Grip). (Figure 7-85).

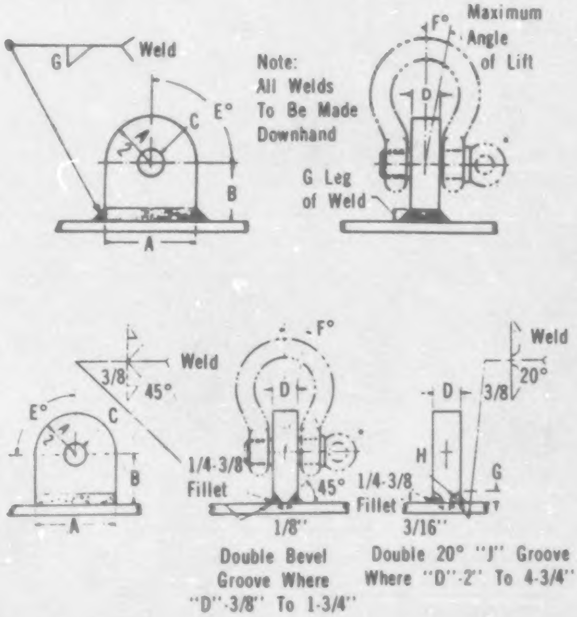
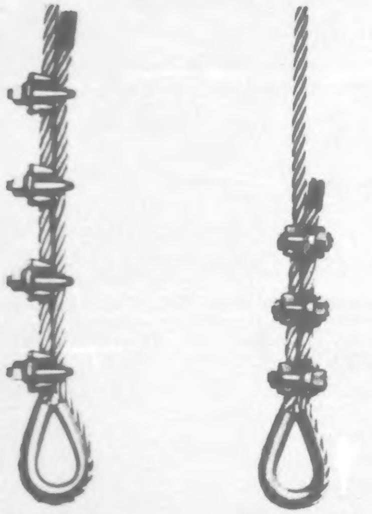

G
Weld
E°
C
B
A
Note:
All Welds
To Be Made
Downhand
F°
Maximum
Angle
of Lift
D
G Leg
of Weld
3/8
45°
Weld
E°
C
B
A
F°
D
1/4-3/8
Fillet
45°
1/8"
Double Bevel
Groove Where
"D"-3/8" To 1-3/4"
Weld
20°
D
3/8
H
G
1/4-3/8
Fillet
3/16"
Double 20° "J" Groove
Where "D"-2" To 4-3/4"

Figure 7-84. Dimensions for Welded Lugs

TABLE 7-10. STANDARDS FOR FILLET WELDED WELD-ON LIFT LUG FOR LIGHT DUTY USE

Safe Load Tons	A	B	C	D	Load Angle		G
					E°	F° Max.	
1/3	1/4	7/8	3/8	3/8	0° to 90°	20°	3/8
1/2	1 3/4	1 1/8	7/16	3/8	"	"	3/8
3/4	2	1 1/4	1/2	1/2	"	"	1/2
1	2	1 1/4	5/8	5/8	"	"	1/2
1 1/2	2 1/4	1 3/8	3/4	3/4	"	"	1/2
2	2 1/2	1 1/2	7/8	7/8	"	"	1/2
3	3	1 5/8	1	1	"	"	1/2
4	3 1/2	2	1 1/8	1 1/4	"	"	1/2
5 1/2	4	2 1/8	1 1/4	1 1/2	"	"	1/2
6 1/2	4 1/4	2 1/4	1 3/8	1 1/2	"	"	3/4
8	4 3/4	2 1/2	1 1/2	1 3/4	"	"	3/4
10	5	2 3/4	1 5/8	2	"	"	3/4
12	5 1/2	2 7/8	1 3/4	2 1/4	"	"	3/4
16	6 3/4	3 1/4	2 1/4	2 1/4	"	"	7/8
21	7 1/2	3 3/4	2 1/2	3	"	"	7/8
27	8 1/4	4 1/4	2 3/4	3 1/2	"	"	1
34	9	4 1/4	3	4	"	"	1
40	9 3/4	4 1/4	3 1/4	4 1/4	"	"	1
50	10 1/2	4 3/4	3 1/2	4 3/4	"	"	1



U-Bolt and Saddle Clip   Fist Grip Clip

Figure 7-85. Clips For Wire Rope

When applied with proper care, following the regulations for number and spacing of clips, the formed eye will have 80% of the rated strength of the rope.

Never use fewer than the recommended number of clips and turn back the correct amount of rope for dead ending to permit proper spacing of the clips. (See Table 7-12.) The use of a thimble in the loop will prevent rope wear in the eye and provide a safer connection.

Application of Rope Clips U-bolt clips **must** be attached so the "U" part of the clip is **over the dead end** of the rope as shown in Figure 7-86.

Step 1. Apply first clip one clamp diameter from dead end of wire rope. Tighten nuts.

Step 2. Apply second clip nearest thimble. Do not tighten nuts.

Step 3. Apply all other clips leaving equal space between each clip.

Step 4. Take up rope slack and tighten all nuts evenly on all clips.

Step 5. Inspect fastenings periodically. When load is placed on rope it will stretch and decrease in diameter. Tighten nuts to compensate.

TABLE 7-11. STANDARDS FOR GROOVE WELDED WELD-ON LIFT LUG FOR HEAVY DUTY USE

Safe Load Tons	A	B	C	D	Load Angle		G	H RAD
					E°	F° Max.		
1/3	1/4	7/8	3/8	3/8	0° to 90°	15°		
1/2	1 3/4	1 1/8	7/16	3/8	''	15°		
3/4	2	1 1/4	1/2	1/2	''	15°		
1	2	1 1/4	5/8	5/8	''	15°		
1 1/2	2 1/4	1 3/8	3/4	3/4	''	20°		
2	2 1/2	1 1/2	7/8	7/8	''	20°		
3	3	1 5/8	1	1	''	20°		
4	3 1/2	2	1 1/8	1 1/4	''	20°		
5 1/2	4	2 1/8	1 1/4	1 1/2	''	20°		
6 1/2	4 1/4	2 1/4	1 3/8	1 1/2	''	20°		
8	4 3/4	2 1/2	1 1/2	1 3/4	''	20°		
10	5	2 3/4	1 5/8	2	''	20°	3/4	1/2
12	5 1/2	2 7/8	1 3/4	2 1/4	''	20°	3/4	1/2
16	6 3/4	3 1/4	2 1/4	2 1/4	''	20°	3/4	1/2
21	7 1/2	3 3/4	2 1/2	3	''	20°	7/8	1/2
27	8 1/4	4 1/4	2 3/4	3 1/2	''	20°	1	1/2
34	9	4 1/4	3	4	''	20°	1 1/8	1/2
40	9 3/4	4 1/4	3 1/4	4 1/4	''	20°	1 1/8	1/2
50	10 1/2	4 3/4	3 1/2	4 3/4	''	20°	1 1/4	1/2

TABLE 7-12. SPECIFICATIONS FOR ATTACHING WIRE ROPE CLIPS

	U-Bolt and Saddle Type			Integral Saddle and Bolt Type		
Rope Diam. Inches	Minimum No. of Clips	Amount of Rope to turn back in inches from Thimble	Torque in Lbs. Foot	Minimum No. of Clips	Amount of Rope to turn back in inches from Thimble	Torque in Lbs. Foot
1/4	2	4-3/4	15	2	3-1/4	30
5/16	2	5-1/2	30	2	4	30
3/8	2	6-1/4	45	2	5	45
7/16	2	6-3/4	65	2	5-3/4	65
1/2	3	11	65	2	6-1/2	65
9/16	3	11-1/4	95	3	7-1/4	130
5/8	3	12	95	3	8	130
3/4	4	18	130	3	14	130
7/8	4	21-1/2	225	4	23	225
1	4	21	225	4	26	225
1-1/8	5	28	225	4	29	225
1-1/4	5	30	360	5	40	360

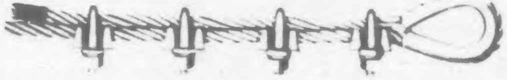


Figure 7-86. Applying U-Bolt Clips

Wedge Socket Wedge sockets are intended for "on the job" attachment and for quick rope replacement. Efficiencies will range from 80% to 90% of rated rope strength. These are available in both open and closed types (Figure 7-87).

Application of Wedge Socket The wedge socket must be applied so that the line of stress follows the **live** portion of the rope (Figure 7-88).

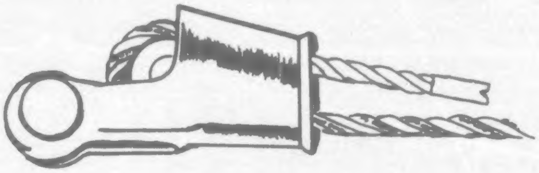
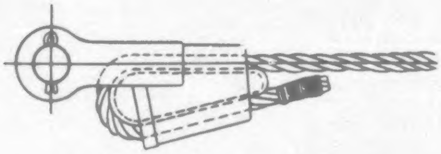
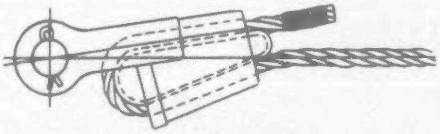


Figure 7-87. Wedge Socket (Open Type)



Right



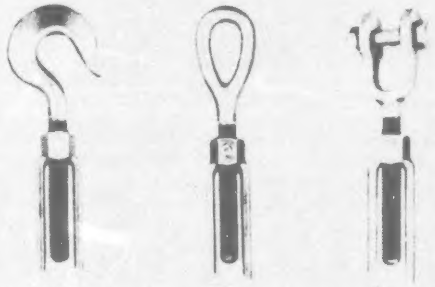
Wrong

Figure 7-88. Applying a Wedge Socket

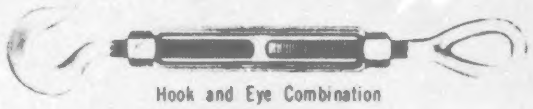
TURNBUCKLES

A turnbuckle is a device used to tighten or loosen a stress on a rope by using right and left handed threads at opposite ends of a matching threaded centre piece. It is used where precise load balancing is required or as a temporary measure on offset loads.

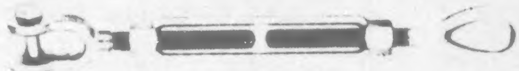
Turnbuckles used in rigging should be steel drop forgings. They are available with a variety of end fittings or combinations of fittings (Figure 7-89).



Hook Eye Jaw



Hook and Eye Combination



Jaw and Eye Combination

Figure 7-89. Types of Turnbuckles

Using Turnbuckles:

When using turnbuckles with multi-leg slings, the following guidelines must be observed:

1. No more than one turnbuckle per leg should be used.
2. The angle of the leg at the horizontal should never be less than 30°.
3. The turnbuckle must be of sufficient size and strength to support the entire load since each leg of a two-leg sling at 30° carries tension equal to the full load.

General Precautions:

1. Welding to repair damage on a turnbuckle is not permitted.
2. Never turn turnbuckles with long levers such as bars or pipes.
3. The maximum torque applied to turn a turnbuckle should be equal to that required to tighten a bolt of comparable size.
4. Avoid shockloading when using turnbuckles.
5. Turnbuckles must be free from contact with any other stationary object when supporting a load.
6. Turnbuckles must be secured to prevent unscrewing under load tension; threaded portions must be fully engaged.

Inspection and Assessment:

1. If a turnbuckle does not turn easily on the threads, this indicates overloading. Replace the turnbuckle by one of adequate size.
2. Turnbuckles should be inspected for:
   a) Nicks in the body
   b) Signs of abuse or overloading
   c) Corrosion
   d) Wear or distortion of jaws, hooks or eyes
   e) Distortion of male and female threads
   f) Straightness of the rod.
3. Refer to Table 7-13 to determine safe working loads for turnbuckles.

TABLE 7-13. SAFE WORKING LOADS FOR TURNBUCKLES

Stock Diameter of End Fitting (inches)	Safe Working Load of Turnbuckle having any combination of jaw, or eye end fittings (pounds)	Safe Working Load of Turnbuckle having hook end fitting (pounds)
1/4	500	400
5/16	800	700
3/8	1,200	1,000
1/2	2,200	1,500
5/8	3,500	2,250
3/4	5,200	3,000
7/8	7,200	4,000
1	10,000	5,000
1 1/4	15,200	5,000
1 1/2	21,400	7,500
1 3/4	28,000	not applicable
2	37,000	
2 1/2	60,000	
2 3/4	75,000	

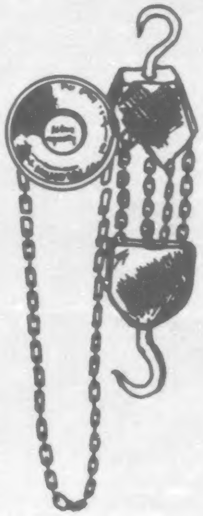


Figure 7-90. Chain Fall — Spur-Gear Hoist

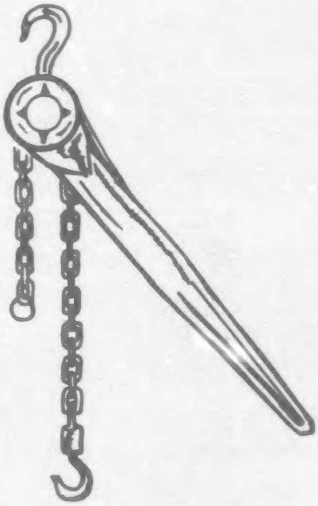


Figure 7-91. Come Along Hoist

CHAIN FALLS

The chain fall or chain hoist (Figure 7-90) is a dependable and economical device for lifting loads. The most commonly used chain fall is the spur-geared hoist. This hoist uses an endless chain to drive a pocketed sheave. This sheave in turn drives a gear reduction unit that is fitted with a second chain, the load chain. A brake is built into the gear box that engages when the hoisting or lowering action on the hand chain ceases. The brake disengages when the hand chain is operated.

COME ALONGS

The come along (Figure 7-91) is a type of chain operated hoist for raising and lowering loads as well as pulling loads horizontally. A ratchet operated by a lever drives the gear reduction unit to power the load chain.

TIRFOR JACKS

The tirfor jack (Figure 7-92) is a hand operated pulling or lifting device with an unlimited amount of rope travel. It operates by a direct pull on the rope, the pull being applied by two pairs of self-energizing, smooth jaws. These exert a grip on the rope in proportion to the load being lifted or pulled. The initial pressure causing the jaws to grip the rope starting the self-energizing action is derived from springs that give an initial pressure of about 120 lb. Two levers operate

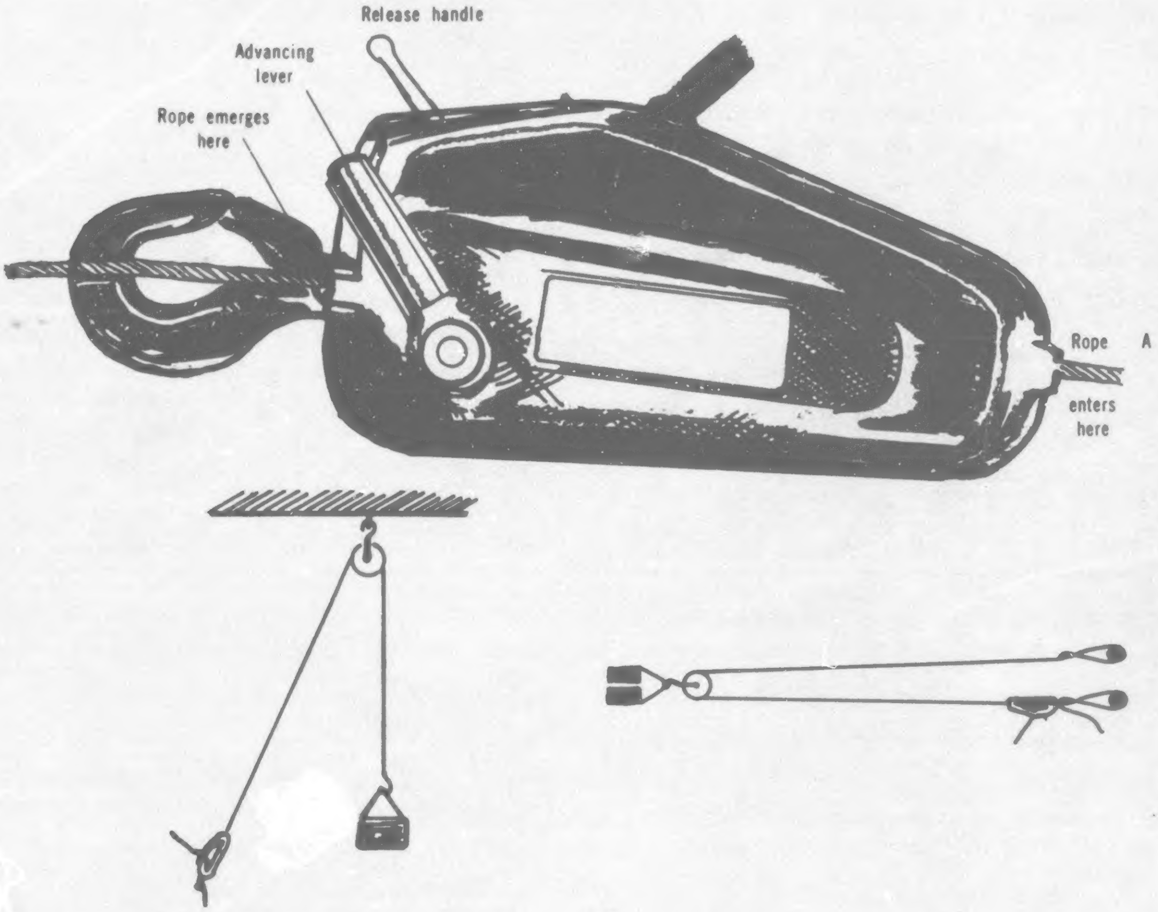


Figure 7-92. Tirfor Jack

these jaws which provide a forward or backward motion depending on the lever used.

JACKS

Jacks are used to raise or lower heavy loads over short distances. Smaller jacks are often of the screw or ratchet type while larger jacks are usually hydraulic, operated with either a hand or power assisted pump. Jacks are of various types (Figure 7-93).

Advantages of Hydraulic Jacks:

1. Small size relative to lifting capability
2. Ability to raise and lower loads precisely
3. Several jacks can be connected to one pump so that loads can be lifted with uniform tension on each jack.

Lever jacks with foot lift (sometimes called a railroad jack or track) are designed to lift loads from a low position. They are used for lifting rails or for raising a tank float from ground level for placing shims under it. The steam boat ratchet is capable of pulling loads together or pushing them apart.

BEAM CLAMPS

A beam clamp is a stationary device that permits safe, easy suspension of hoists from beams or girders, eliminating the use of nuts, bolts, shackles, slings. Figure 7-94 illustrate beam clamps.

Guidelines for Safe Use

1. Obtain approval before applying a beam clamp to any structural member to ensure that the member is capable of supporting the load being raised.
2. The clamp must fit the beam and be fastened securely to i

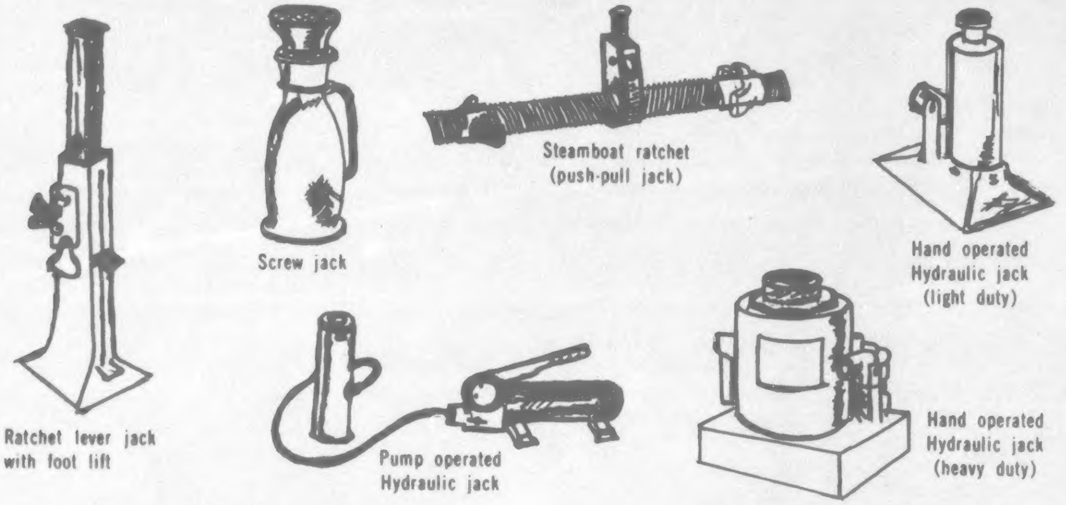

Ratchet lever jack
with foot lift
Screw jack
Steamboat ratchet
(push-pull jack)
Hand operated
Hydraulic jack
(light duty)
Pump operated
Hydraulic jack
Hand operated
Hydraulic jack
(heavy duty)

Figure 7-93. Types of Jacks

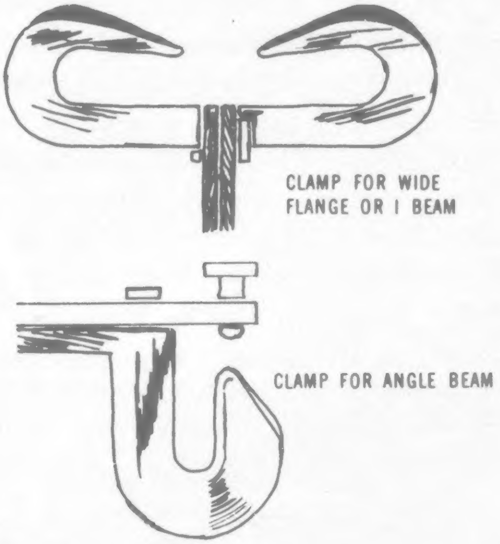

CLAMP FOR WIDE
FLANGE OR I BEAM
CLAMP FOR ANGLE BEAM

Figure 7-94. Beam Clamps

3. The clamp must be adequate to support the load being raised.
4. Beam clamp capacity ratings are based on **straight lifts only.** Angle lifts will place the beam flange under multiple stresses and the beam clamp under a point of load concentration that is liable to exceed design capacity.
5. Never use plate grips, tongs, girder hooks, pipe clamps, etc. as substitutes for beam clamps.
6. Use a shackle to attach rigging to a beam clamp. Never place a hoist hook directly into the lifting eye of a beam clamp.

BEAM TROLLEYS

A beam trolley serves the same purpose as a beam clamp with the added advantage of being moveable along the beam by means of a wheel assembly that rides along both flanges of the beam. The wheel system may be designed for push travel or geared travel. Some models are manufactured specifically for straight lift while others are provided with a flexible lug that will permit a side pull. (See Figure 7-95.)

Procedure for Mounting

Step 1. The bolt and nut arrangement connecting the wheels must be separated.

Step 2. The wheels are set on the beam flanges.

Step 3. The bolt and nut assembly is secured.

PLATE CLAMPS

Plate clamps (Figure 7-96) are rigging devices with a serrated jaw designed to grip pieces of plate for hoisting. Plate clamps may be locking or non-locking; however, locking grips are recommended for maximum safety. **Plate clamps are designed to grip only one plate for each hoist.**

SPREADER BEAMS

The spreader beam (Figure 7-97) also known as a spreader bar or rocker beam is most commonly used to support long or flimsy loads during lifting. The load cannot tip, slide or bend because of the support provided at two or more points along the load (Figure 7-98).

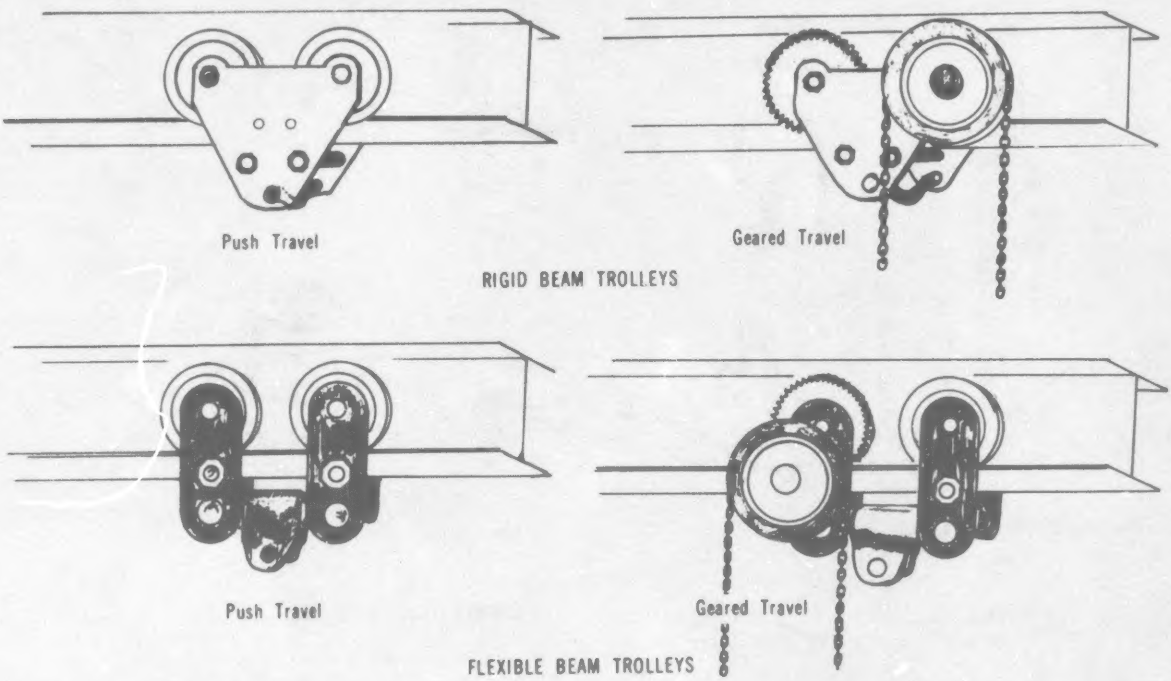

Push Travel
Geared Travel
RIGID BEAM TROLLEYS
Push Travel
Geared Travel
FLEXIBLE BEAM TROLLEYS

Figure 7-95. Beam Trolleys

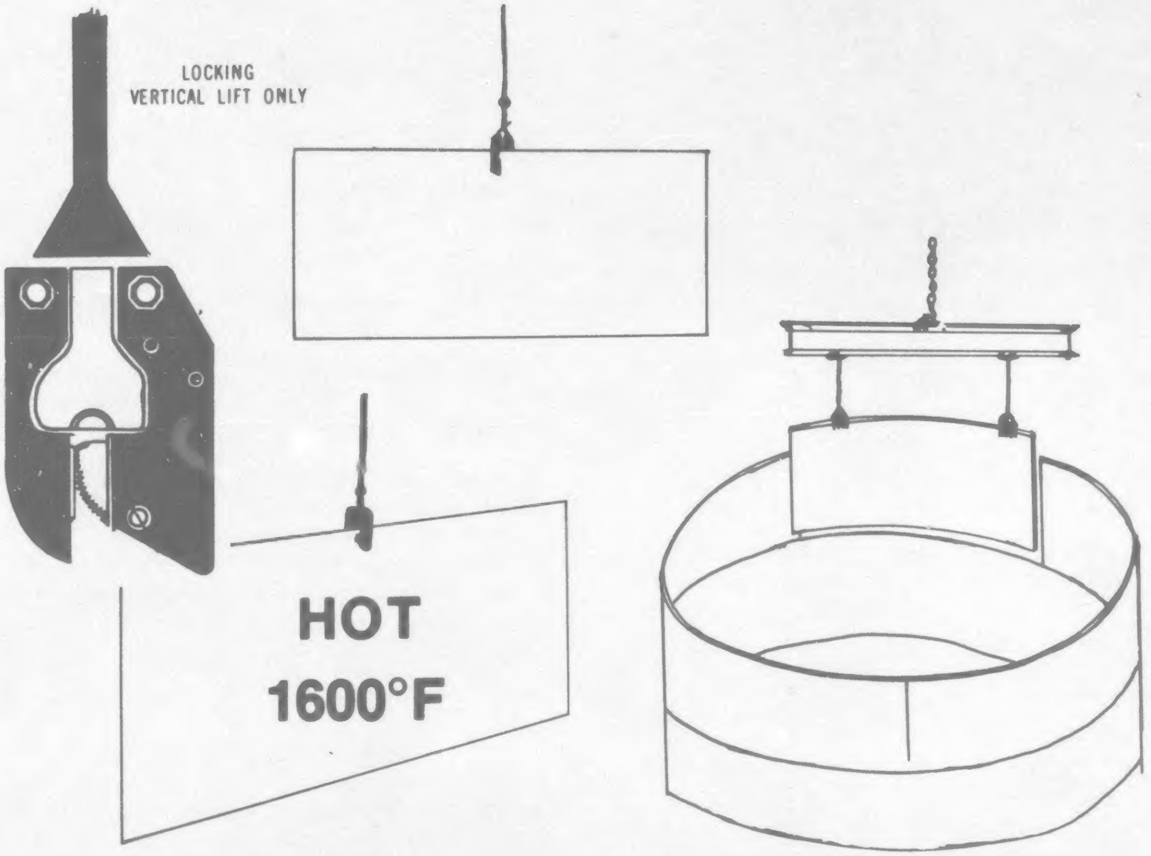

LOCKING
VERTICAL LIFT ONLY
HOT
1600°F

Figure 7-96. Uses of Plate Clamps

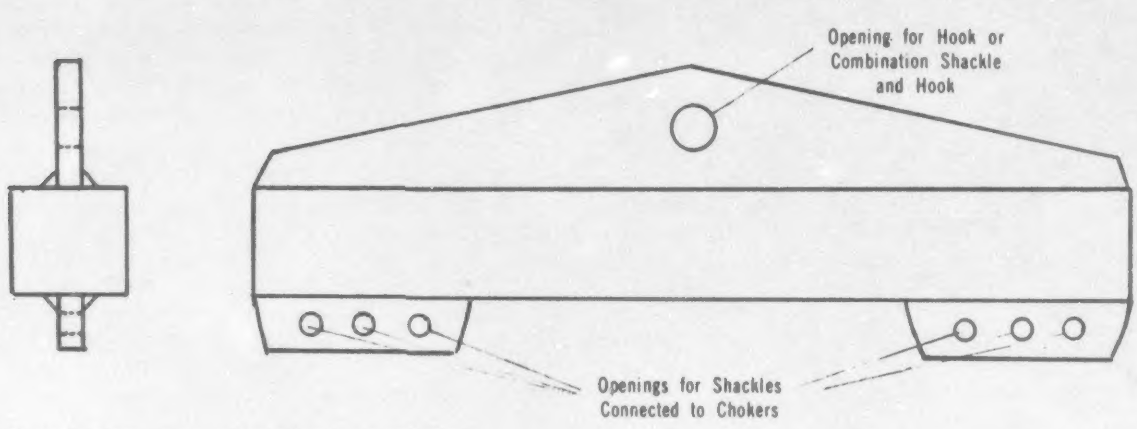

Opening for Hook or Combination Shackle and Hook
Openings for Shackles Connected to Chokers

Figure 7-97. Spreader Beam or Bar

7/1

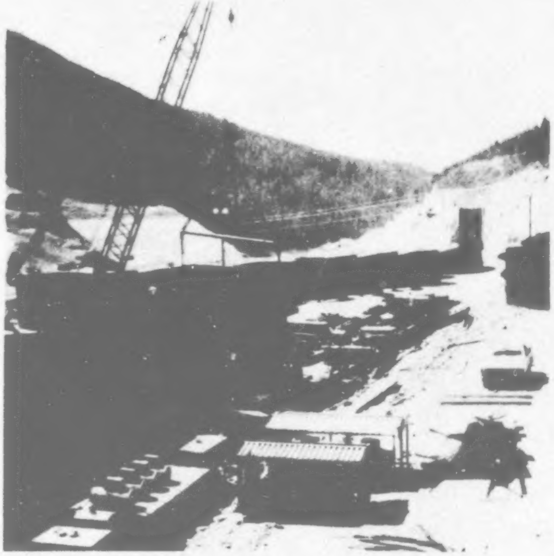


Figure 7-98. Spreader Beam in Use

SKIDS, ROLLERS, CRIBBING AND JACKS

It is not always feasible to hang rigging or use cranes to move heavy objects such as vessels where, for example, overhead wiring or piping limit the work space. Under these circumstances an arrangement of skids, rollers, cribbing and jacks can provide a safe means of transporting and/or raising large objects.

Timber skids can be set out longitudinally to distribute the weight of the vessel over a larger area. The skids also serve to make a smooth surface over which the vessel may be moved or to make a runway if rollers are used. The angle of incline of the skids should be kept as low as possible to prevent the vessel from "running away" or getting out of control. If any incline is involved, it is advisable to use a tugger or a tirfor jack as a holdback.

Rollers made of pipe or, less frequently, hardwood provide a rolling platform over the skids. The rollers must extend beyond the outside dimensions of the vessel. To ensure continuous support for the rollers along the moving distance, the skid joints should butt securely together or the ends be arranged in a side by side overlap. Skid joints should also be staggered so that the rollers pass over only one joint at a time.

To move the vessel, four or five rollers are positioned underneath and several additional rollers placed ahead. As the vessel rolls forwards, the rollers left behind are moved in position in front of it. If the moving path involves a turn, the skid timbers must be positioned to describe the turn angle in stages. As the vessel approaches the turn, its course can be redirected by knocking the leading rollers toward the required angle.

Cribbing is a layered arrangement of uniform sized, clean blocking timbers that distributes the weight of the vessel safely on the crib platform. The blocking is cribbed in alternate directions at each level, either tightly packed or spaced at even intervals, depending upon the requirements of the vessel weight. Where the cribbing is spaced, all layers of blocking must be in a direct vertical line with other members cribbed in the same direction in the system. The foundation for cribbing must be solid and level.

Cribbing may be required to provide a level, stable platform for a load that cannot be placed directly on rollers. It is also used to raise loads in stages using jacks. The raising procedure is as follows:

Step 1. Using jacks on a stable footing, raise the load to the maximum stable height.

Step 2. Place one or more rows of cribbing under the load and lower the jacks to rest the load onto the crib platform.

Step 3. Set the jacks on blocking and raise the load further, adding more rows of cribbing under the load. Repeat the stepwise jacking and cribbing until the required elevation is reached.

The weight of the load and the rated capacities of the jacks determine the number and type of jacks required for the lifting operation.

TACKLE BLOCKS

Like any piece of equipment, tackle blocks cannot be abused or neglected without loss of effectiveness and life. Keep them clean. Remove sheaves occasionally and clean and oil the centre pins. Inspect sheaves for wear, and, store them in a dry place when not in use. Throwing them around carelessly will damage them and is injurious to the rope. With reasonable maintenance. replacements and repairs will be minimal.

In theory the mechanical advantage of a set of tackle blocks is determined by the number of parts of rope at the moving block. For example, with four parts of rope, 1 lb. pull on the lead line should lift 4 lbs. Friction reduces this advantage, however. For practical purposes a loss of approximately 10% occurs for each sheave in manila rope blocks and about 3% for each sheave in wire rope blocks. Each snatch block must be considered an additional sheave.

Many factors govern the selection and use of tackle blocks. Trouble will result from:

1. Overloading
2. Undue friction
3. Angle of pull
4. Condition of rope
5. Sudden application of load
6. Lack of lubricant.

The actual weight of the load to be moved does not necessarily determine the stress on the blocks. Avoid obstruction to the free movement of the load, twisted ropes due to improper reeving or rigging, or improper angle of the tackle in relation to the load. Moving heavy loads over rough ground or on an incline or without rollers or rollers that are too small can introduce severe stresses.

A load suspended on two sets of tackle blocks should be evenly distributed or one set will be subjected to more than its calculated share of the load. Careless preparation may result in any or all of these conditions to such a degree that the load on a set of blocks will greatly exceed the actual weight of the load itself.

TERMINOLOGY OF TACK BLOCK OPERATION

Parts of Line — a term used in multiple reeving for heavy loads. The number of parts of line can easily be determined by counting the number of cables reeved in movable blocks, including the dead end if applicable.

Sheave — a grooved pulley over which the rope passes.

Snatch Block — a block to maintain a straight pull on a line or to decrease the strain on cables.

Mechanical Advantage

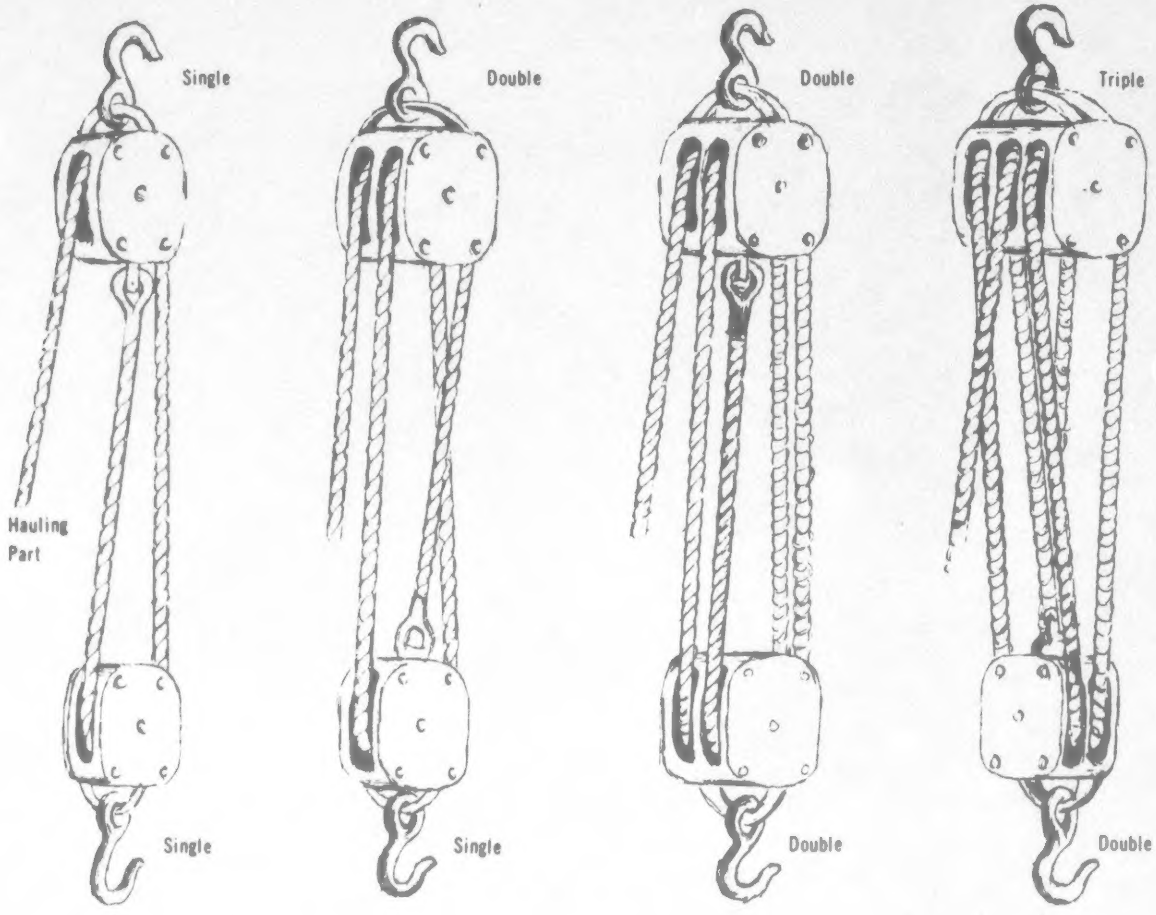
As previously stated, the mechanical advantage of the system is determined by the number of parts of rope at the moving block. (Figures 7-99 and 7-100).

OPERATION OF SHEAVES

As illustrated in Figure 7-101, to raise a load 1′ the lower block must be raised 1′, and in accomplishing this, each working rope must be shortened 1′.

In the example in Figure 7-101, Ropes 1 must be shortened 1′ to raise the load 1′. Assuming that the circumference of each sheave is 1′, Sheave No. 1 must make one revolution to shorten Rope 1; Sheave No. 2 must make one revolution to take up the one foot slack from Rope 1 and one additional revolution to shorten Rope 2; Sheave No. 3 must make two revolutions to take up the 2′ slack from Ropes 1 and 2 and one additional revolution to shorten Rope 3 and so on for each succeeding sheave.

Thus: Rope 1 must travel 1′ on Sheave No. 1
Rope 2 must travel 2′ on Sheave No. 2



1
2 part
Mechanical
Advantage 2-1

2
3 part
Mechanical
Advantage 3-1

3
4 part
Mechanical
Advantage 4-1

4
5 part
Mechanical
Advantage 5-1

Figure 7-99. Mechanical Advantage of Tackle Block Systems

Rope 3 must travel 3′ on Sheave No. 3
Rope 4 must travel 4′ on Sheave No. 4
Rope 5 must travel 5′ on Sheave No. 5

Therefore all the sheaves in a set of blocks revolve at different rates of speed. Sheave No. 2 rotates twice as fast as sheave No. 1, Sheave No. 4 four times as fast as Sheave No. 1, etc. Consequently, the sheaves nearest the lead line, rotating at a higher rate of speed, wear out more rapidly.

All sheaves should be kept well oiled when in operation to reduce friction and wear.

REEVING TACKLE BLOCKS

In reeving a pair of tackle blocks one of which has more than two sheaves, the hoisting rope should lead from one of the centre sheaves of the upper block.

When so reeved, the hoisting strain comes on the centre of the blocks and they are prevented from toppling, with consequent injury to the rope by cutting across the edges of the block shell.

To reeve by this method, the two blocks should be placed so that the sheaves in the upper block are at right angles to those in the lower one, as illustrated in Figure 7-102.

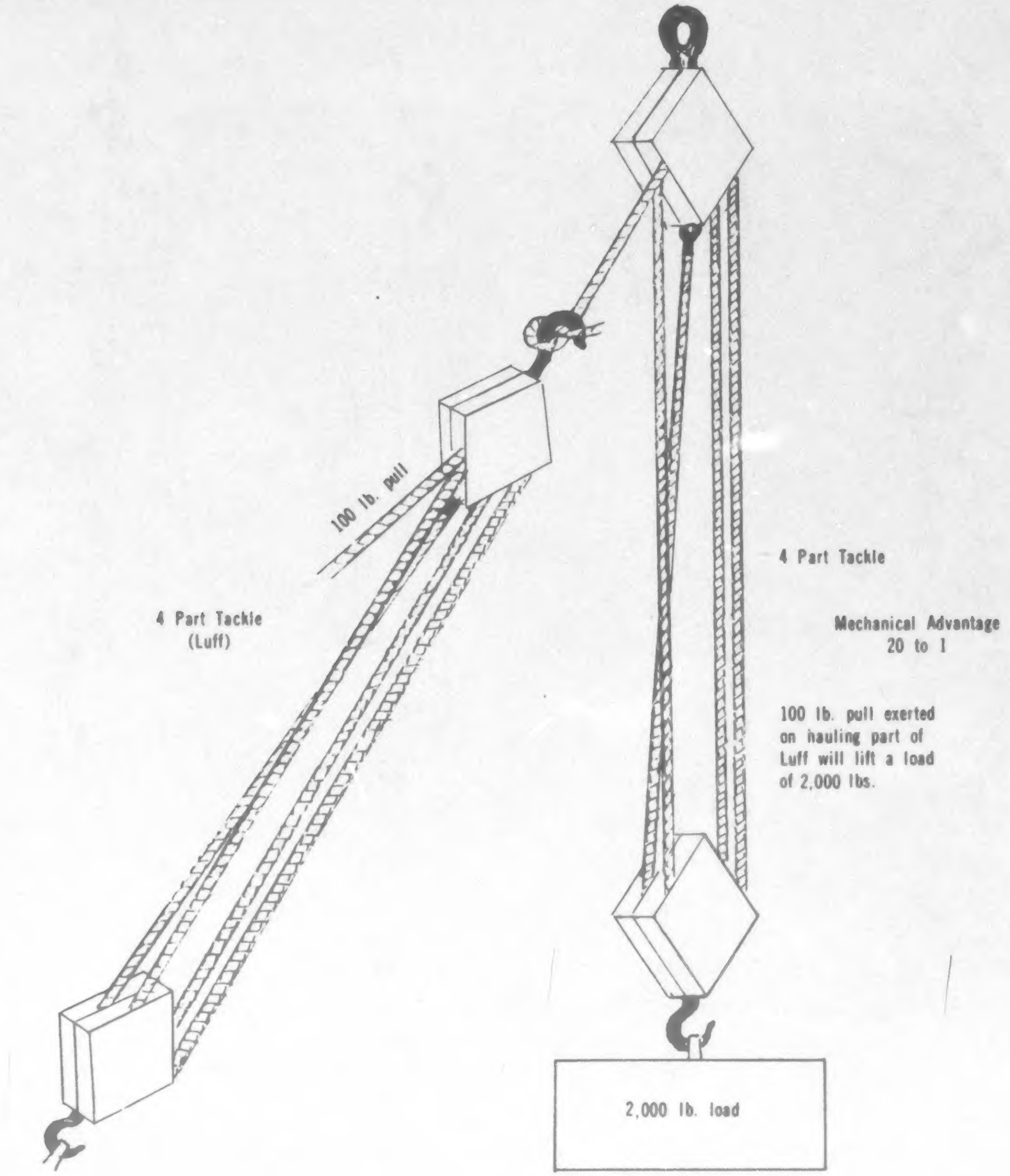

100 lb. pull
4 Part Tackle
(Luff)
4 Part Tackle
Mechanical Advantage
20 to 1
100 lb. pull exerted
on hauling part of
Luff will lift a load
of 2,000 lbs.
2,000 lb. load

Figure 7-100. Compound Tackle (Luff)

General Rules for Reeving

1. Always reeve tackle right-handed.
2. If the number of sheaves in each block is equal, fasten the rope to the becket of the standing block.

   If the number of sheaves is unequal, fasten the rope to the becket of the block with the smaller number of sheaves.
3. To determine the maximum size of fibre rope that can be used to reeve a tackle, divide the length of the shell of the block by 3, which will give the circumference of the rope to be used.

Example:

6" shell divided by 3 = 2 which is the circumference of 5/8" rope.

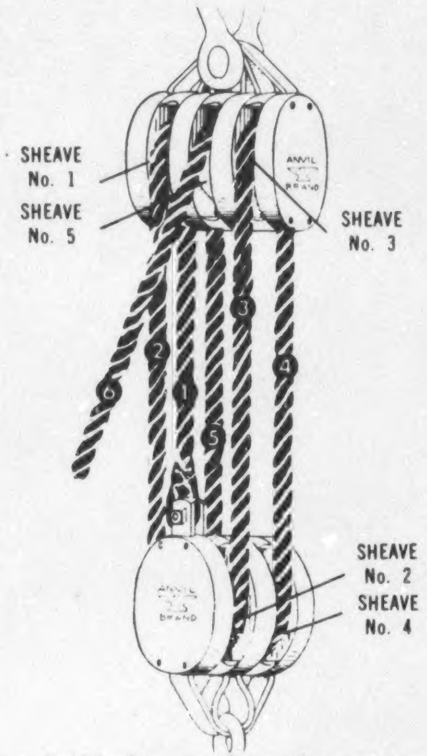

SHEAVE No. 1
SHEAVE No. 5
SHEAVE No. 3
SHEAVE No. 2
SHEAVE No. 4
ANVIL BRAND
1
2
3
4
5
6

Figure 7-101. Sheave Operation

DETERMINING LINE PARTS OR REQUIRED LINE PULL

To help figure the number of parts of line to be used for a given load or the line pull required for a given load, the ratio table is provided with examples of how to use it (Table 7-14).

$$\frac{\text{TOTAL LOAD TO BE LIFTED}}{\text{SINGLE LINE PULL IN POUNDS}} = \text{RATIO}$$

Example 1:

To find the number of parts of line needed when weight of load and single line pull is established.

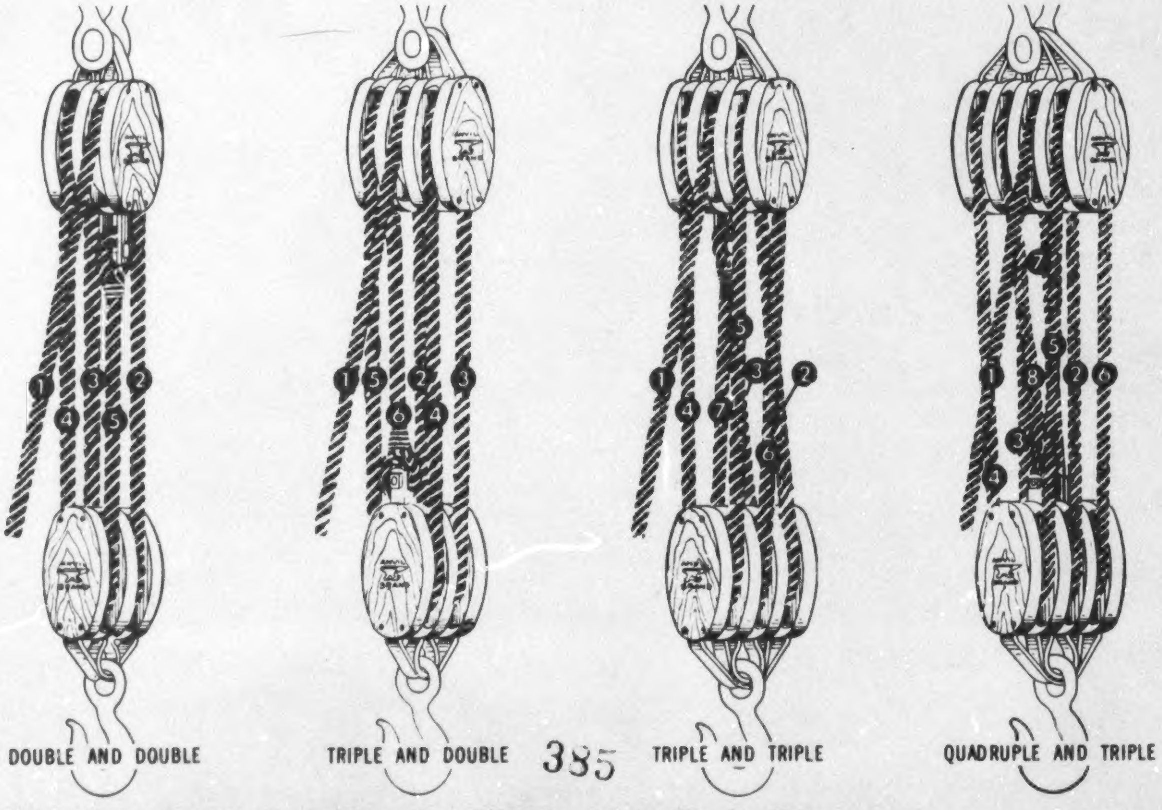
Sample Problem:

$$\frac{\text{72,480 lbs. (load to be lifted)}}{\text{8,000 lbs. (single pull)}} = \text{9.06 RATIO}$$

Refer to ratio 9.06 in table or number nearest to it, then check column under heading "Number of Parts of Line" — 12 parts of line to be used for this load.

Example 2:

To find single line pull needed when weight of load and number of parts of line are established.


1
3
2
4
5
1
5
2
3
6
4
1
5
3
2
4
7
6
7
1
5
8
2
6
3
4
ANVIL BRAND

DOUBLE AND DOUBLE TRIPLE AND DOUBLE TRIPLE AND TRIPLE QUADRUPLE AND TRIPLE

Figure 7-102. Tackle Blocks Placed at Right Angles to One Another

TABLE 7-14. LINE PARTS

Number of Parts of Line	Ratio for Bronze Bushed Sheaves	Ratio for Anti Friction Bearing Sheaves
1	96	98
2	1.87	1.94
3	2.75	2.88
4	3.59	3.81
5	4.39	4.71
6	5.16	5.60
7	5.90	6.47
8	6.60	7.32
9	7.27	8.16
10	7.91	8.98
11	8.52	9.79
12	9.11	10.6
13	9.68	11.4
14	10.2	12.1
15	10.7	12.9
16	11.2	13.6
17	11.7	14.3
18	12.2	15.0
19	12.6	15.7
20	13.0	16.4
21	13.4	17.0
22	13.8	17.7
23	14.2	18.3
24	14.5	18.9

Sample Problem:

68,000 lbs. (load to be lifted)
6,60 (ratio of 8 part line)
= 10,300 lbs. (single line pull)

10,300 lbs. single line pull required to lift this load on 8 parts of line.

LOADS ON SNATCH BLOCKS

The stress on a snatch block varies with the degree of angle between the lead and load lines. When the two lines are parallel, 1,000 lbs. on the lead line results in a load of 2,000 lbs. on the hook. As the angle between the lines increases, the stress on the hook is reduced as illustrated in Figure 7-103. To determine the stress on a hook, multiply the pull on the lead line by a suitable factor from Table 7-15 adding 10% for friction.

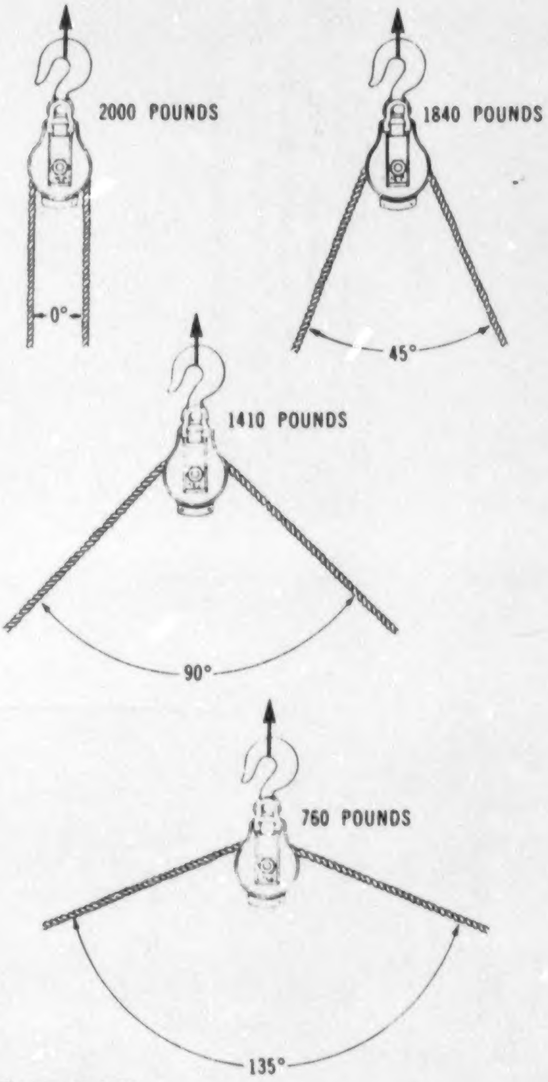


Figure 7-103.

TABLE 7-15. SNATCH BLOCK ANGLE FACTORS

Angle	Factor	Angle	Factor	Angle	Factor	Angle	Factor	Angle	Factor	Angle	Factor
5°	1.998	35°	1.90	65°	1.69	95°	1.35	125°	.92	155°	.43
10°	1.99	40°	1.87	70°	1.64	100°	1.29	130°	.84	160°	.35
15°	1.98	45°	1.84	75°	1.58	105°	1.22	135°	.76	165°	.26
20°	1.97	50°	1.81	80°	1.53	110°	1.15	140°	.68	170°	.17
25°	1.95	55°	1.77	85°	1.47	115°	1.07	145°	.60	175°	.08
30°	1.93	60°	1.73	90°	1.41	120°	1.00	150°	.52	180°	.00

Pressure on Sheave or Pulley Bearings When a rope path is deflected by means of a sheave, pulley or roller, pressure is placed on the bearings. The pressure will vary depending on the angle of deflection of the rope.

Placement of Shackle Block and Hook Block It is good practice to use a shackle block as the upper one of a pair and a hook block as the lower one. A shackle is much stronger than a hook of the same size, and the strain on the upper block is much greater than on the lower one. The lower block supports only the load, while the upper block carries the load as well as the hoisting strain. A hook is more convenient on the lower block because it can be attached to or detached from the load more readily.

RIGGERS RULES OF THUMB

It is much easier to learn a simple formula than to memorize complex tables and graphs.

These "Rules of Thumb" are reasonably accurate and most are on the "safe side" of recognized safety practices. **But, it must be remembered, these formulas are only close estimates and are not intended to replace manufacturer's specifications in critical situations.**

FIBRE LINE

The lay of rope can be determined by running your thumb away from you along the strands in the line. (If strands go to the right, it is a right lay, etc.).

Coil line in the direction of the lay. (E.g., right lay, clockwise, etc.).

Uncoil a new bail counterclockwise to avoid kinds.

Natural Fibre — (Manila)

1. Breaking strength in tons = Dia.^{2} x 4
2. Safe working load in tons = $\frac{\text{Dia.}^2 \times 4}{10}$

   (safety factor = 10)

Synthetic Fibre — (Nylon, Polypropylene)

1. Nylon = Approximately 2½ times the strength of manila.
2. Polypropylene = Approximately 1½ times the strength of manila.

TACKLE SYSTEMS

1. **Friction** in a tackle system = Approximately 8% per sheave @ 180° bend, 4% per sheave @ 90° bend. (For wire rope tackle — approximately 6% for bronze bushed sheaves and 3% for ball bearing sheaves)
2. **A Simple Tackle System** = 1 line and one or more blocks.

   Mechanical advantage = Number of lines on travelling block.
3. **A Compound Tackle System** = Two or more simple tackle systems compounded.

   Mechanical advantage = The M.A. of each system multiplied in series.

WIRE ROPE

(Determine lay, and coil like "Fibre Line")

1. **Lang Lay** — Wire laid up in same direction as strands of rope.

   Regular Lay — Wires layed up in opposite direction as strands of rope.
2. **Wire Core** (I.W.R.C.) is approximately 10% stronger than fibre core.

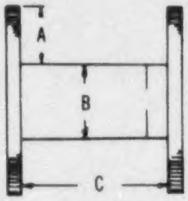
   Galvanzing reduces strength approximately 10%.
3. **Breaking Strength in Tons** = (Dia.)^2 x 40 (For 6 x 19 I.P.S. F.C.)
4. **Safe Working Load in Tons** = (Dia.)^2 x 40 ÷ Safety Factor.
5. **Safety Factors** = Slings = 8
   Non rotating lines = 8
   Cranes and Derricks = 6
   Derrick Guys = 5
   Hoisting Tackle = 5
   Guy Lines = 3.5
6. **Broken Wires** = Unsafe when 4% of total wires in the rope are broken within the length of one rope lay.
7. **Choker Stress** — $\frac{W}{N} \times \frac{L}{V} = T$

   N = Number of Chokers
   W = Weight of load in pounds
   V = Vertical distance in feet
   L = Choker leg length, in feet
   T = Tension, in pounds
8. **Sheaves** — The critical diameter of a sheave is 20 times the diameter of the rope.

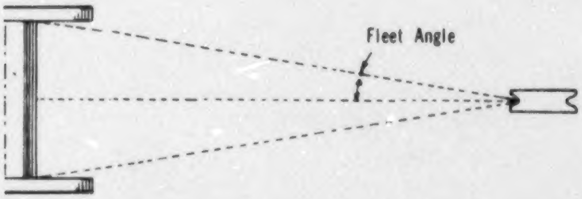
9. **Drums** — For spooling a drum you face the lead block and place the right or left hand, which ever corresponds with the lay of the rope, palm down on the top of the drum for overwind and the bottom of the drum for underwind. The thumb will point to the flange where spooling begins.

10. **Drum Capacity** — in feet =

$$\frac{.2618}{\text{Rope Dia.}^2} \times (A + B) \times A \times C. \text{ (in inches)}$$



11. **Fleet Angle** — Maximum 4° on grooved drums and 2° on smooth drums. The distance to the lead block should never be less than 10 times the width of grooved drums or 20 times the width of smooth drums.



WIRE ROPE ATTACHMENTS — (Safety factor of 5 included)

1. **Crosby Clips**
   Number of clips required — 4 x rope diameter + 1.
   Minimum spacing — 6 x rope diameter.
2. **Hooks** — S.W.L. in tons = $(\text{Dia.})^2$ where hook begins to curve or Diameter of eye in inches squared.
3. **Shackles** — S.W.L. in tons = Diameter of pin in one fourth inches squared and divided by three. (or select shackle pin one-eighth inch larger than choker size.)
4. **Chains** (Alloy Steel) — S.W.L. in tons = chain stock $(\text{Dia.})^2 \times 6$.
5. **Turn Buckles** — S.W.L. in tons = bolt $(\text{Dia.})^2 \times 3$.

ESTIMATING WEIGHT OF STRUCTURAL STEEL: — (One cubic foot = approximately 490 lbs.)

1. **Round Stock** — Approximate weight per lineal foot = $(\text{Dia.})^2 \times \frac{8}{3}$
2. **Plate, Flat Bar, or Square** — Approximate weight per lineal foot = thickness times width $\times \frac{10}{3}$ (All measurements in inches.)

   (Angles, Tees, or Wide Flange Beams can be calculated in the same manner by measuring the legs, or web and flange individually as Flat Bar or Plate.)

SCAFFOLD PLANKS

Two inch planks (2 x 8, 2 x 10, or 2 x 12) of fir or spruce in first class condition can be considered safe to support the weight of an average man for a "Span in Feet" that is equal to, or less than the plank "Width in Inches".

DERRICKS

GUY DERRICK

A guy derrick consists of a mast, a boom pivoted at the foot of the mast, guys and tackle (Figure 7-104). The mast is generally longer than the boom and is mounted on vertical pins at the foot and top so that the assembly of mast and boom may be rotated about a vertical axis. If the guys to the top of the mast clear the end of the boom the derrick can be rotated through a full circle. The mast and boom may be made of timbers or structural steel. Large derricks are made of hollow built up sections generally consisting of four angles and lacing bars forming a truss.

Hoisting tackle is suspended from the end of the boom and tackle is also provided for raising or lowering the boom in a vertical plane. Power is supplied by hand operated or engine driven hoists. The derrick is rotated by a bull wheel located at the base of the mast.

STIFF LEG DERRICK

The mast of the stiff leg derrick is held in the vertical position by two rigid inclined struts connected to the top of the mast (Figure 7-105). The struts are spread apart 60°-90° to provide support in two directions and are attached to sills extending from the bottom of the mast. The mast is mounted on vertical pins at its foot and top as in the case of the guy derrick. The mast and boom can swing through an arc of about 270°. The tackles for hoisting loads and raising the boom are similar to those for the guy derrick. Figure 7-106 illustrates a stiff leg derrick with long sills.

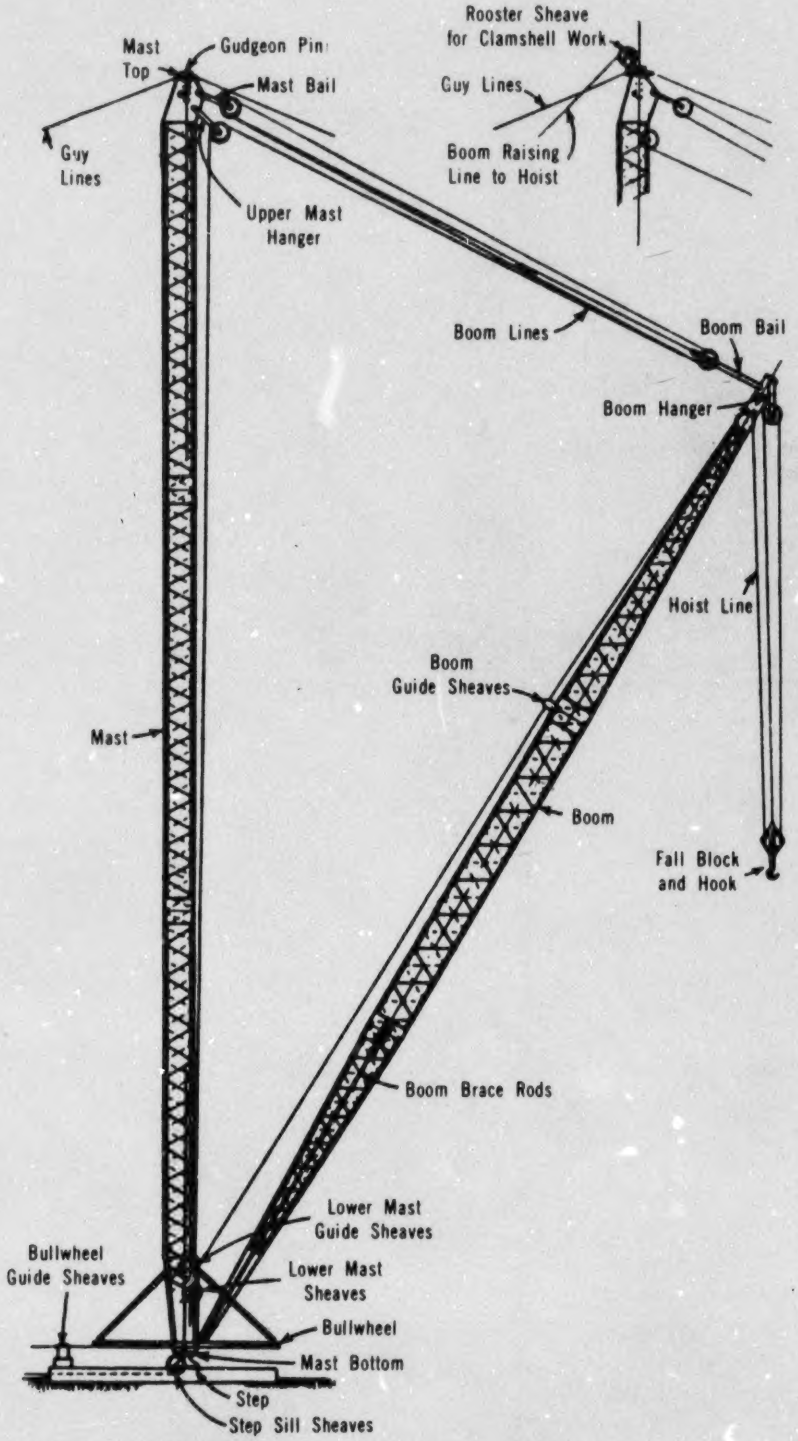

Rooster Sheave
for Clamshell Work
Mast
Top
Gudgeon Pin
Mast Bail
Guy Lines
Guy
Lines
Boom Raising
Line to Hoist
Upper Mast
Hanger
Boom Lines
Boom Bail
Boom Hanger
Hoist Line
Boom
Guide Sheaves
Mast
Boom
Fall Block
and Hook
Boom Brace Rods
Lower Mast
Guide Sheaves
Bullwheel
Guide Sheaves
Lower Mast
Sheaves
Bullwheel
Mast Bottom
Step
Step Sill Sheaves

Figure 7-104. Sections of a Guy Derrick

A stiff leg derrick equipped with a boom is suitable for yard use for unloading and transferring material whenever continuous operations are carried on within reach of its boom. They are sometimes used in multi-story buildings surmounted by towers to hoist materials to the roof of the main building to supply guy derricks mounted on the towers.

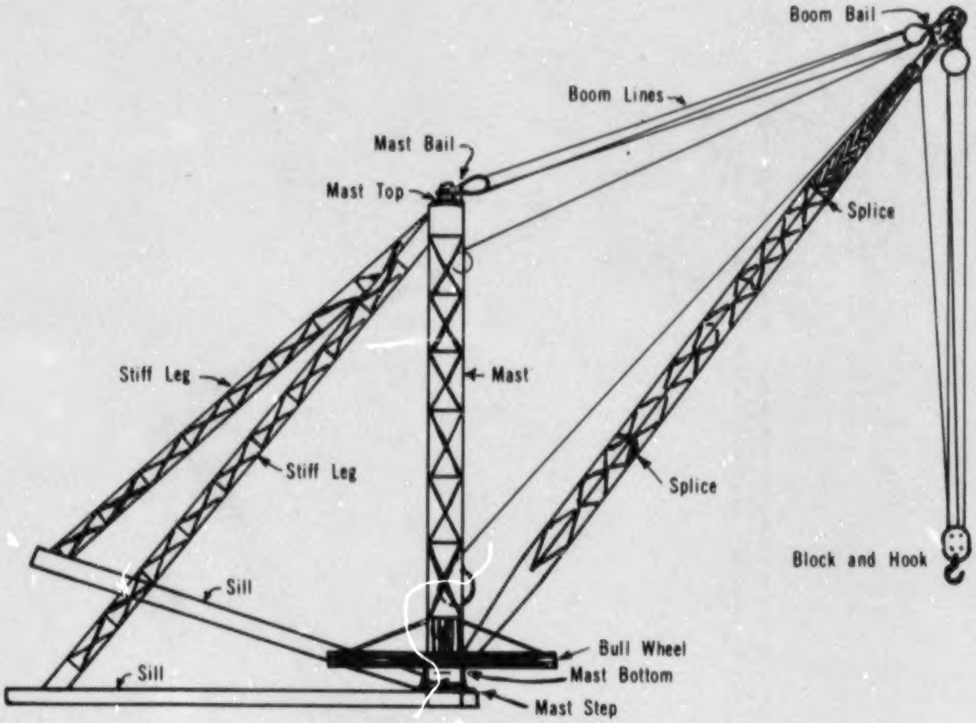

Boom Bail
Boom Lines
Mast Bail
Mast Top
Splice
Stiff Leg
Mast
Stiff Leg
Splice
Block and Hook
Sill
Bull Wheel
Sill
Mast Bottom
Mast Step

Figure 7-105. Stiff Leg Derrick

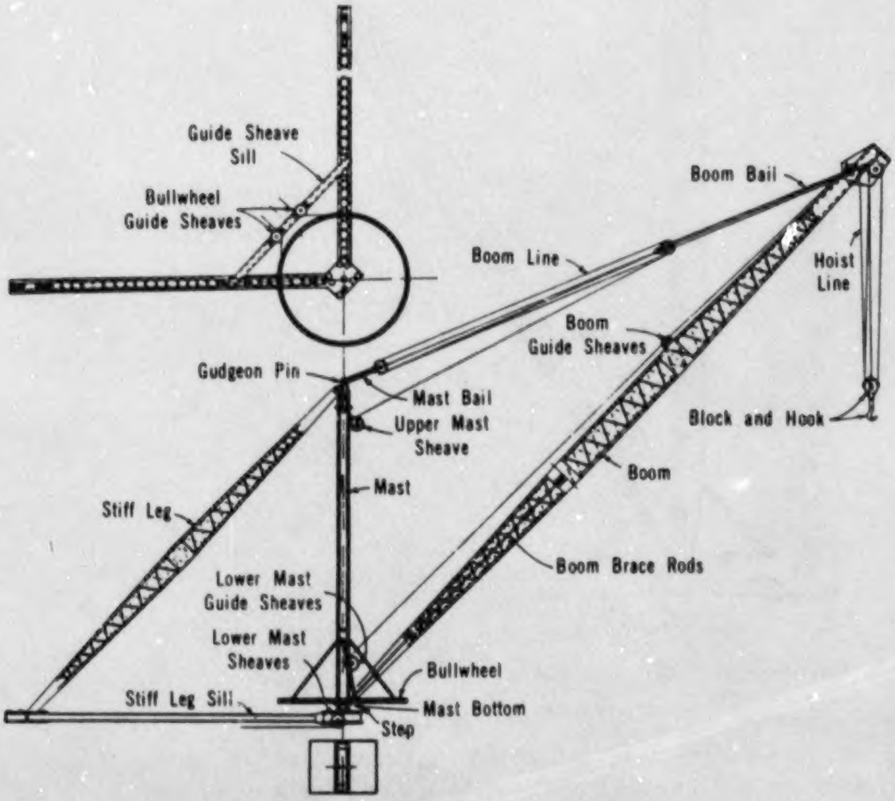

Guide Sheave
Sill
Bullwheel
Guide Sheaves
Boom Bail
Boom Line
Hoist
Line
Boom
Guide Sheaves
Gudgeon Pin
Mast Bail
Upper Mast
Sheave
Block and Hook
Boom
Mast
Stiff Leg
Boom Brace Rods
Lower Mast
Guide Sheaves
Lower Mast
Sheaves
Bullwheel
Stiff Leg Sill
Mast Bottom
Step

Figure 7-106. Section of Stiff Leg Derrick with Long Sills 390

GIN POLE

The gin pole (Figure 7-107) consists of an upright spar guyed at the top to maintain it in a vertical position and is equipped with suitable hoisting tackle. The spar may be of round or square timber, heavy wall pipe, a wide flange beam section or a built up section consisting of angles and lacing bars. The load may be hoisted by hand tackle or by hand or engine driven hoists.

A gin pole is a very handy and versatile piece of equipment for lifting all types of comparatively light loads. To get maximum use out of a gin pole, it should be rigged with a minimum of four guys, with wire rope pendants and manila rope tackles between the pendants and the anchorages and swivel plates top and bottom. These can then be leaned at various angles and turned to lift from all sides.

The gin pole is used mostly for erection work of ease of rigging, moving and operating. It is suitable for raising loads of medium weight to heights of 10′-50′ where a vertical lift is required.

Procedure

Refer to Figure 7-108 for Steps in this procedure.

Step 1. Using any suitable scale, draw a sketch as shown in A.
Line TS represents the guy
Line RS represents the gin pole

Step 2. With a given load of 4,000 lb., let 1/4″ = 1,000 lb. and draw a vertical line VU representing the load (1″ long) as in B.
From U, extend a line UW parallel to TS (from A) to represent the guy, and a line VW parallel to RS (from A) to represent the gin pole

Step 3. To develop C, draw a line VW parallel to, and the same length as VW (from B). Drop a vertical line down from W, and draw the line VX parallel to TR (from A).

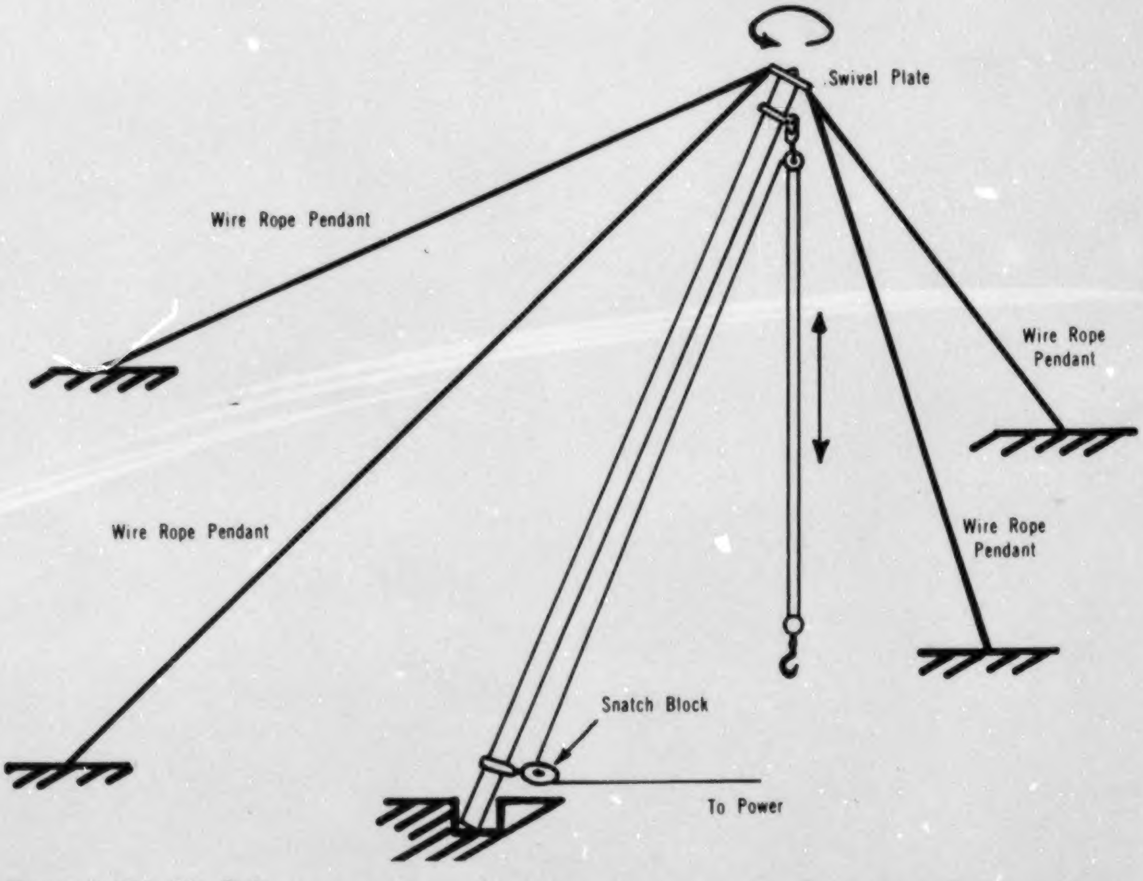


Figure 7-107. Gin Pole

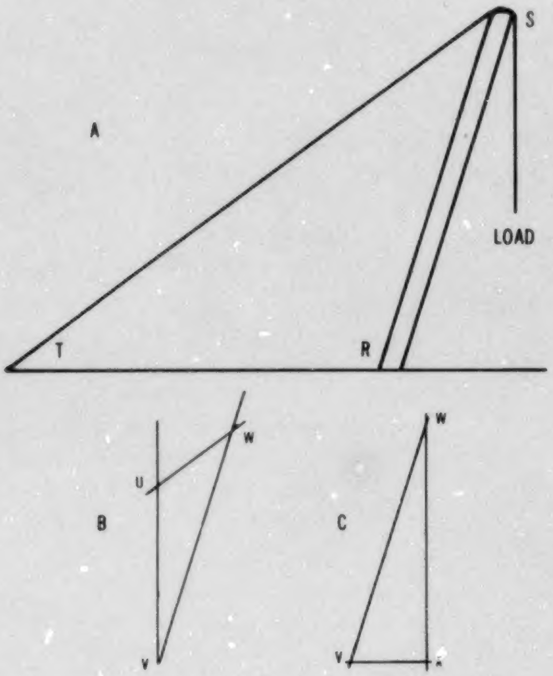


Figure 7-108. Determining the Kick at the Heel of a Gin Pole

Measure the length VX, and, using the scale 1/4" = 1,000 lb., calculate the amount of kick on the pole.

A-FRAME DERRICK

An A-Frame (or Shear Leg) derrick is a versatile hoisting device, requiring only two back guys and one lazy guy in front for support (Figure 7-109).

For light loads, a small A-Frame derrick can be quickly constructed by drilling a hole through two pieces of square timber and bolting through the holes. A wire rope choker is put around the top of the poles with the eye hanging down to attach the block. When a load is suspended from the block, the choker tightens to hold the crossed members more securely.

MOBILE CRANES

Mobile cranes are mechanical lifting devices that can be relocated without disassembly. They may be classified into two main types: 1. those mounted on metal tracks (Figure 7-110) and 2. those mounted on rubber tires (Figure 7-111). Figure 7-112 illustrates the parts of a mobile crane.

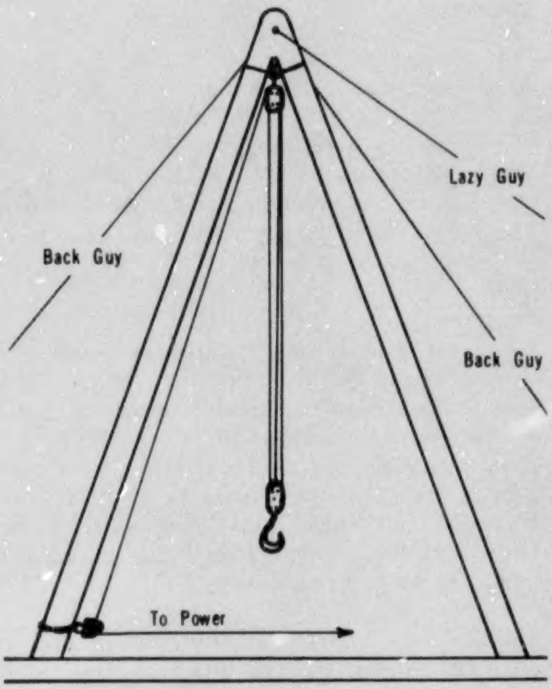


Figure 7-109. A-Frame Derrick

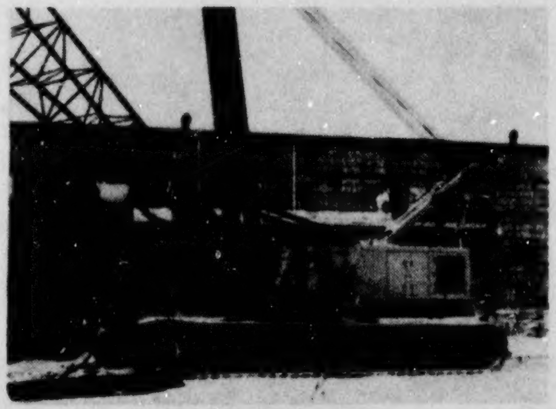


Figure 7-110. Mobile Crane on Tracks

Two types of booms (Figure 7-113) with respect to the capability on the crane are identified:

1. Conventional booms may be lowered, raised or swung sideways, however, the assembled length does not change.
2. Hydraulic booms may be lowered, raised or swung sideways, and the length can be extended or retracted without reassembly.

The choice of boom is based upon the functional requirements of the crane for the job. Where

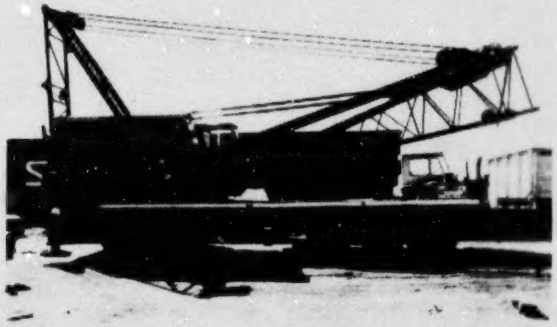


Figure 7-111. Mobile Crane on Tires

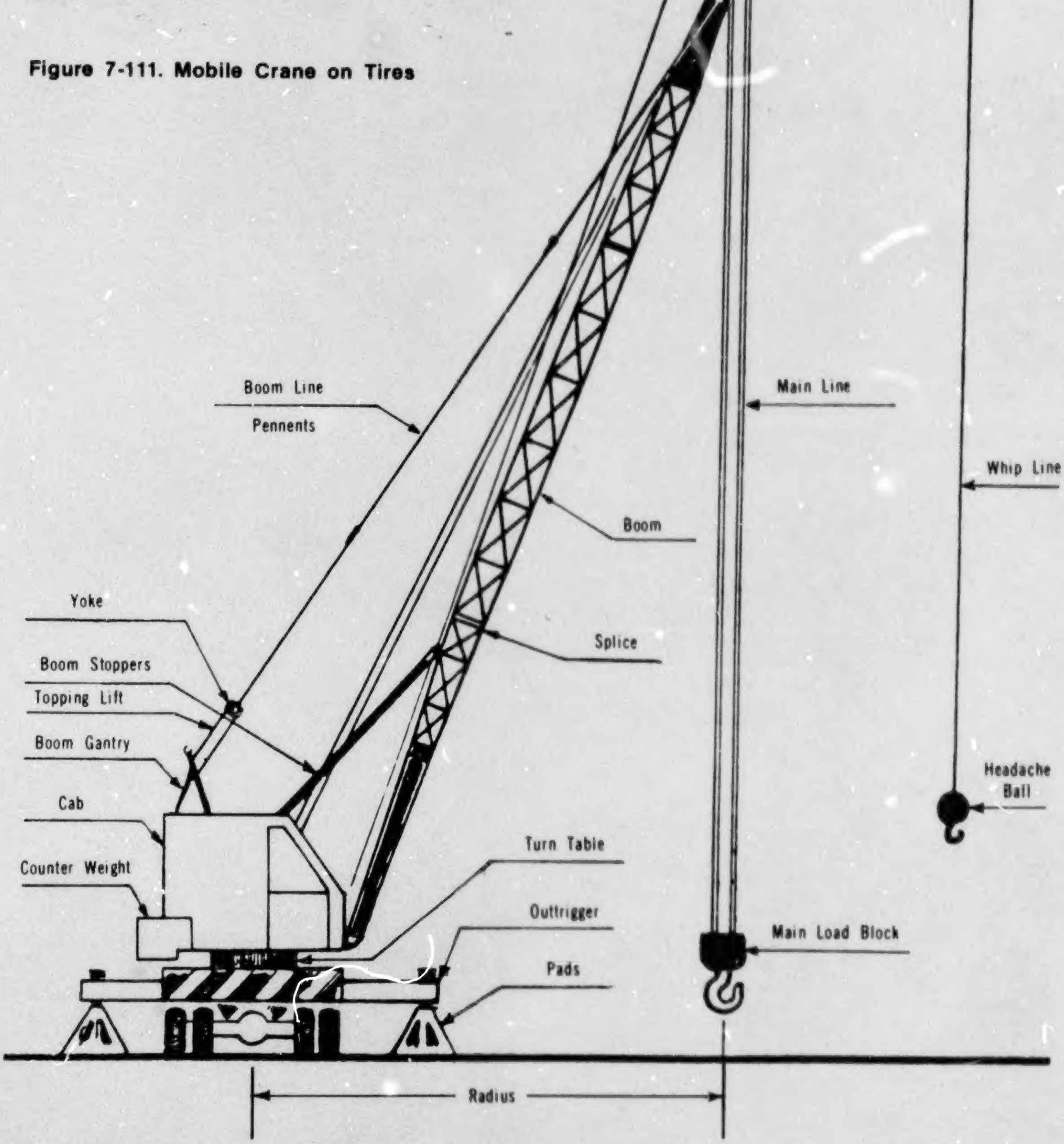
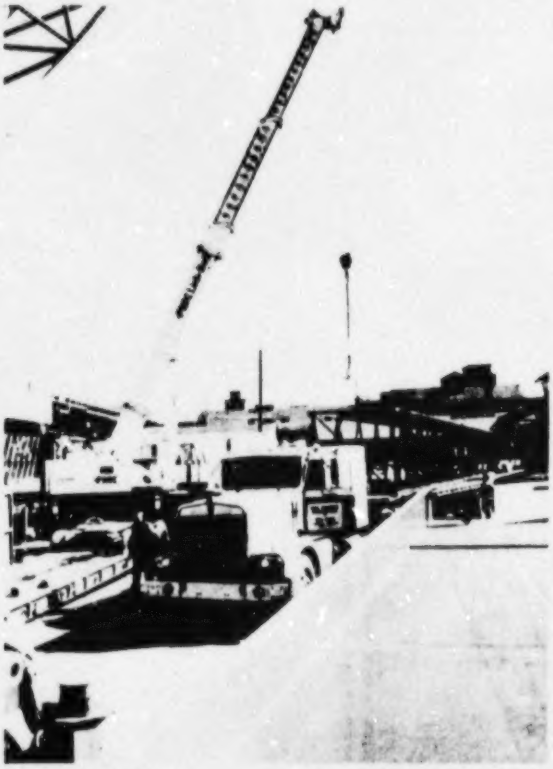

Jib
Gantry
Jib Lines
Jib
Boom Line
Pennents
Main Line
Whip Line
Boom
Yoke
Splice
Boom Stoppers
Topping Lift
Boom Gantry
Headache
Ball
Cab
Turn Table
Counter Weight
Outtrigger
Main Load Block
Pads
Radius

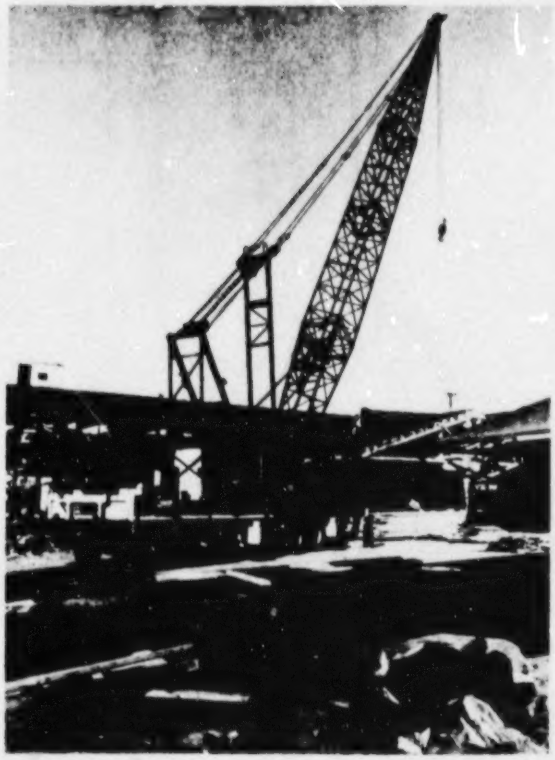
Figure 7-112. Parts of a Mobile Crane

heavy or exceptionally high lifts are involved, the conventional boom is used. Where the loads are lighter and more set-ups are required for shorter lifts, the hydraulic boom is more suitable.

When an hydraulic mobile crane is delivered to a jobsite, it is almost immediately ready to go into operation (Figure 7-114). It need only be "spot-



HYDRAULIC BOOM



CONVENTIONAL BOOM

Figure 7-113. Crane Booms

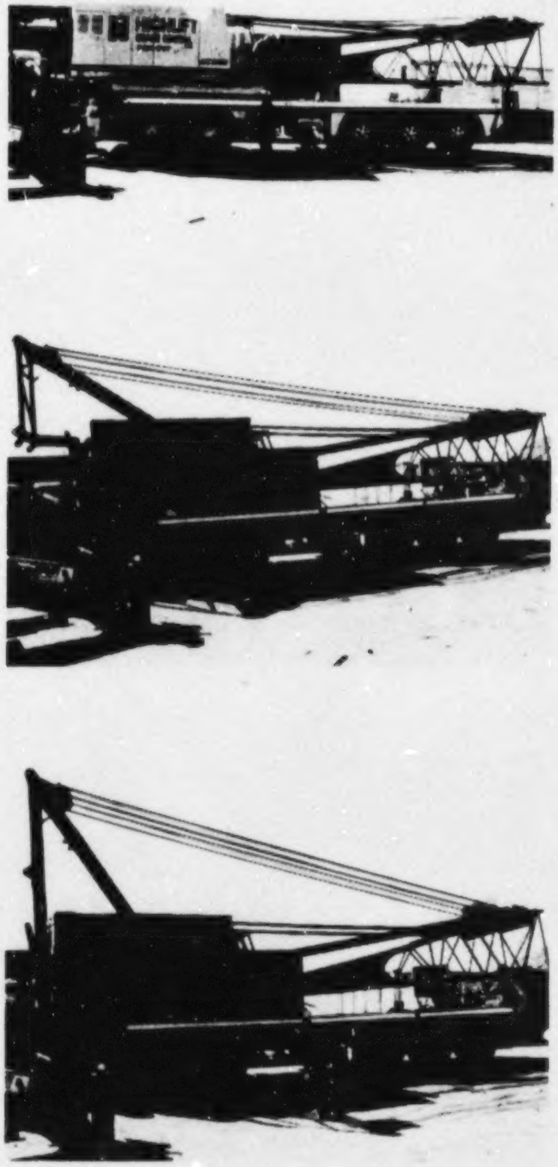


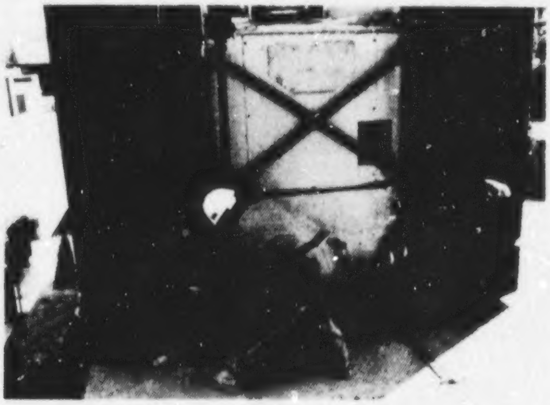
Figure 7-114. Crane Arriving on The Job, Raising Gantry to Operating Position

ted," the outriggers extended and the crane levelled, before the first load can be lifted.

BOOM ASSEMBLY

On the other hand, a conventional type mobile crane arrives in separate units. The boom components, outriggers, counterweights and main block must be offloaded (usually assisted by an on-site hydraulic crane), and assembled on the job location. Crane assembly at the jobsite falls within the jurisdiction of the erection Boilermaker.

Figures 7-114 to 7-118 illustrate a typical sequence in the assembly of a conventional mobile crane, from arrival on the job to work-ready.



INSTALL FLOAT PADS

INSTALLING FRONT COUNTERWEIGHT

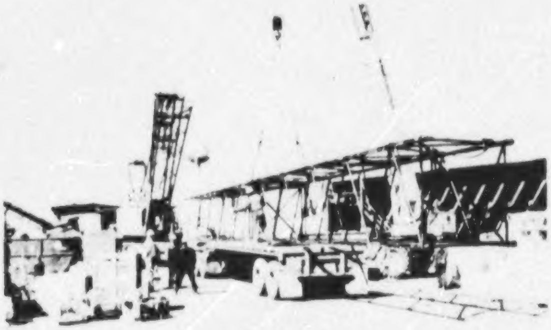
INSTALLING REAR COUNTERWEIGHT WITH SECOND RIG

Figure 7-115. Floatpads and Counterweights

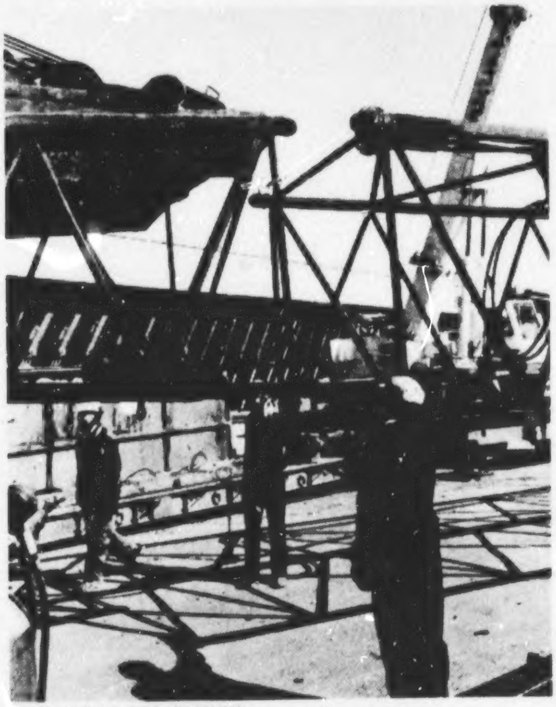
CRANE SAFETY AND SIGNALS

Assembly Precautions

1. Check all outrigger assemblies.
2. Check all boom sections for damage.
3. Always install boom pins from the inside of the boom to the outside.
4. Ensure all boom pins are secured with cotter pins.
5. Before raising boom, machine must be levelled, outriggers fully extended and rubber off the ground.
6. When disassembling boom sections, block the section to be removed.

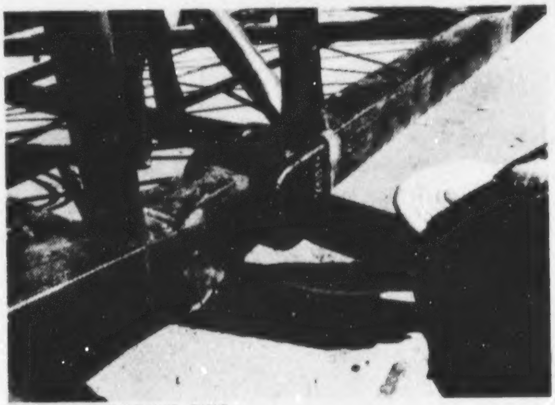


MOVING BOOM OFF TRUCK

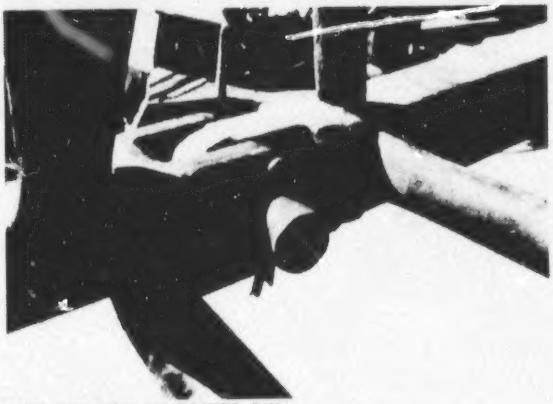


POSITIONING FOR PINNING

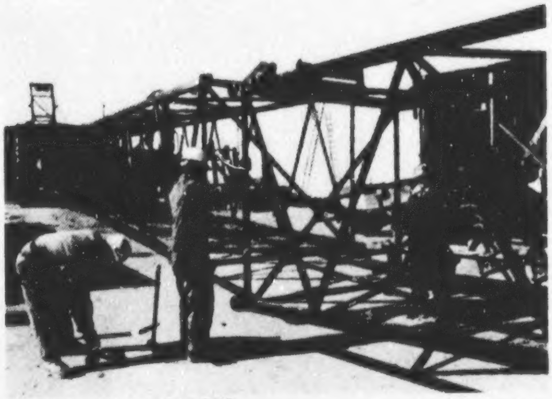
INSERTING TOP PINS FIRST



INSERTING BOTTOM PINS

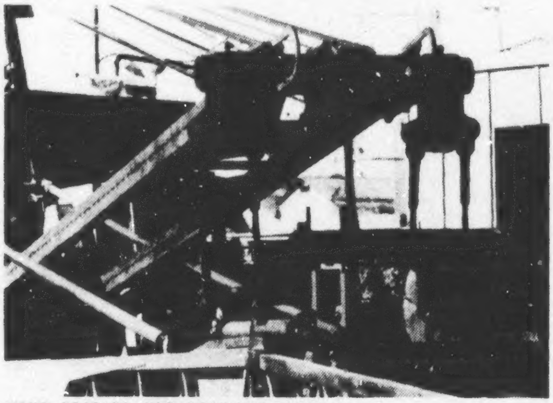


PINS SECURED BY COTTER PIN

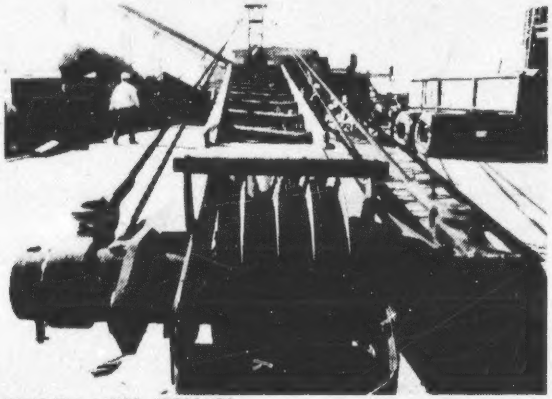


JOINING OTHER SECTIONS

Figure 7-116. Assembling the Boom



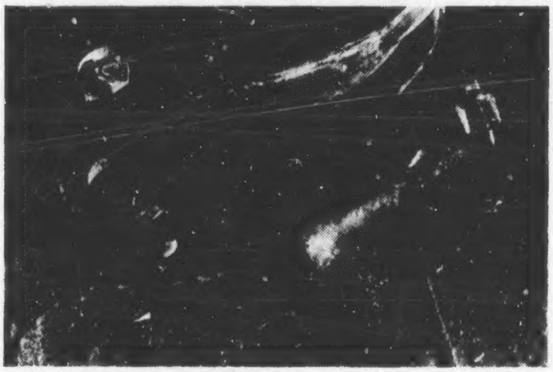
YOKE READIED FOR PENDANT LINES

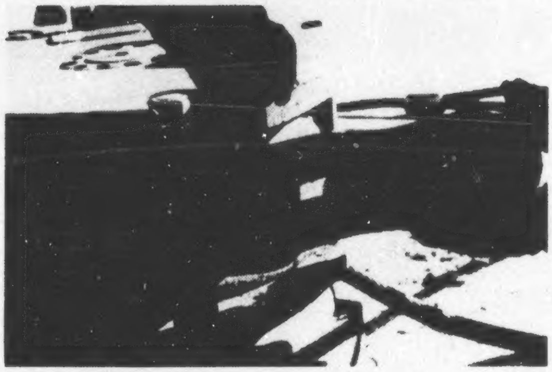


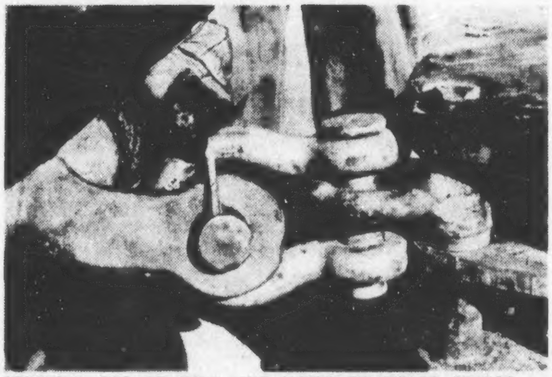
PENDANT LINES ATTACHED

MAIN LINE REEVED TO MAIN BLOCK

WEDGE SOCKET ATTACHED TO MAIN BLOCKS







TERMINAL END OF MAIN LINE FITTED TO WEDGE SOCKET

Figure 7-117. Attaching the Lines

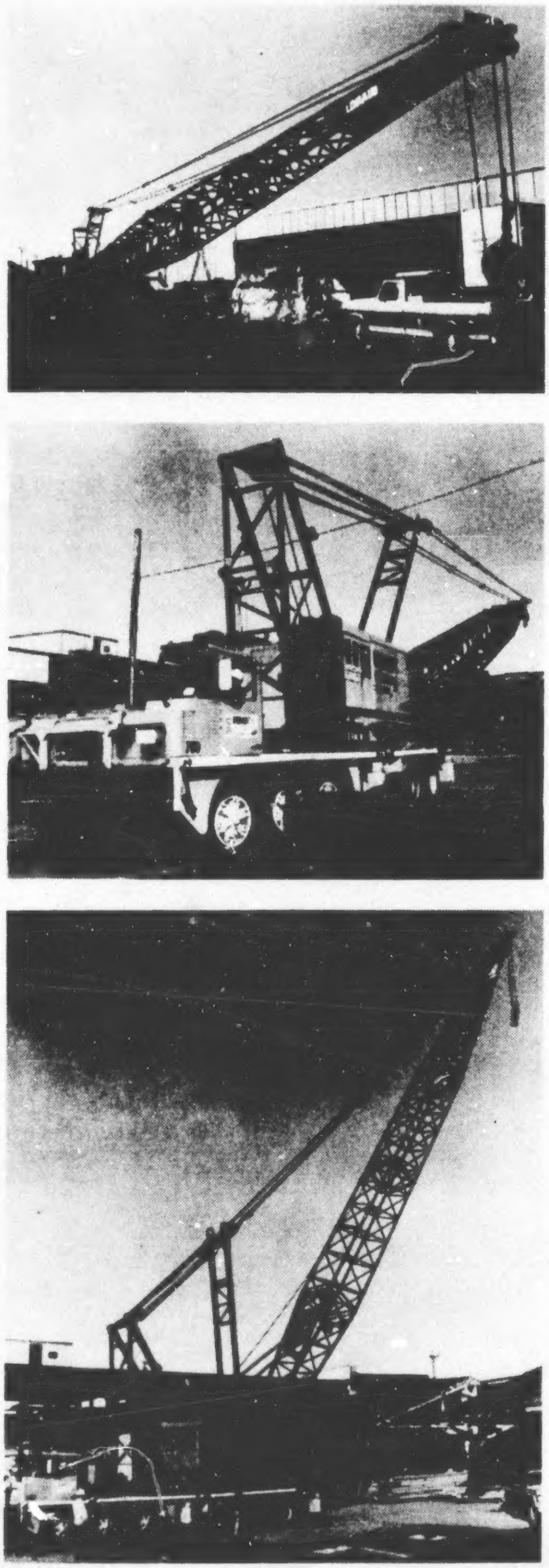
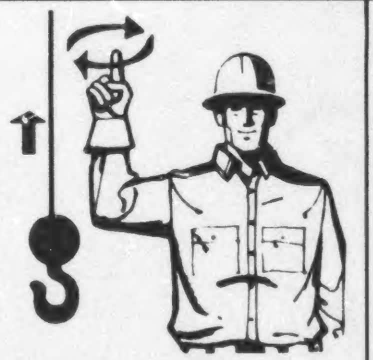


Figure 7-118. Boom Raised and Crane Moved to Area of Lift

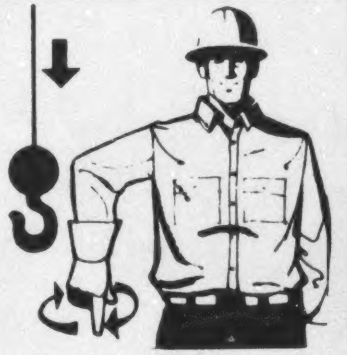
Safety During Crane Operation

1. **One man only** will be designated as signalman. The signalman must be in full view of the crane operator at all times. Crane signals are illustrated in The W.C.B. material in Figure 7-119.
2. When locating the machine, the following must be observed:
   a. As level a path as possible must be followed when moving the machine; avoid slopes and rough terrain.
   b. The boom must be in a raised position when the crane is travelling.
   c. Particularly for larger machines, the speed of travel must be slow.
   d. When "spotting" the crane, to ensure full rated capacity, the machine must be levelled, outriggers fully extended, and all rubber off the ground.
   e. Be aware of all power lines in the area where the crane is spotted.
3. Know the weight of all loads (including weight of any rigging accessories).
4. Measure (rather than estimate) the machine's load radius when making capacity lifts.
5. Avoid effects of "shock loading" to rigging and equipment, by raising and lowering loads slowly.
6. Always use a tag line to control the load when in the air.
7. When booming down, or swinging with a load, always keep the load as close to the ground as possible.
8. When swinging, always ensure that the counterweight area of swing has:
   a) sufficient clearance to clear obstructions.
   b) been barricaded wherever there is a possibility of a worker being crushed.
9. Keep all personnel out from under load.
10. **No one** is lowed to ride the load under any circumstances.
11. Snub heavy loads to the machine when travelling with a load.
12. When operations cease for the day, it is advisable to "tie down" the boom by attaching a choker from the hook in use to a stationary object with only enough tension to immobilize the boom.

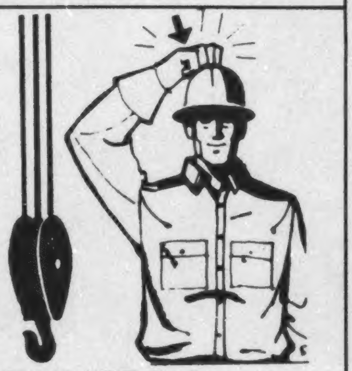
Standard Hand Signals for Controlling Crane Operations, Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes



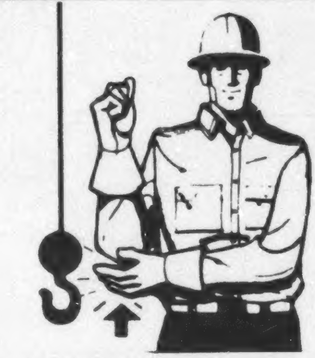
HOIST. With forearm vertical, forefinger pointing up, move hand in small horizontal circles.



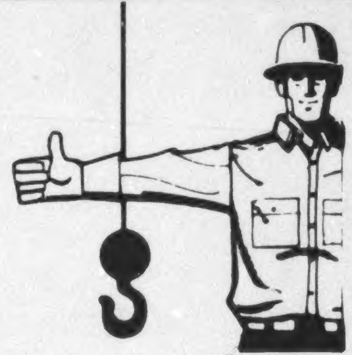
LOWER. With arm extended downward, forefinger pointing down, move hand in small horizontal circles.



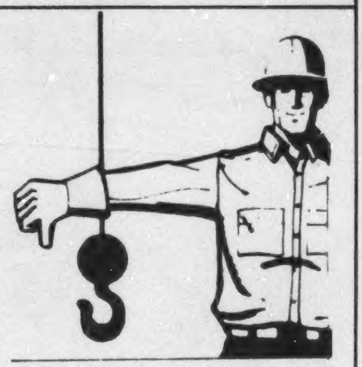
USE MAIN HOIST. Tap fist on head; then use regular signals.



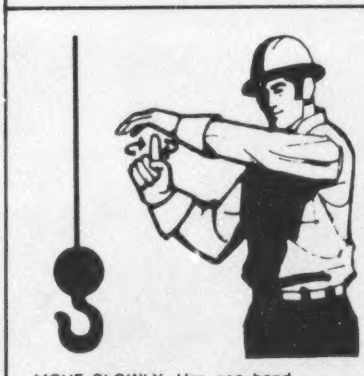
USE WHIPLINE. (Auxiliary Hoist) Tap elbow with one hand; then use regular signals.



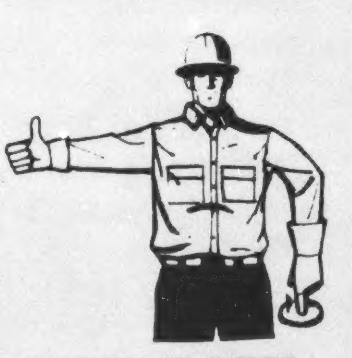
RAISE BOOM. Arm extended, fingers closed, thumb pointing upward.



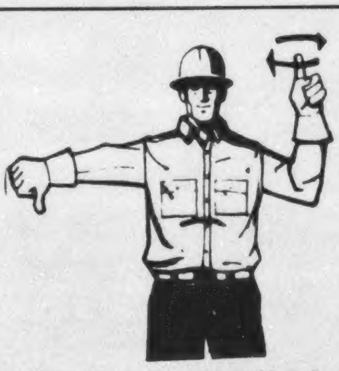
LOWER BOOM. Arm extended, fingers closed, thumb pointing downward.



MOVE SLOWLY. Use one hand to give any motion signal and place other hand motionless in front of hand giving the motion signal. (Hoist slowly shown as example).



RAISE THE BOOM AND LOWER THE LOAD. Arm extended, fingers closed, thumb pointing upward, other arm bent slightly with forefinger pointing down and rotate hand in horizontal circles.

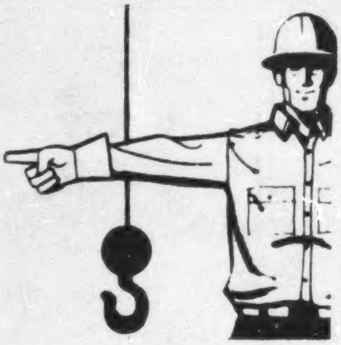


LOWER THE BOOM AND RAISE THE LOAD. Arm extended, fingers closed, thumb pointing downward, other arm with forearm vertical, forefinger pointing upward and rotate hand in horizontal circles.

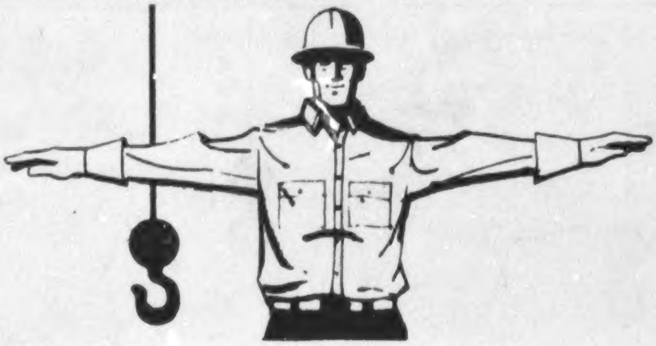
(continued)

Figure 7-119. Crane Signals

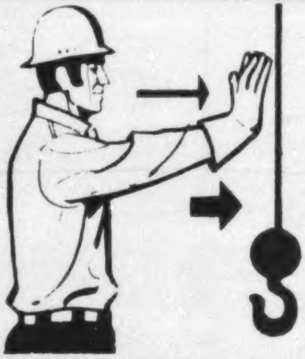
Standard Hand Signals for Controlling Crane Operations, Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes



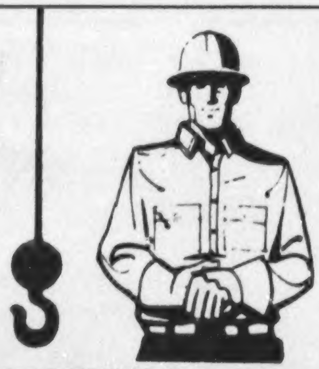
SWING. Arm extended, point with finger in direction of swing of boom.



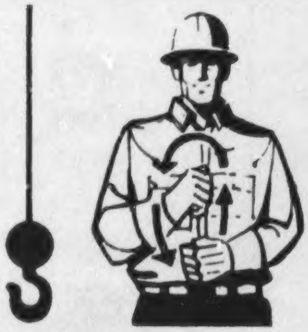
STOP. Both arms outstretched at sides horizontally, fingers outstretched.



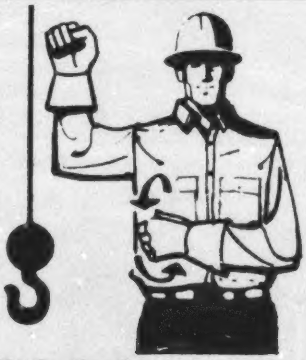
TRAVEL. Arm extended forward, hand open and slightly raised, make pushing motion in direction of travel.



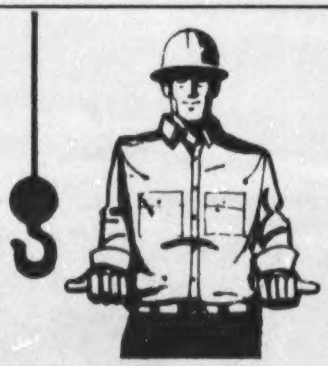
DOG EVERYTHING. Clasp hands in front of body.



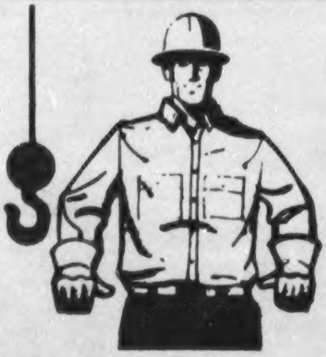
TRAVEL. (Both Tracks). Use both fists in front of body, making a circular motion about each other, indicating direction of travel; forward or backward. (For crawler cranes only.)



TRAVEL. (One Track). Lock the track on side indicated by raised fist. Travel opposite track in direction indicated by circular motion of other fist, rotated vertically in front of body. (For crawler cranes only.)



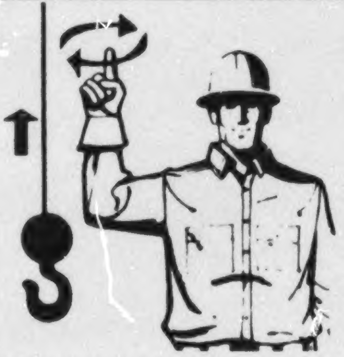
EXTEND BOOM. (Telescoping Booms). Both fists in front of body with thumbs pointing outward. One hand signal may be used.



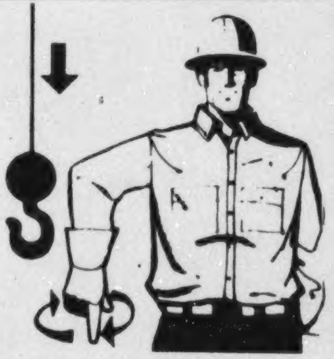
RETRACT BOOM. (Telescoping Booms). Both fists in front of body with thumbs pointing toward each other. One hand signal may be used.

Figure 7-119. Crane Signals (continued)

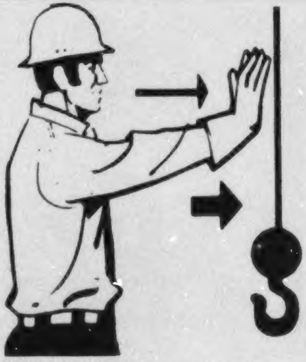
Standard Hand Signals for Controlling Crane Operations, Crawler, Locomotive and Truck Cranes



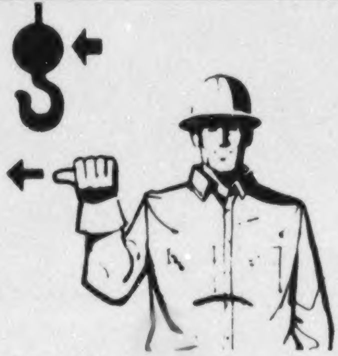
HOIST. With forearm vertical, forefinger pointing up, move hand in small horizontal circles.



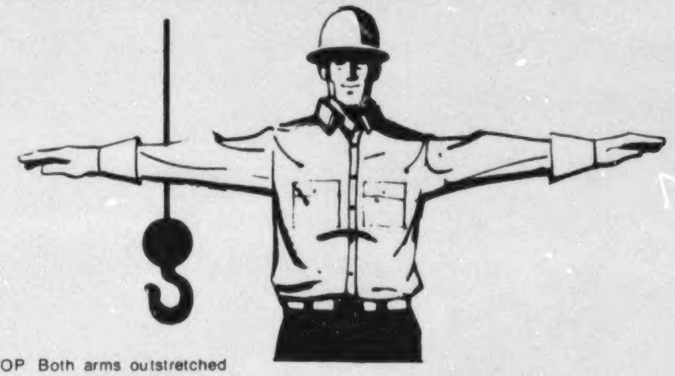
LOWER. With arm extended downward, forefinger pointing down, move hand in small horizontal circles.



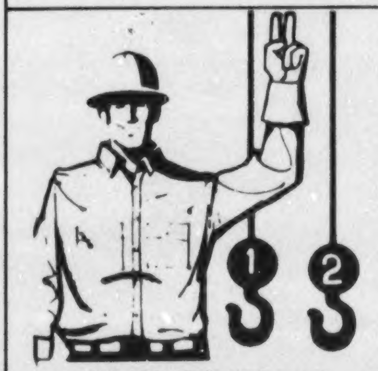
BRIDGE TRAVEL. Arm extended forward, hand open and slightly raised, make pushing motion in direction of travel.



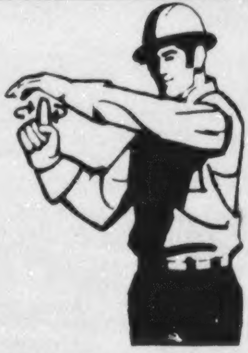
TROLLEY TRAVEL. Palm up, fingers closed, thumb pointing in direction of motion, jerk hand horizontally.



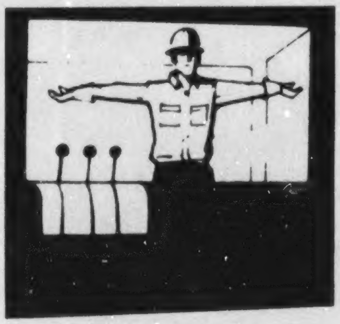
STOP. Both arms outstretched at the sides horizontally, fingers outstretched.



MULTIPLE TROLLEYS. Hold up one finger for block marked "1" and two fingers for block marked "2". Regular signals follow.



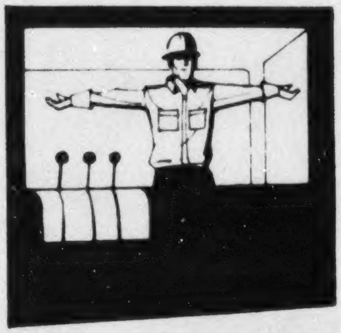
MOVE SLOWLY. Use one hand to give any motion signal and place other hand motionless in front of hand giving the motion signal. (Hoist Slowly shown as example.)



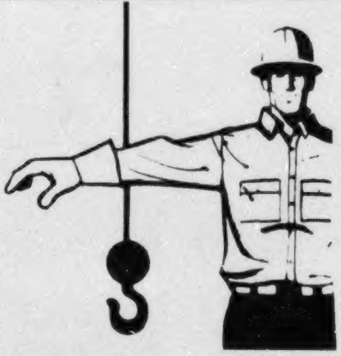
MAGNET IS DISCONNECTED. Crane operator spreads both hands apart — palms up.

Figure 7-119. Crane Signals (continued)

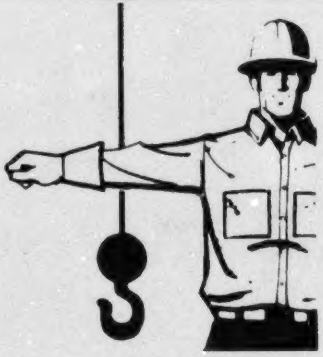
Standard Hand Signals for Controlling Crane Operations, Overhead and Gantry Cranes



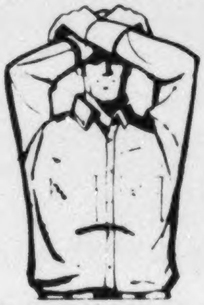
MAGNET IS DISCONNECTED. Crane operator spreads both hands apart — palms up.



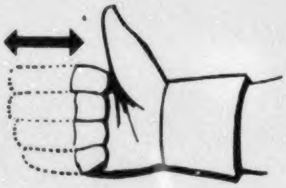
OPEN CLAM SHELL BUCKET. Arm extended, palm down, open hand.



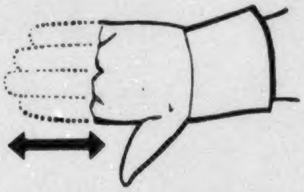
CLOSE CLAM SHELL BUCKET. Arm extended, palm down, close hand.



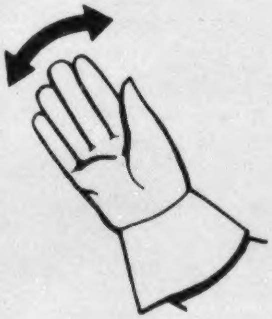
HOIST SLOWLY TO CLEAR FOULED LINE. Hands crossed in front, above shoulders, fingers relaxed.



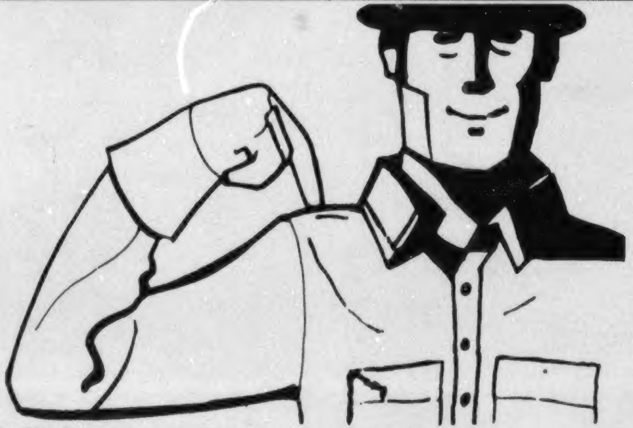
BOOM UP AND LOWER THE LOAD. One hand.



BOOM DOWN AND RAISE THE LOAD. One hand.



STOP. One hand.



WHIP LINE. One hand.

Figure 7-119. Crane Signals (continued)